



**THE 2019 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE  
CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS, TITLE 24, PART 2  
CHAPTER 31F – MARINE OIL TERMINALS  
CHAPTER 35 – REFERENCED STANDARDS**

**COMMENTS RECEIVED DURING**

**45 – DAY COMMENT PERIOD  
MAY 18, 2018 TO JULY 3, 2018**

## Gutierrez, Maria@SLC

---

**From:** Varma, Ravi@SLC  
**Sent:** Friday, May 18, 2018 3:31 PM  
**To:** Marcie Miller  
**Cc:** MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC; Flowers, Maxwell@SLC; Gutierrez, Maria@SLC; Nafday, Avinash@SLC; Fabel, Joseph@SLC  
**Subject:** RE: NOTICE OF 45-DAY PUBLIC COMMENT PERIOD FOR TITLE 24, PART 2, CHAPTER 31F – MARINE OIL TERMINALS AND CHAPTER 35 – REFERENCED STANDARDS

Dar Marcie Miller,

The proposed building standard Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 31 F does not apply to the Rancho LPG bulk storage facility in Port of LA.

Thank you,

*Captain Ravindra Varma, MNI  
Planning Branch  
Marine Environmental Protection Division  
California State Lands Commission  
200 Ocean Gate, Suite 900  
Long Beach, CA 90802  
Tel: (562) 499-6369*

---

**From:** Marcie Miller <marciesmiller@sbcglobal.net>  
**Sent:** Friday, May 18, 2018 1:34 PM  
**To:** MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC <CSLC.MEPDRegulations@slc.ca.gov>  
**Cc:** Varma, Ravi@SLC <Ravi.Varma@slc.ca.gov>; Flowers, Maxwell@SLC <Maxwell.Flowers@slc.ca.gov>; Fabel, Joseph@SLC <Joseph.Fabel@slc.ca.gov>; Nafday, Avinash@SLC <Avinash.Nafday@slc.ca.gov>; Beckwith, Chris@SLC <Chris.Beckwith@slc.ca.gov>; Dobroski, Nicole@SLC <Nicole.Dobroski@slc.ca.gov>; Vogel, Dennis@SLC <Dennis.Vogel@slc.ca.gov>; Janet Gunter <arriane5@aol.com>  
**Subject:** Re: NOTICE OF 45-DAY PUBLIC COMMENT PERIOD FOR TITLE 24, PART 2, CHAPTER 31F – MARINE OIL TERMINALS AND CHAPTER 35 – REFERENCED STANDARDS

Perhaps one of you can answer whether these building standards and proposed changes apply to the Rancho LPG bulk storage facility at the Port of LA.

On May 18, 2018, at 9:56 AM, MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC <[CSLC.MEPDRegulations@slc.ca.gov](mailto:CSLC.MEPDRegulations@slc.ca.gov)> wrote:

Dear Interested Parties:

The California State Lands Commission, Marine Environmental Protection Division (Commission) is proposing to adopt, approve, codify and publish changes to the building standards contained in the

California Code of Regulation, Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 31F-Marine Oil Terminals and Chapter 35 – Referenced Standards.

The **Notice of Proposed Regulatory Action** and **Express Terms** are attached to this electronic mail. All rulemaking documents; Initial Statement of Reasons, Express Terms, and the Studies Relied Upon on this regulatory action are posted on the Commission’s website for review and comment at: <http://www.slc.ca.gov/Laws-Regs/New-Proposed.html>. If you would like to receive a hard copy of these documents, please contact Commission staff at (562) 499-6400.

In accordance with the Administrative Procedure Act, the Commission is required to hold a minimum 45-day period for receiving comments and testimonies from interested parties and the public. Any interested person, or authorized representative, may submit written comments relevant to the proposed regulatory action. These comments must be submitted to the Commission prior to the close of the comment period at 5:00 p.m. on Tuesday, July 3, 2018. Written comments may be submitted by one of the three methods shown below:

**U.S. Mail:**

California State Lands Commission  
Marine Environmental Protection Division  
200 Oceangate, Suite 900  
Long Beach, CA 90802-4335  
Attention: Ravindra Varma

**FAX:** (562) 499-6444

**E-Mail:** [CSLC.MEPDRegulations@slc.ca.gov](mailto:CSLC.MEPDRegulations@slc.ca.gov)

Please include “**Title 24, Chapter 31F Comments**” in the subject line of the email.

<NOPA.pdf><EXPRESS\_TERMS.pdf>

## Gutierrez, Maria@SLC

---

**From:** Varma, Ravi@SLC  
**Sent:** Wednesday, May 23, 2018 1:05 PM  
**To:** MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC  
**Cc:** Oliver, Kendra@SLC; Augustin, Alex@SLC; Gutierrez, Maria@SLC; Flowers, Maxwell@SLC; Nafday, Avinash@SLC  
**Subject:** FW: 2019 MOTEMS Rulemaking Correspondence  
**Attachments:** 2019 MOTEMS changes in electronic form

Thank you, Kendra and Alex.

---

**From:** Oliver, Kendra@SLC  
**Sent:** Wednesday, May 23, 2018 11:43 AM  
**To:** Varma, Ravi@SLC <Ravi.Varma@slc.ca.gov>; Nafday, Avinash@SLC <Avinash.Nafday@slc.ca.gov>  
**Cc:** Augustin, Alex@SLC <Alex.Augustin@slc.ca.gov>  
**Subject:** 2019 MOTEMS Rulemaking Correspondence

Ravi,

Please find attached what appears to be informal comment(s) that Alex and I received related to the 2019 MOTEMS rulemaking.]

Kendra



**Kendra C. Oliver, P.E.**

Senior Engineer, Petroleum Structures

California State Lands Commission  
Marine Environmental Protection Division  
750 Alfred Nobel Dr., Ste. 201  
Hercules, CA 94547  
(510) 741-4950  
[kendra.oliver@slc.ca.gov](mailto:kendra.oliver@slc.ca.gov)

## Gutierrez, Maria@SLC

---

**From:** Percher, Marc <mpercher@moffattnichol.com>  
**Sent:** Wednesday, May 23, 2018 11:38 AM  
**To:** Oliver, Kendra@SLC  
**Cc:** Augustin, Alex@SLC  
**Subject:** 2019 MOTEMS changes in electronic form  
**Attachments:** 2015-03-21 subst structure flow chart.docx

Kendra,

Any chance you could send me an electronic copy of the 2019 MOTEMS proposed changes? I'd like to format a table that references the proposed text.

I haven't had a chance to look through it all that much, but I did notice you guys tweaked the substitute structure method stuff a bit and am concerned that the iterative nature of determining the equal areas for the force-displacement curves is not really described in the write up. A decade ago (damn I'm old) Alex and I did a paper for prevention first on fit of the force-displacement curve and also got some input from Rakesh that the curve should be fit with the demand displacement defining the secondary slope and yield point. Thus for each solution of the substitute structure method there'd be a separate fit of the bilinear curve. I'm hoping the attached revised flow chart will go into ASCE 61-19, and clearly call out that the iteration on the force-displacement curve. These methods are all VERY sensitive to the selection of the yield point, so it can have a big impact on results.

I'll write this up more formally in an official comment (and don't expect you to respond herein), but hopefully it's something that can be addressed as, based on previous discussion with Rakesh, the equal area's for the effective bilinear force-displacement curve should be satisfied both for the substitute structure as well as for the coefficient method (the latter being a whole other can of worms).

Thanks,  
Marc

*Marc Percher, P.E.*

**Moffatt & Nichol**

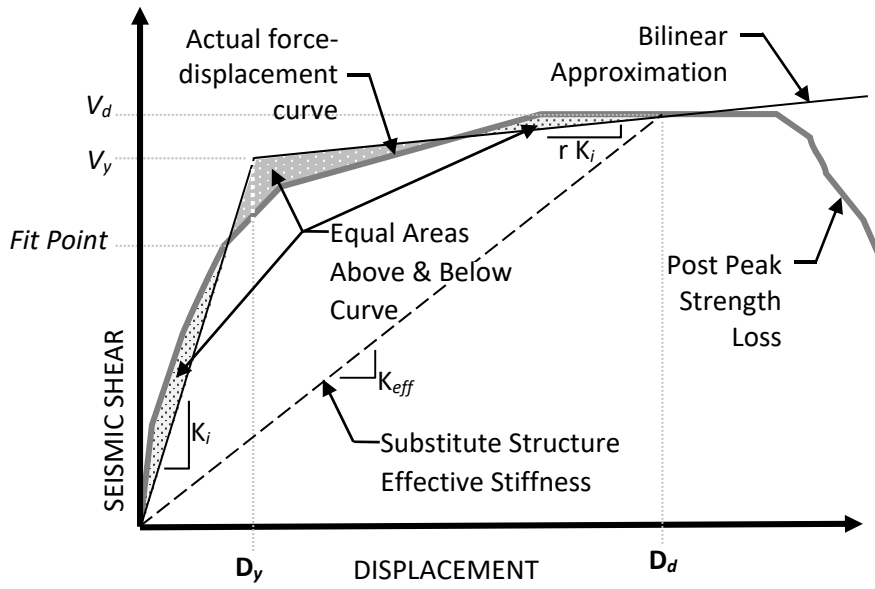
2185 N. California Blvd. Suite 500

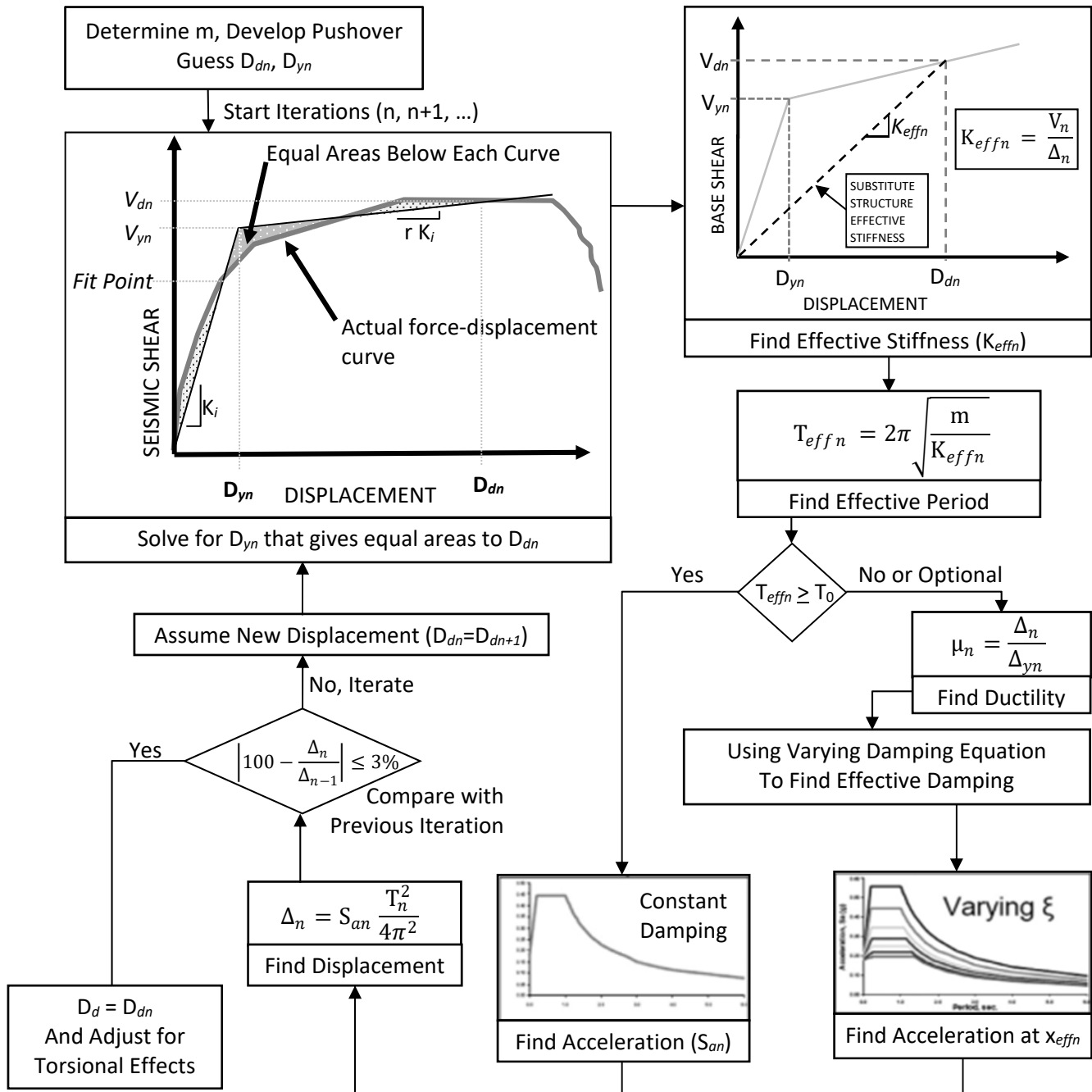
Walnut Creek, CA 94596

Phone: 925-944-5411 WC Office, 925-956-4930 Direct

Fax: 925-944-4732

Email: [mpercher@moffattnichol.com](mailto:mpercher@moffattnichol.com)





Where:

$m$  = Seismic Mass

$D_d$  = Displacement Demand

$D_y$  = Effective System Yield Displacement

$n$  = iteration 1,2,3...

$K_i$  = Initial stiffness of Pushover Curve

$r$  = ratio initial to secondary stiffness

$V$  = Base Shear

$K_{eff}$  = Effective Stiffness

$T_{eff}$  = Effective Period

$T_0$  = Period at Peak of Design Response Spectrum

$x_{eff}$  = Effective Damping

$m$  = Ductility

$S_a$  = Acceleration from Design Response Spectrum

## Gutierrez, Maria@SLC

---

**From:** Varma, Ravi@SLC  
**Sent:** Tuesday, May 29, 2018 12:48 PM  
**To:** MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC  
**Cc:** Gutierrez, Maria@SLC; Flowers, Maxwell@SLC; Nafday, Avinash@SLC; Oliver, Kendra@SLC  
**Subject:** FW: Notice of Proposed Action - MOTEMS Revisions

---

**From:** Nafday, Avinash@SLC  
**Sent:** Friday, May 25, 2018 1:06 PM  
**To:** Varma, Ravi@SLC <Ravi.Varma@slc.ca.gov>  
**Cc:** Gutierrez, Maria@SLC <Maria.Gutierrez@slc.ca.gov>; Flowers, Maxwell@SLC <Maxwell.Flowers@slc.ca.gov>  
**Subject:** FW: Notice of Proposed Action - MOTEMS Revisions

FYI

---

**From:** Konyalian, Ari <[akonyalian@moffattnichol.com](mailto:akonyalian@moffattnichol.com)>  
**Sent:** Tuesday, May 22, 2018 3:55 PM  
**To:** Nafday, Avinash@SLC <[Avinash.Nafday@slc.ca.gov](mailto:Avinash.Nafday@slc.ca.gov)>  
**Subject:** Re: Notice of Proposed Action - MOTEMS Revisions

Avi,

I received a hard copy of the Notice of Proposed Actions from your group; I appreciate the action and keeping me in the loop. I will distribute with our larger MOTEMS group of inspectors / auditors and seek their opinions.

Thank you...

**Ari Konyalian, PE**  
**Moffatt & Nichol**

3780 Kilroy Airport Way | Long Beach, CA 90806 | P 562.426.9551 | M 714.469.1870 | F 562.424.7489

Creative People, Practical Solutions.™

[www.moffattnichol.com](http://www.moffattnichol.com)



## Gutierrez, Maria@SLC

---

**From:** Oliver, Kendra@SLC  
**Sent:** Monday, June 11, 2018 2:43 PM  
**To:** Varma, Ravi@SLC  
**Cc:** Nafday, Avinash@SLC; MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC  
**Subject:** Voicemail Message from Arul Arulmoli Regarding

Ravi,

Please note that I received a voicemail message on 06/07/2018 from Arul Arulmoli, Earth Mechanics, Inc., regarding comments on the proposed 2019 MOTEMS regulations. This voicemail message was lengthy and therefore difficult to transcribe. I will return Arul's call and inform him to submit his comments in writing and/or present them at the July 3<sup>rd</sup> public hearing, as presented in the NOPA.

Kendra



**Kendra C. Oliver, P.E.**

Senior Engineer, Petroleum Structures

California State Lands Commission  
Marine Environmental Protection Division  
750 Alfred Nobel Dr., Ste. 201  
Hercules, CA 94547  
(510) 741-4950  
[kendra.oliver@slc.ca.gov](mailto:kendra.oliver@slc.ca.gov)

## Gutierrez, Maria@SLC

---

**From:** Varma, Ravi@SLC  
**Sent:** Monday, June 11, 2018 2:50 PM  
**To:** Oliver, Kendra@SLC  
**Cc:** Nafday, Avinash@SLC; MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC  
**Subject:** RE: Voicemail Message from Arul Arulmoli Regarding

Thanks, Kendra. Asking Mr. Arumoli to submit comments in writing or to testify at the public hearing is in accordance with the Notice of Rulemaking.

Best,

Ravi

---

**From:** Oliver, Kendra@SLC  
**Sent:** Monday, June 11, 2018 2:43 PM  
**To:** Varma, Ravi@SLC <Ravi.Varma@slc.ca.gov>  
**Cc:** Nafday, Avinash@SLC <Avinash.Nafday@slc.ca.gov>; MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC <CSLC.MEPDRegulations@slc.ca.gov>  
**Subject:** Voicemail Message from Arul Arulmoli Regarding

Ravi,

Please note that I received a voicemail message on 06/07/2018 from Arul Arulmoli, Earth Mechanics, Inc., regarding comments on the proposed 2019 MOTEMS regulations. This voicemail message was lengthy and therefore difficult to transcribe. I will return Arul's call and inform him to submit his comments in writing and/or present them at the July 3<sup>rd</sup> public hearing, as presented in the NOPA.

Kendra



**Kendra C. Oliver, P.E.**

Senior Engineer, Petroleum Structures

California State Lands Commission  
Marine Environmental Protection Division  
750 Alfred Nobel Dr., Ste. 201  
Hercules, CA 94547  
(510) 741-4950  
[kendra.oliver@slc.ca.gov](mailto:kendra.oliver@slc.ca.gov)

## Gutierrez, Maria@SLC

---

**From:** Oliver, Kendra@SLC  
**Sent:** Monday, June 11, 2018 4:48 PM  
**To:** MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC  
**Cc:** Varma, Ravi@SLC; Nafday, Avinash@SLC  
**Subject:** FW: POLB WDC 3.0 (Feb. 29, 2012) & WDC 4.0 (May 20, 2015)  
**Attachments:** 022912-POLB WDC Version 3 0-Final-Submitted-Published (120315).pdf; POLB WDC Version 4.0.pdf

---

**From:** Arul Arulmoli <Arulmoli@earthmech.com>  
**Sent:** Monday, June 11, 2018 4:20 PM  
**To:** Oliver, Kendra@SLC <kendra.oliver@slc.ca.gov>  
**Subject:** POLB WDC 3.0 (Feb. 29, 2012) & WDC 4.0 (May 20, 2015)

Hi Kendra,

Per my phone message, I am forwarding copies of the Port of Long Beach (POLB) Wharf Design Criteria (WDC) Version 3.0 [that was used in preparing the text for CBC 2016, Ch. 31F, Division 6 text, figure, and reference] and POLB WDC Version 4.0 that was published in May 2015.

If you look at Figure 2.4 of WDC 3.0 and Figure 2.3 of WDC 4.0, there are some differences; therefore, it may be good to replace Figure 31F-6-2 in the current CBC Ch. 31F with the one in POLB WDC 4.0.

The proposed revision to the text to 3106F.10.2 looks fine to us. I think adding the new figure and updating Reference 6.8 would complement and complete the proposed revision.

We can talk tomorrow morning if you have time.

Thanks,

(Arul) K. Arulmoli  
Principal  
Earth Mechanics, Inc.  
17800 Newhope Street, Suite B  
Fountain Valley, CA 92708  
Te: (714) 751-3826 Fax: (714)751-3928

NOTE: This electronic mail may contain privileged, confidential, and/or proprietary information which is the property of Earth Mechanics, Inc. If you are not the intended recipient or an authorized agent of the intended recipient, please delete this message and any attachments and notify the sender that you have received it in error. Thank you.



# **Port of Long Beach Wharf Design Criteria**

**POLB WDC Version 3.0**

**February 29, 2012**



## Table of Contents

<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>v</b>
<b>List of Figures.....</b>	<b>vi</b>
<b>List Symbols .....</b>	<b>vii</b>
<b>Acronyms/Definitions .....</b>	<b>xi</b>
<b>1 Introduction .....</b>	<b>1-1</b>
<b>2 Geotechnical Considerations.....</b>	<b>2-1</b>
2.1 Ground Motions .....	2-1
2.2 Site Characterization .....	2-2
2.3 Liquefaction Potential .....	2-3
2.4 Slope Stability and Seismically Induced Lateral Spreading .....	2-3
2.4.1 Static Slope Stability .....	2-4
2.4.2 Pseudo-static Seismic Slope Stability .....	2-5
2.4.3 Post-earthquake Static Slope Stability .....	2-5
2.4.4 Lateral Spreading – Free-Field .....	2-5
2.5 Settlement .....	2-6
2.5.1 Static Consolidation Settlement .....	2-6
2.5.2 Seismically Induced Settlement .....	2-6
2.6 Earth Pressures .....	2-6
2.6.1 Earth Pressures Under Static Loading .....	2-6
2.6.2 Earth Pressures Under Seismic Loading .....	2-6
2.7 Pile Axial Behavior .....	2-7
2.7.1 Pile Capacity .....	2-7
2.7.2 Axial Springs for Piles .....	2-8
2.7.3 Upper and Lower Bound Springs .....	2-8
2.8 Soil Behavior under Lateral Pile Loading .....	2-9
2.8.1 Soil Springs for Lateral Pile Loading .....	2-9
2.8.2 Upper and Lower Bound Soil Springs .....	2-9
2.9 Soil-pile Interaction .....	2-10
2.9.1 Inertial Loading Under Seismic Conditions .....	2-10
2.9.2 Kinematic Loading from Lateral Spreading .....	2-10
2.10 Ground Improvement .....	2-12
<b>3 Structural Loading Criteria .....</b>	<b>3-1</b>
3.1 General .....	3-1

3.2	Dead Loads (D).....	3-1
3.2.1	General.....	3-1
3.2.2	Unit Weights.....	3-1
3.3	Vertical Live Loads (L).....	3-1
3.3.1	Uniform Loads.....	3-1
3.3.2	Truck Loads.....	3-2
3.3.3	Container Crane Loads.....	3-2
3.3.4	Container Handling Equipment Loads.....	3-3
3.3.5	Railroad Track Loads.....	3-4
3.4	Impact Factor (I).....	3-4
3.5	Buoyancy Loads (BU).....	3-4
3.6	Berthing Loads (BE).....	3-5
3.7	Mooring Loads (M).....	3-5
3.8	Earth Pressure Loads (E).....	3-6
3.9	Earthquake Loads (EQ).....	3-6
3.10	Wind Loads on Structure (W).....	3-6
3.11	Creep Loads (R).....	3-6
3.12	Shrinkage Loads (S).....	3-7
3.13	Temperature Loads (T).....	3-7
3.14	Current Loads on Structure (C).....	3-7
3.15	Loads Application.....	3-7
3.16	Load Combinations.....	3-8
3.16.1	General.....	3-8
3.16.2	Load Resistance Factor Design (LRFD).....	3-8
3.16.3	Service Load Design (SLD).....	3-9
<b>4</b>	<b>Seismic Design Criteria.....</b>	<b>4-1</b>
4.1	Introduction.....	4-1
4.2	General Design Criteria.....	4-1
4.3	Performance Criteria.....	4-2
4.4	Strain Limits.....	4-2
4.5	Seismic Analysis.....	4-4
4.5.1	Analysis Methods.....	4-4
4.5.2	Earthquake Load Combinations.....	4-5
4.6	Structural Model.....	4-7
4.6.1	Modeling.....	4-7
4.6.2	Material Properties.....	4-8
4.6.3	Effective Section Properties.....	4-13

4.6.4	Seismic Mass .....	4-14
4.6.5	Lateral Soil Springs.....	4-14
4.6.6	Pile Nonlinear Properties .....	4-14
4.6.6.1	Moment-curvature Analysis .....	4-14
4.6.6.2	Plastic Hinge Length .....	4-16
4.6.6.3	Plastic Rotation.....	4-17
4.7	Nonlinear Static Pushover Analysis.....	4-18
4.8	Irregular Structures and Special Cases .....	4-19
4.8.1	Irregular Structures .....	4-19
4.8.2	Special Cases .....	4-20
4.8.2.1	Crane-wharf Interaction Analysis.....	4-20
4.8.2.2	Linked-wharf Interaction Analysis.....	4-20
4.9	Demand Analysis.....	4-21
4.9.1	Equivalent Lateral Stiffness Method .....	4-21
4.9.2	Dynamic Magnification Factor (DMF).....	4-21
4.9.3	Transverse Single Mode Analysis .....	4-23
4.9.3.1	Elastic Stiffness Method.....	4-23
4.9.3.2	Substitute Structure Method .....	4-24
4.9.4	Three Dimensional Analysis.....	4-25
4.9.4.1	Super-Pile Model.....	4-26
4.9.4.2	Modal Response Spectra Analysis.....	4-27
4.9.4.3	Nonlinear Time-History Analysis.....	4-29
4.10	Structural Capacities .....	4-29
4.10.1	Pile Displacement Capacity .....	4-30
4.10.2	Pile Beam/Deck Joint.....	4-31
4.10.3	Pile Shear .....	4-32
4.10.4	P- $\Delta$ Effects .....	4-36
4.11	Deck Expansion Joint .....	4-36
4.12	Kinematic Loads .....	4-38
4.13	Seismic Detailing.....	4-38
4.14	Peer Review .....	4-39
<b>5</b>	<b>Structural Considerations .....</b>	<b>5-1</b>
5.1	Design Standards .....	5-1
5.2	Wharf Geometrics.....	5-1
5.3	Construction Materials.....	5-2
5.4	Wharf Components .....	5-3
5.4.1	Wharf Deck.....	5-3
5.4.2	Expansion Joints .....	5-4
5.4.3	Cut-off Wall .....	5-4
5.4.4	Crane Rails.....	5-4
5.4.5	Fenders and Mooring Hardware .....	5-5



5.4.6	Safety Ladder .....	5-5
5.4.7	Piling .....	5-5
5.4.8	Guard Timber .....	5-6
5.4.9	Trench Cover Plates .....	5-6
5.4.10	Cable Trench .....	5-6
5.4.11	Inclinometer Tubes/ Motion Instrumentation .....	5-6
5.4.12	Dike Scour .....	5-6
5.5	Structural Analysis Considerations .....	5-7
<b>6</b>	<b>References .....</b>	<b>6-1</b>

---

**List of Tables**

Table 2-1:	Minimum Requirement for Slope Stability Analyses.....	2-4
Table 3-1:	Container Crane Vertical Loads.....	3-3
Table 3-2:	Impact Factors.....	3-4
Table 3-3:	Load Combinations.....	3-9
Table 4-1:	Strain Limits.....	4-3
Table 4-2:	Plastic Hinge Length Equations.....	4-16
Table 5-1:	Tidal Elevations .....	5-2

## List of Figures

Figure 2-1:	Design Acceleration Response Spectra for Unimproved Ground Conditions .....	2-2
Figure 2-2:	Design Acceleration Response Spectra for Improved Ground Conditions .....	2-2
Figure 2-3:	Axial Soil Springs .....	2-9
Figure 2-4:	Sliding Layer Model.....	2-12
Figure 3-1:	Broken Piles Layout.....	3-2
Figure 3-2:	Container Handling Equipment Design Wheel Load.....	3-4
Figure 3-3:	Vessel Berthing .....	3-5
Figure 3-4:	Mooring Line Force.....	3-6
Figure 4-1:	Flow Diagram for Seismic Analysis .....	4-6
Figure 4-2:	Pile Spacing for Modeling of Typical Wharf Strip .....	4-7
Figure 4-3:	Pile-Deck Structural Model Schematic Showing Strain Penetration Length.....	4-8
Figure 4-4:	Stress-Strain Relationship for Confined and Unconfined Concrete.....	4-10
Figure 4-5:	Concrete Strength Ratio versus Confining Steel Ratio .....	4-11
Figure 4-6:	Stress-Strain Relationship for Reinforcing Steel.....	4-12
Figure 4-7:	Stress-Strain Relationship for Prestressing Steel .....	4-13
Figure 4-8:	Moment–curvature Curve and Idealization for Method A.....	4-15
Figure 4-9:	Moment–curvature Curve and Idealization for Method B.....	4-16
Figure 4-10:	Idealized Moment-rotation Curve .....	4-18
Figure 4-11:	Pushover Model with p-y Springs .....	4-19
Figure 4-12:	Example of Pushover Curve and Plastic Hinge Sequence .....	4-19
Figure 4-13:	Horizontal Marginal Wharf Configurations .....	4-20
Figure 4-14:	Depth to Point of Fixity.....	4-21
Figure 4-15:	Flow Diagram for the Elastic Stiffness Method.....	4-23
Figure 4-16:	Flow Diagram for Substitute Structure Method.....	4-24
Figure 4-17:	Effective System Stiffness for a Wharf Segment.....	4-25
Figure 4-18:	Elevation View of Transverse Wharf Segment.....	4-26
Figure 4-19:	Super-pile Locations for a Wharf Segment.....	4-26
Figure 4-20:	Wharf Response due to Longitudinal and Transverse Excitations.....	4-28
Figure 4-21:	Pile Displacement Capacity.....	4-31
Figure 4-22:	Curvature Ductility Factor versus Curvature Ductility Demand.....	4-34
Figure 4-23:	Transverse Shear Reinforcement Shear Strength Components.....	4-35
Figure 4-24:	Axial Load Shear Strength Components .....	4-36
Figure 4-25:	Share Key Factor versus Wharf Segment Length .....	4-37
Figure 4-26:	Plastic Hinge Formation due to Kinematic Loads.....	4-38
Figure 4-27:	Anchorage Details for Pile Dowels .....	4-39
Figure 5-1:	Beam on Elastic Foundation.....	5-7

## List Symbols

$A_{gross}$	Gross cross-sectional area
$A_{sc}$	Total cross-sectional area of dowels in the joint
$A_{sp}$	Cross-sectional area of confining steel/ transverse reinforcement
B	Width of a wharf unit
BE	Berthing loads
BU	Buoyancy loads
C	Current loads on structure
D	Dead loads
$D'$	Diameter of confined core measured to the centerline of the confining steel
$D_p$	Pile diameter
$DMF$	Dynamic magnification factor
E	Earth pressure loads
$E_c$	Modulus of elasticity of concrete
$E_{ps}$	Modulus of elasticity for prestressing steel
$E_s$	Modulus of elasticity of steel
$E_{sh}$	Confining steel modulus of elasticity
EQ	Earthquake loads
$F$	Total lateral seismic force of the wharf strip considered at displacement demand
$F_i$	Lateral force per pile in row $i$ from pushover analysis when seismic piles reach yield displacement
$F_n$	Lateral force determined from pushover curve for iteration $n$ at $\Delta_{t,n-1}$
$F_p$	Prestress compressive force in pile
$F_{\Delta}$	Total lateral seismic force of a wharf segment at displacement demand
$H$	The distance between the center of pile top plastic hinge and the center of pile in-ground plastic hinge
$H'$	The distance from the maximum in-ground moment to the center of gravity of the deck
I	Impact factor
$I_{eff}$	Effective moment of inertia
$I_{gross}$	Gross moment of inertia
$J_{eff}$	Effective polar moment of inertia
$J_{gross}$	Gross polar moment of inertia
$K$	Factor applied to dead load in earthquake load combination
$K_e$	Confinement effectiveness coefficient
L	Live loads
LB	Lower bound
$L_c$	The distance from the center of the pile top plastic hinge to the point of contraflexure
$L_L$	Length of the shorter exterior wharf unit
$L_p$	Plastic hinge length
$L_s$	Equivalent depth to point of fixity
$L_u$	Pile unsupported length
M	Mooring loads
$M_n$	Nominal moment capacity
$M_o$	Pile overstrength moment capacity

---

$M_p$	Pile idealized plastic moment capacity
$M_{p,in-ground}$	Pile plastic moment capacity at the in-ground plastic hinge including the effect of axial load due to crane dead load
$M_{p,top}$	Pile plastic moment capacity at the top plastic hinge including the effect of axial load due to crane dead load
$M_y$	Moment at first yield
$N_u$	External axial compression on pile including seismic load
P	Mooring line load
R	Creep loads
$R_F$	Force perpendicular to the fender panel due to berthing load
S	Shrinkage loads
T	Temperature loads
$T_{crane}$	Translational elastic period of the crane mode with the maximum participating mass
$T_n$	Effective period for iteration $n$
$T_w$	Effective elastic period of the wharf structure based on cracked section properties
$T_{wi}$	Transverse elastic period of a wharf segment
U	Total design load in moment, shear forces or axial forces
UB	Upper bound
$V_a$	Shear strength due to axial load
$V_c$	Concrete shear strength
$V_F$	Fender Shear Force
$V_n$	Nominal shear strength
$V_o$	Pile overstrength shear demand
$V_p$	Pile plastic shear
$V_s$	Transverse reinforcement shear strength
W	Wind loads on structure
$W_{DL}$	Effective dead load of the wharf strip considered
$W_W$	Waterside crane wheel load
$W_L$	Landside crane wheel load
$X_1, X_2$	Distance from the back of the wharf
$c$	Depth from the extreme compression fiber to the neutral axis at flexural strength
$c_o$	Clear concrete cover plus half the diameter of the transverse reinforcement
$d_{bl}$	Diameter of dowel reinforcement
$d_{gap}$	Distance between the top of the pile steel shell and the deck soffit
$e$	Eccentricity between the wharf center of mass and the center of rigidity
$f_c$	Concrete compression stress
$f'_c$	28-day unconfined concrete compressive strength
$f'_{cc}$	Confined concrete compressive strength
$f'_{ce}$	Expected compressive strength of concrete
$f'_l$	Effective lateral confining stress
$f_{pu}$	Maximum tensile strength of prestressing steel
$f_{pue}$	Expected maximum tensile strength of prestressing steel
$f_{py}$	Yield strength of prestressing steel
$f_{pye}$	Expected yield strength of prestressing steel

---

---

$f_s$	Steel tensile stress
$f_{ue}$	Expected maximum tensile strength of steel
$f_y$	Yield strength of longitudinal reinforcing steel or structural steel
$f_{ye}$	Expected yield strength of reinforcing steel/ structural steel
$f_{yh}$	Yield strength of confining steel/ transverse reinforcement
$f_{yhe}$	Expected yield strength of confining steel
$i$	Pile row
$k$	Curvature ductility factor determined as a function of $\mu_\phi$
$k_e$	System secant stiffness
$k_{e,n}$	Effective secant stiffness for iteration $n$ at $\Delta_{t,n-1}$
$k_i$	Transverse elastic stiffness of a wharf segment
$l_a$	Actual embedment length of dowels anchored in the joint
$l_{sp}$	Strain penetration length
$m$	Seismic mass of a wharf segment
$n$	Iteration number (1, 2, 3, ... $n$ )
$n_i$	Total number of piles in row $i$ for length $L_L$
$p_1, p_2$	Uniform backland load
$s$	Center-to-center spacing of confining steel/transverse reinforcement along pile axis
$v_\perp$	Approach velocity normal to fender line
$\alpha$	Angle between the line joining the centers of flexural compression zones at the top and in-ground plastic hinges and the pile axis
$\beta$	Axial load shear strength factor
$\Delta_c$	Displacement capacity
$\Delta_d$	Displacement demand
$\Delta_{p,m}$	Pile plastic displacement capacity due to rotation of the plastic hinge at the OLE, CLE, or DE strain limits
$\Delta_t$	Transverse displacement demand
$\Delta_{t,0}$	Assumed initial transverse displacement demand
$\Delta_{t,n}$	Transverse displacement for iteration $n$
$\Delta_{t,n-1}$	Transverse displacement for iteration $n-1$
$\Delta_{XL}, \Delta_{X2}$	Combined X-axis displacement demands from motions in the transverse and longitudinal directions
$\Delta_{XL}$	X-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the longitudinal direction
$\Delta_{XT}$	X-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the transverse direction
$\Delta_{YL}, \Delta_{Y2}$	Combined Y-axis displacement demands from motions in the transverse and longitudinal directions
$\Delta_{YL}$	Y-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the longitudinal direction
$\Delta_{YT}$	Y-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the transverse direction
$\Delta_y$	Pile yield displacement
$\Delta_{ys}$	System yield displacement

---

---

$\epsilon_c$	Concrete compression strain
$\epsilon_{cc}$	Confined concrete compressive strain at maximum compressive stress
$\epsilon_{co}$	Unconfined concrete compression strain at maximum compressive stress
$\epsilon_{cu}$	Ultimate confined concrete compression strain
$\epsilon_p$	Total prestressing steel tensile strain
$\epsilon_{pue}$	Expected ultimate strain for prestressing steel
$\epsilon_{pye}$	Expected yield tensile strain for prestressing steel
$\epsilon_s$	Steel tensile strain
$\epsilon_{smd}$	Strain at maximum stress of dowel reinforcement
$\epsilon_{sh}$	Steel tensile strain at the onset of strain hardening
$\epsilon_{spall}$	Ultimate unconfined compression (spalling) strain
$\epsilon_{ye}$	Expected yield tensile strain for steel
$\phi$	Reduction factor for nominal moment capacity according to ACI-318
$\phi_m$	Total curvature at the OLE, CLE, or DE strain limits
$\phi_{p,dem}$	Plastic curvature at displacement demand
$\phi_{p,m}$	Plastic curvature at the OLE, CLE, or DE strain limit
$\phi_u$	Ultimate curvature of the section
$\phi_y$	Idealized yield curvature
$\phi_{yi}$	Curvature at first yield
$\Phi$	Strength reduction factor for shear
$\mu_n$	System displacement ductility demand at iteration $n$
$\mu_\phi$	Curvature ductility demand
$\mu_f$	Friction coefficient
$\theta$	Angle of critical shear crack with respect to the longitudinal axis of the pile
$\theta_m$	Total rotation at the OLE, CLE, or DE strain limits
$\theta_{p,m}$	Plastic rotation at the OLE, CLE, or DE strain limits
$\theta_{p,dem}$	Plastic rotation at displacement demand
$\theta_u$	Ultimate rotation
$\theta_y$	Idealized yield rotation
$\rho$	Volumetric ratio of longitudinal reinforcing steel
$\rho_s$	Effective volumetric ratio of confining steel
$\xi_{eff,n}$	Effective system damping for iteration $n$ at $\Delta_{t,n-1}$

### Acronyms/Definitions

AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
AC	Asphalt Concrete
ACI	American Concrete Institute
AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction
AF&PA	American Forest and Paper Association
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
AREMA	American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Associates
ASD	Allowable Stress Design
ATC	Applied Technology Council
AWS	American Welding Society
CALTRANS	California Department of Transportation
CBC	California Building Code
CLE	Contingency Level Earthquake
Cooper E-80	Railroad load type per AREMA
CPT	Cone Penetration Test
CQC	Complete Quadratic Combination
c.g.	Center of gravity
DCR	Demand-to-capacity Ratio
DE	Code-level Design Earthquake
DMG	Division of Mines and Geology
e.g.	For example
FEMA	Federal Emergency Management Agency
FHWA	Federal Highway Administration
FOS	Factor of Safety
ft	Foot/ Feet
HL-93	Truck load type per AASHTO
in.	Inch/ Inches
Joint	Pile beam/deck joint
klf	Kips per foot
ksi	Kips per square foot
LOA	Length Overall
LRFD	Load Resistance Factor Design
MCEER	Multidisciplinary Center for Earthquake Engineering Research
MHHW	Mean Higher-High Water
MHW	Mean High Water
MLLW	Mean Lower-Low Water
MLW	Mean Low Water
MSL	Mean Sea Level
mph	Miles per hour
$M-\phi$	Moment-curvature analysis
NAVD 88	North American Vertical Datum of 1988



NAVFAC	Naval Facilities Engineering Command
NCEER	National Center for Earthquake Engineering Research
NCHRP	National Cooperative Highway Research Program
NDS	National Design Specification
NEHRP	National Earthquake Hazards Reduction Program
NGVD 29	National Geodetic vertical Datum of 1929
NSF	National Science Foundation
NTHA	Nonlinear Time-History Analysis
N/A	Not Applicable
OLE	Operating Level Earthquake
PCI	Prestressed Concrete Institute
PIANC	International Navigation Association
PGA	Peak ground acceleration
POLB	Port of Long Beach
pcf	Pounds per cubic foot
psf	Pounds per square foot
p-q	Pile tip soil springs
p-y	Pile lateral soil springs
RO-RO	Roll-on/Roll-off vessels
SDC	Seismic Design Criteria
SLC	State Lands Commission
SLD	Service Load Design
t-z	Pile axial soil springs
UCSD	University of California at San Diego
UFC	Unified Facilities Criteria
USACE	United States Army Corps of Engineers
WDC	Wharf Design Criteria
Wharf exterior unit	A wharf structure with an expansion joint at one end
Wharf interior unit	A wharf structure with expansion joints at both ends

# 1 Introduction

This document contains design guidelines and criteria for pile supported wharf construction. It is published by the Port of Long Beach (POLB or Port) to assist engineering staff of the POLB, as well as consulting firms providing consulting services related to the design of wharves for the POLB. Any deviation from the criteria listed herein will require specific prior written approval from the Port.

Design guidelines and reference materials cited throughout this document will be revised from time to time as required. Updates and revisions occurring during design shall be followed as directed by the Port.

This document is Version 3.0 of the “Port of Long Beach Wharf Design Criteria” and it supersedes the previous Version 2.0 that was published on January 30, 2009 and Version 1.0 that was published in March 2007.

This document was prepared for the POLB under the leadership of Cheng Lai, P.E., S.E., Senior Structural Engineer, POLB, and by a team of consultants consisting of Moffatt & Nichol and Earth Mechanics, Inc. The expert review team included Dr. Nigel Priestley, Emeritus Professor, Department of Structural Engineering, University of California, San Diego and Dr. Geoffrey Martin, Emeritus Professor, Department of Civil Engineering, University of Southern California.

This page intentionally left blank.

## 2 Geotechnical Considerations

Geotechnical evaluations identified in this section shall use methodologies that are considered acceptable standards of practice in the industry.

For seismic evaluations, ground motion criteria provided in Section 2.1 shall be used. Ground motions and response spectra are provided in the “Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 17), “Port-wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California, Addendum to Final Report” (Ref. 18), and “Addendum No. 2 to Port-wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 19). No deviation from these ground motions shall be allowed without prior written approval by the Port.

These guidelines are specific to pile-supported marginal wharves with engineered sloping ground conditions located under the wharf structure comprising dredged soils or cut slopes protected or stabilized by quarry run rock material. Applicability of these guidelines to other structures may be allowed upon written approval by the Port.

### 2.1 Ground Motions

Three earthquake levels shall be used in the analysis and design of wharf structures: the Operational Level Earthquake (OLE), the Contingency Level Earthquake (CLE), and the Code-level Design Earthquake (DE). The OLE and CLE correspond to different probabilities of occurrence (different average return periods). The DE corresponds to a larger and rare earthquake than the OLE and CLE. The three levels of ground motions are defined below:

#### *Operating Level Earthquake (OLE)*

The OLE is defined as the seismic event that produces ground motions associated with a 72-year return period. The 72-year return period ground motions have a 50% probability of being exceeded in 50 years. The OLE event occurs more frequently than the CLE and DE events and has a lower intensity.

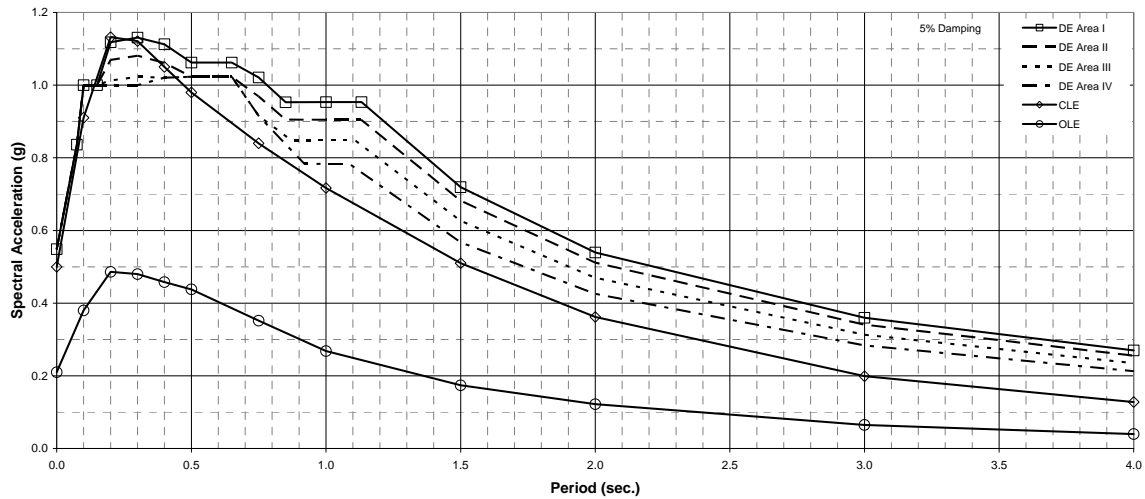
#### *Contingency Level Earthquake (CLE)*

The CLE is defined as the seismic event that produces ground motions associated with a 475-year return period. The 475-year return period ground motions have a 10 percent probability of being exceeded in 50 years. The CLE event occurs less frequently than the OLE event, but more frequently than the DE event. The CLE event has a higher intensity than the OLE event, but lower intensity than the DE event.

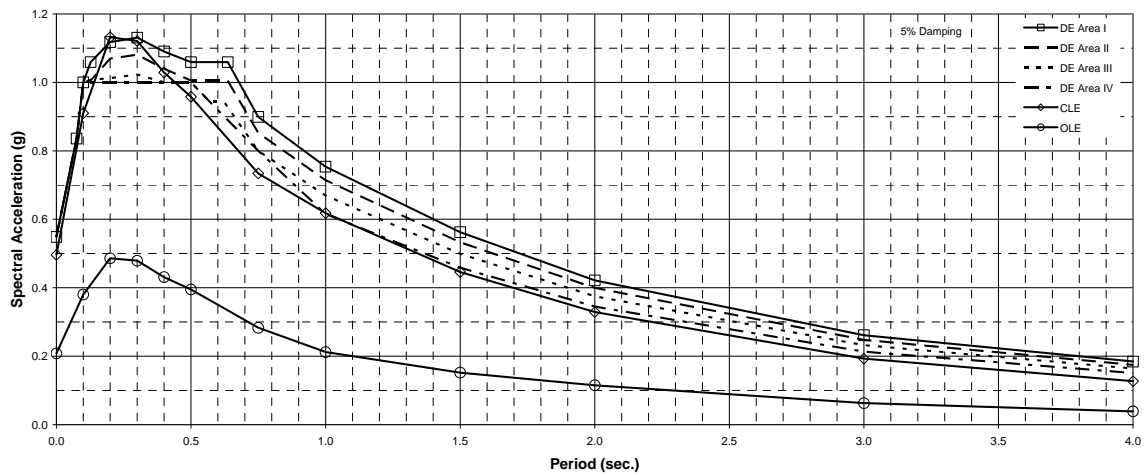
#### *Code-level Design Earthquake (DE)*

The DE shall comply with the Design Earthquake requirements of the 2010 California Building Code (Ref. 13) and ASCE 7-05 (Ref. 9). The DE event occurs less frequently than the OLE and CLE events and has a higher intensity than the other two events.

Recommended design acceleration response spectra for OLE, CLE and DE for different ground conditions are shown in Figure 2-1 and Figure 2-2. Further details are provided in References 17 and 18.



**Figure 2-1: Design Acceleration Response Spectra for Unimproved Ground Conditions**



**Figure 2-2: Design Acceleration Response Spectra for Improved Ground Conditions**

## 2.2 Site Characterization

Site characterization shall be based on site-specific information. Reviewing and cataloging available geotechnical information from past Port projects shall be performed to maximize the use of available data and to avoid conducting additional explorations where information already exists.

The presence of known active faults shall be verified using the available geological information such as the California Geological Survey (Ref. 21). If a new fault is found at the project site, a peer review is required per Section 4.14.

Adequate coverage of subsurface data, both horizontally and vertically, shall be provided to develop geotechnical parameters that are appropriate for the project. An adequate number of explorations should extend to depths of at least 20 feet below the deepest anticipated foundation depths and should be deep enough to characterize subsurface materials that are affected by embankment behavior. Particular attention should be given during the field exploration to the presence of continuous low-strength layers or thin soil layers that could liquefy or weaken during the design earthquake shaking or cause embankment failure during dredging or other construction activities. Cone penetration tests (CPT) provide continuous subsurface profile and, therefore, should be used on large projects to complement exploratory borings. When CPTs are performed, at least one boring shall be performed next to one of the CPT soundings to check that the CPT-soil behavior type interpretations are reasonable for the project site. Any differences between CPT interpretations and subsurface conditions obtained from borings shall be reconciled prior to developing geotechnical design parameters.

An appropriate and sufficient number of laboratory tests shall be performed to provide the necessary soil parameters for geotechnical evaluations. Guidelines for site characterization can be found in “Soil Mechanics” (Ref. 28) and “Design and Construction of Driven Pile Foundations” (Ref. 20) or other appropriate documents.

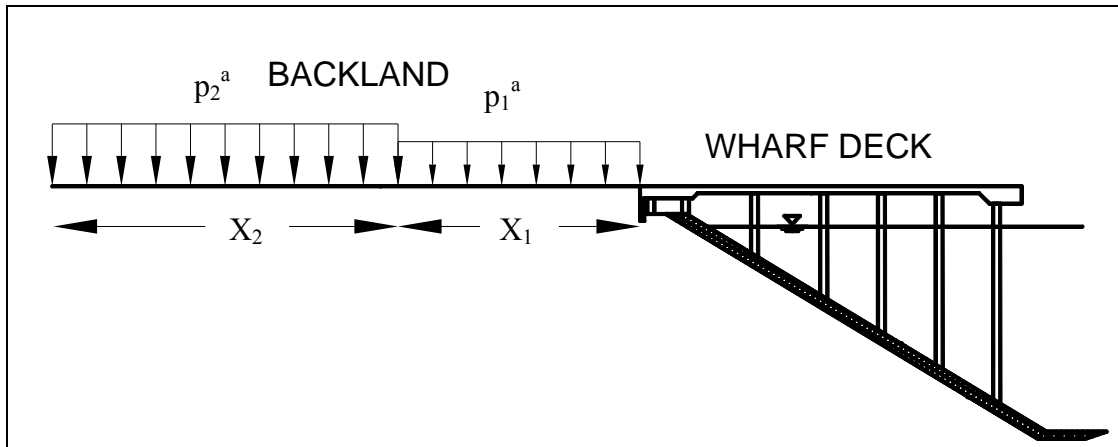
### **2.3 Liquefaction Potential**

Liquefaction potential of the soils in the immediate vicinity of or beneath the wharf structure and associated embankment or rock dike shall be evaluated for the OLE, CLE, and DE. Liquefaction potential evaluation should follow the procedures outlined in “Liquefaction Resistance of Soils: Summary Report from the 1996 NCEER and 1998 NCEER/NSF Workshops on Evaluation of Liquefaction Resistance of Soils” (Ref. 39), “Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Liquefaction Hazards in California” (Ref. 24), “Chapter 31F, 2010 California Building Code” (Ref. 14), and “Liquefaction Susceptibility Criteria for Silts and Clays” (Ref. 12).

If liquefaction is shown to be initiated in the above evaluations, the particular liquefiable strata and their thicknesses, including zones of liquefaction induced in the backland area, should be clearly shown on site profiles. Resulting hazards associated with liquefaction should be addressed, including translational or rotational deformations of the slope or embankment system and post liquefaction settlement of the slope or embankment system and underlying foundation soils. If such analyses indicate the potential for partial or gross failure of the embankment, adequate evaluations shall be performed to confirm such conditions exist. In these situations, and for projects where more detailed numerical analyses are performed, a peer review is required per Section 4.14.

### **2.4 Slope Stability and Seismically Induced Lateral Spreading**

The surcharge loading values for different loading conditions and the required minimum factors of safety values are discussed in Sections 2.4.1, 2.4.2, and 2.4.3 and presented in Table 2-1. These recommended surcharge loading values may be revised based on project-specific load information, upon prior written approval by the Port.

**Table 2-1: Minimum Requirement for Slope Stability Analyses**


Load Condition	$p_1^a$ (psf)	$X_1$ (ft)	$p_2^a$ (psf)	$X_2$ (ft)	Min. FOS <sup>b</sup>
Static Condition	250	75	1,200	Remaining Backland	1.5
Temporary Condition (See Section 2.4.1)	250	Entire Backland	-	-	1.25
Pseudo-static Seismic Condition	250	75	800	Remaining Backland	- <sup>c</sup>
Post-earthquake Static Condition	250	75	800	Remaining Backland	1.1

<sup>a</sup> Load values may be revised based on project-specific information, upon prior written approval by the Port.

<sup>b</sup> FOS – Factor of Safety.

<sup>c</sup> Yield acceleration shall be obtained from the analysis to determine lateral deformations per Section 2.9.2.

### 2.4.1 Static Slope Stability

Static slope stability analysis shall be performed for the slope or embankment system. Backland loading shall be considered in the analyses. Slope stability analyses should follow guidelines outlined in “Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Landslide Hazards in California” (Ref. 10), or other appropriate documents. Backland loading shall be 250 psf for the first 75 feet from the back end of the wharf deck and 1,200 psf for the remaining backland area, see Table 2-1. The long-term static factor of safety of the slope or embankment shall not be less than 1.5.

For temporary conditions, the static factor of safety shall not be less than 1.25. The loading considerations shall be based on project-specific information (such as terminal operation, construction staging, etc.). The surcharge loading value shall not be less than 250 psf for the entire backland area, see Table 2-1.

### **2.4.2 Pseudo-static Seismic Slope Stability**

Pseudo-static seismic slope stability analyses shall be performed to estimate the horizontal yield acceleration for the slope for the OLE, CLE, and DE. During the seismic event, the backland loading shall be 250 psf for the first 75 feet from the back end of the wharf deck and 800 psf for the remaining backland area, see Table 2-1.

If liquefaction and/or strength loss of the site soils is likely, residual strength of liquefied soils, strengths compatible with the pore-pressure generation of potentially liquefiable soils, and/or potential strength reduction of clays shall be used in the analysis. The residual strength of liquefied soils should be estimated using guidelines outlined in “Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Liquefaction Hazards in California” (Ref. 24), “Recent Advances in Soil Liquefaction Engineering: A Unified and Consistent Framework” (Ref. 34), or other appropriate documents.

Using a seismic coefficient of one-third of the PGA or 0.15g, whichever is greater, in the pseudo-static seismic slope stability analyses the factor of safety shall be estimated without considering the presence of wharf piles. If the estimated factor of safety is greater than or equal to 1.1, then no further evaluation for deformations or kinematic analysis as outlined in Sections 2.4.4 and 2.9.2 is necessary.

### **2.4.3 Post-earthquake Static Slope Stability**

The static factor of safety immediately following OLE, CLE or DE event shall not be less than 1.1 when post-earthquake residual strength of liquefied soils, strengths compatible with the pore-pressure generation of potentially liquefiable soils, and/or potential strength reduction of clays are used in the static stability analysis. The backland loading for post-earthquake stability analyses shall be 250 psf for the first 75 feet from the back end of the wharf deck and 800 psf for the remaining backland area, see Table 2-1.

### **2.4.4 Lateral Spreading – Free-Field**

The earthquake-induced lateral deformations of the slope or embankment and associated foundation soils shall be determined for the OLE, CLE, and DE using the peak ground acceleration at the ground surface (not modified for liquefaction) based on the “Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 17) and “Port-wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California, Addendum to Final Report” (Ref. 18). If liquefaction and/or strength loss of the site soils is likely, residual strength of liquefied soils, strengths compatible with the pore-pressure generation of potentially liquefiable soils, and/or potential strength reduction of clays should be used in the analysis. The wharf piles should not be included in the “free-field” evaluations.

For the OLE and CLE, initial lateral spread estimates should be made using the Newmark curves provided in “Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 17). For the DE, initial lateral spread estimates should be made using the Newmark displacement curves provided in “Seismic Analysis and Design of Retaining Walls, Buried Structures, Slopes and Embankments” (Ref. 36) or other appropriate documents. Additional analyses may be performed with prior written approval by the Port.



## **2.5 Settlement**

### **2.5.1 Static Consolidation Settlement**

Long-term static consolidation settlement of sites that are underlain by continuous or large lenses of fine-grained soils shall be evaluated. The long-term static settlement should be estimated following guidelines outlined in “Foundation and Earth Structures” (Ref. 27) or other appropriate documents. If long-term settlement is anticipated, the resulting design impacts shall be considered, including the potential for development of downdrag loads on piles (See Section 2.7.1).

### **2.5.2 Seismically Induced Settlement**

Seismically induced settlement shall be evaluated. The seismically induced settlement should be based on guidelines outlined in “Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Liquefaction Hazards in California” (Ref. 24) or other appropriate documents. If seismically induced settlement is anticipated, the resulting design impacts shall be considered, including the potential development of downdrag loads on piles (See Section 2.7.1).

## **2.6 Earth Pressures**

### **2.6.1 Earth Pressures Under Static Loading**

The effect of static active earth pressures on wharf structures resulting from static loading of backfill soils shall be considered where appropriate. Backfill sloping configuration, if applicable, and backland loading conditions shall be considered in the evaluations. The loading considerations shall be based on project-specific information, with a minimum assumed surcharge loading value of 250 psf. The earth pressures under static loading should be based on guidelines outlined in “Foundation and Earth Structures” (Ref. 27) or other appropriate documents.

### **2.6.2 Earth Pressures Under Seismic Loading**

The effect of earth pressures on wharf structure resulting from seismic loading of backfill soils, including the effect of pore-water pressure build-up in the backfill, shall be considered. The seismic coefficients used for this analysis should be based on the earthquake magnitudes, peak ground accelerations, and durations of shaking provided in “Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 17) and “Port-wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California, Addendum to Final Report” (Ref. 18). Backfill sloping configuration, if applicable, and backland loading conditions shall be considered in the evaluations. The loading considerations shall be based on project-specific information, with a minimum assumed surcharge loading value of 250 psf. Mononabe-Okabe equations may be used to estimate earth pressures under seismic loading, if appropriate. Refer to “Foundation and Earth Structures” (Ref. 27); “Seismic Analysis and Design of Retaining Walls, Buried Structures, Slopes, and Embankments” (Ref. 36). If Mononabe-Okabe equations are not appropriate, methods outlined in “Seismic Analysis and Design of Retaining Walls, Buried Structures, Slopes, and Embankments” (Ref. 36) or other appropriate methods may be used.

## 2.7 Pile Axial Behavior

These guidelines are based on the assumption that piles are driven into the dense to very dense soil layer that is generally present throughout the Port area at elevations approximately -80 feet to -100 feet MLLW and below. If piles are not embedded into this layer, additional guidelines may be applicable and the geotechnical engineer should provide recommendations for review and approval by the Port.

### 2.7.1 Pile Capacity

Axial geotechnical capacity of piles shall be evaluated using the load combinations in

Table 3-3. Guidelines for estimating axial pile capacities are provided in “Foundation and Earth Structures” (Ref. 27), “Recommended Procedures for Planning, Designing, and Constructing Fixed Offshore Platforms” (Ref. 5), and other appropriate documents. A minimum factor of safety of 2.0 shall be achieved on the ultimate axial capacity of pile when using the largest of the service load combinations provided in

Table 3-3. In addition, piles supporting the waterside crane rail girder should have a minimum factor of safety of 1.5 on ultimate axial capacity of pile when using the broken pile load combinations provided in Table 3-1.

If long-term soil settlement is anticipated (See Section 2.5.1) above the pile tip, the effects of downdrag on axial geotechnical and structural capacity of piles shall be evaluated. The geotechnical capacity when evaluating the effects of downdrag loads should be estimated by considering only the tip resistance of the pile and the side friction resistance below the lowest layer contributing to the downdrag. Due to the short-term nature of transient loads (loads other than dead load), the factor of safety for the downdrag load evaluation may be reduced when downdrag loads are combined with transient loads. A minimum factor of safety of 1.5 should be achieved when combining the downdrag with the maximum of the service load estimated using load combination per

Table 3-3. For the earthquake load case in, an additional 10% of the design uniform live load should be included, per Section 4.5.2. However, the factor of safety should not be less than 2.0 when downdrag loads are combined with dead loads only. The geotechnical engineer should provide the magnitude of the downdrag load and its extent along the pile to the structural engineer.

An alternate approach to the evaluation of long-term settlement induced downdrag loads is to estimate the pile top settlement under the downdrag load plus service load and to design the structure to tolerate the resulting settlement.

If liquefaction or seismically-induced settlement are anticipated (See Section 2.5.2), the ultimate pile axial geotechnical capacity under seismic conditions shall be evaluated for the effects of liquefaction and/or downdrag forces on the pile. The ultimate geotechnical capacity of the pile during liquefaction should be determined on the basis of the residual strength of the soil for those layers where the factor of safety for liquefaction is determined to be less than or equal to 1.0. When seismically-induced settlements are predicted to occur during design earthquakes, the downdrag loads should be calculated, and the combination of downdrag load and service load should be determined. Only the

tip resistance of the pile and the side friction resistance below the lowest layer contributing to the downdrag should be used in the capacity evaluation. The ultimate axial geotechnical capacity of the pile should not be less than the combination of the seismically induced downdrag load and the maximum of the service load combinations.

### **2.7.2 Axial Springs for Piles**

The geotechnical engineer shall coordinate with the structural engineer and develop axial springs (t-z) for piles. The t-z springs may be developed either at the top or at the tip of the pile, see Figure 2-3. If the springs are developed at the pile tip, the tip should include both the frictional resistance along the pile (i.e., side springs [t-z]) and tip resistance at the pile tip (i.e., tip springs [q-w]), as illustrated in Figure 2-3. If t-z springs are developed at the pile top, the appropriate elastic shortening of the pile should also be included in the springs. Linear or nonlinear springs may be developed if requested by the structural engineer.

During development of the axial soil springs, the ultimate capacity of the soil resistance along the side of the pile and at the tip of the pile should be used. Normally, it is assumed that the soil resistance along the side of the pile is developed at very small displacement (e.g., less than 0.5 inches) while the resistance at the tip of the pile will require large displacements (e.g., 5% of the pile diameter).

### **2.7.3 Upper and Lower Bound Springs**

Due to the uncertainties associated with the development of axial springs (t-z), such as the axial soil capacity, load distributions along the pile, and the simplified spring stiffnesses used, both upper bound (UB) and lower bound (LB) limits should be used for the axial springs. The UB and LB springs should be developed by multiplying the load values estimated in Section 2.7.2 by 2 and 0.5, respectively, to be used in the structural analysis. Different values may be acceptable if supported by rational analysis and/or testing and upon written approval by the Port.

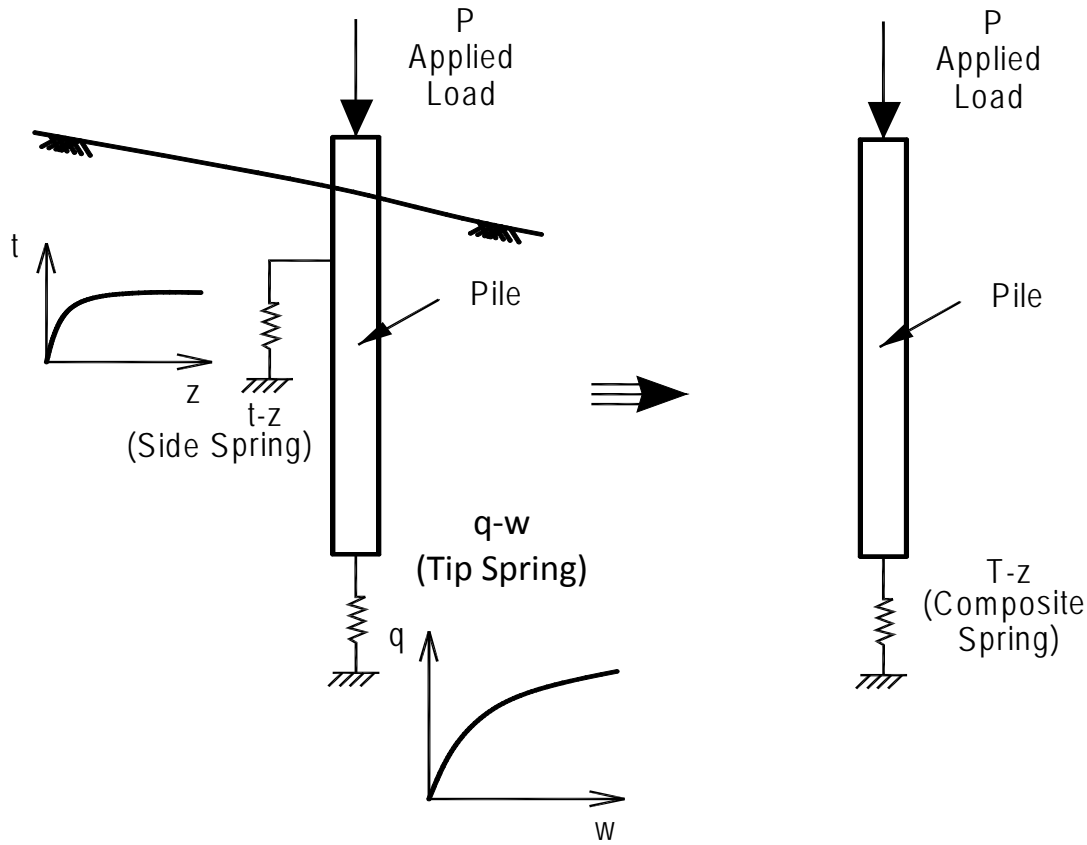


Figure 2-3: Axial Soil Springs

## 2.8 Soil Behavior under Lateral Pile Loading

### 2.8.1 Soil Springs for Lateral Pile Loading

For the design of piles under loading associated with the inertial response of the wharf structure, level-ground inelastic lateral springs ( $p$ - $y$ ) shall be developed. The lateral springs within the shallow portion of the piles (generally within 10 pile diameters below the ground surface) tend to dominate the inertial behavior. Geotechnical parameters for developing lateral soil springs may follow guidelines provided in “Recommended Practice for Planning, Designing, and Constructing Fixed Offshore Platforms” (Ref. 5) or other appropriate documents.

### 2.8.2 Upper and Lower Bound Soil Springs

Due to uncertainties associated with the development of lateral springs ( $p$ - $y$ ), such as uncertainties arising from rock properties, rock placement method, and sloping rock dike configuration, UB and LB  $p$ - $y$  springs shall be developed for use in the wharf structure inertial response analyses. For typical marginal container wharf slope/embankment/dike system at the Port, the UB and LB springs shall use 2 times and 0.3 times the load values of the lateral spring developed per Section 2.8.1. Upon written approval by the Port,

rational analysis and/or testing may be performed to justify the use of different values. For other wharf slope/embankment/dike types, the UB and LB springs should be developed on a site-specific basis.

## **2.9 Soil-pile Interaction**

Two separate load conditions for the piles analysis shall be considered: (1) Inertial loading under OLE, CLE and DE, and (2) Kinematic loading from lateral ground spreading. Inertial loading is associated with earthquake-induced lateral loading on the wharf structure, while kinematic loading refers to the loading on wharf piles from earthquake induced lateral deformations of the slope/embankment/dike system.

For typical marginal container wharves at the Port (vertical pile wharf configurations with typical slope/embankment/dike system), the inertial loading condition induces maximum moments in the upper regions of the pile, and the kinematic loading condition induces maximum moments in the lower regions of the pile. The locations of the maximum moments from these two load conditions are sufficiently far apart so that the effects of moment superposition are normally negligible. Furthermore, maximum moments induced by the two load conditions tend to occur at different times during the earthquake. Therefore, for typical marginal container wharves at the Port, these load conditions can be uncoupled (separated) from each other during design. For other wharf types, this assumption should be checked on a project-specific basis.

### **2.9.1 Inertial Loading Under Seismic Conditions**

The evaluation of wharf structure response under inertial loading is discussed in Section 4. The lateral soil springs developed following the guidelines provided in Section 2.8 shall be used in the inertial loading response analyses. The wharf structure analysis under inertial loading can be performed by ignoring the slope/embankment/dike system deformations (i.e., one end of the lateral soil spring at a given depth is attached to the corresponding pile node and the other end is assumed fixed).

### **2.9.2 Kinematic Loading from Lateral Spreading**

Kinematic loading from permanent ground deformation in the deep seated levels of the slope/embankment/dike foundation soils shall be evaluated. The lateral deformations shall be restricted to such amounts that the structural performance of wharf piles is not compromised as defined by pile strain limits outlined in Table 4-1. The lateral deformation of the embankment or dike and associated wharf piles and foundation soils shall be determined using proven analytical methods as outlined below.

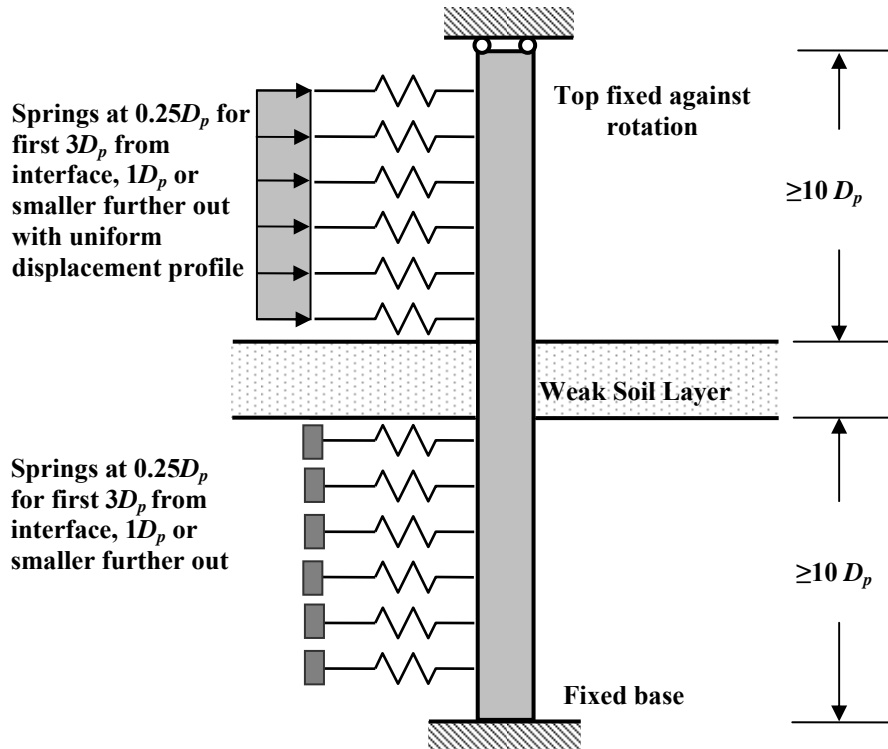
Analysis for kinematic loading may not be required if it can be shown that a previously conducted dynamic soil-structure interaction analysis of a similar wharf representing a conservative UB solution results in higher pile curvature demands than the wharf under consideration, and still satisfies the strain limits for the pile.

Where analysis is required, initial estimates of free-field dike deformations (in the absence of piles) may be determined using the simplified Newmark sliding block method using the curves provided in "Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California" (Ref. 17) for the OLE and CLE, as discussed in Section 2.4.4. For the DE,

initial estimate of the free-field dike deformations should be made using the curves provided in “Seismic Analysis and Design of Retaining Walls, Buried Structures, Slopes and Embankments” (Ref. 36) or other appropriate documents as discussed in Section 2.4.4. For the 24-inch octagonal, precast, prestressed concrete piles and pile configurations that are typically used for Port wharf structures, deformations are generally considered acceptable in terms of pile strain limits and performance criteria when the permanent free-field dike deformations are less than about 3 inches for the OLE, less than about 12 inches for the CLE and less than about 36 inches for DE conditions. Additional kinematic analysis is not required if the free-field dike deformations are less than these limits.

In cases where dike deformations estimated using the simplified Newmark sliding block method exceed the above displacement limits, site-response evaluations may be necessary to revise the free-field dike deformation analyses. Upon written approval by the Port, one-dimensional site response analyses may be performed to incorporate local site effects in developing site-specific acceleration time-histories at the base of the sliding block (“within motions”) for Newmark analyses. For the OLE and CLE, the firm-ground time-histories provided in “Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 17) should be used as the basis for determining input in the site-response evaluations. For the DE, time-histories will be provided by the Port. Sensitivity analyses should also be performed on factors affecting the results. The site-specific time-histories representing the “within motions” should then be used in the simplified Newmark sliding block method to revise the dike deformation estimates. If the revised dike deformations still exceed the acceptable values, more detailed numerical soil-structure interaction evaluations may be necessary.

A full soil-structure interaction numerical analysis for kinematic loading may not be required if it can be shown by structural analysis that reduced displacement demands estimated by simplified Newmark evaluations incorporating pile “pinning” effects are structurally acceptable, as discussed in the following publications: “Recommended LRFD Guidelines for the Seismic Design of Highway Bridges” (Ref. 8) and “Seismic Analysis and Design of Pile Supported Wharves” (Ref. 11). The geotechnical engineer should provide the structural engineer with level-ground p-y springs for the weak soil layer and soil layers above and below the weak layer using appropriate overburden pressures for performing a simplified pushover analysis to estimate the OLE, CLE and DE displacement capacities and corresponding pile shear within the weak soil zone. For the pushover analysis, the estimated displacements may be uniformly distributed within the thickness of the weak soil layer (i.e., zero at and below the bottom of the layer to the maximum value at and above the top of the weak layer). At some distance above and below the weak soil layer, see Figure 2-4, the pile should be fixed against rotation, and also against translation relative to the soil displacement. Between these two points (at least  $10D_p$  from the soil layer), lateral soil springs are provided, which allow deformation of the pile relative to the deformed soil profile. The geotechnical engineer should perform pseudo-static slope stability analysis (Section 2.4.2) with the “pinning” effects of piles arising from pile shear in the weak zone incorporated and estimate the displacement demands using simplified Newmark analysis. If the estimated displacement demands are less than the displacement capacities as defined by the structural engineer, no further analysis for kinematic loading will be necessary.



**Figure 2-4: Sliding Layer Model**

In cases where subsurface conditions indicate the presence of continuous, thin (less than 2 feet), liquefiable and/or soft soils beneath the dike that could result in concentrated deformations within these layers, more detailed numerical analyses may be necessary. Such analyses shall not be performed without prior written approval by the Port.

If more detailed numerical analyses are deemed necessary to provide input to the structural engineer, two-dimensional dynamic soil-structure interaction analysis of the wharf-pile-dike-soil system using numerical finite element or finite difference analyses should be performed. Sensitivity analyses should also be performed on factors affecting the results. As a minimum, deformation profiles along the length of the various pile rows should be provided to the structural engineer to estimate strains and stresses in the piles for the purpose of checking performance criteria. Such analyses should be coordinated with the structural engineer and shall not be performed without prior written approval by the Port.

## 2.10 Ground Improvement

In the event that all the requirements set forth in the above sections cannot be met for a project, ground improvement measures may be considered to meet the requirements. Prior written approval from the Port should be obtained before performing ground improvement evaluations. Ground improvement design recommendations should incorporate construction considerations including constructability, availability of contractors and equipment, schedule impact, and construction cost. Alternatives such as use of additional piles, or accepting greater damage due to larger displacements shall be considered and discussed with the Port.

## 3 Structural Loading Criteria

### 3.1 General

All wharves shall be designed for the loading requirements provided in Section 3. Where loading conditions exist that are not specifically identified, the designer should rely on accepted industry standards. However, in no case shall other standards supersede the requirements provided in this document.

### 3.2 Dead Loads (D)

#### 3.2.1 General

Dead load consists of the weight of the entire structure, including all the permanent attachments such as mooring hardware, fenders, light poles, utility booms, brows, platforms, vaults, sheds, service utility lines, and ballasted pavement. A realistic assessment of all present and future attachments should be made and included.

#### 3.2.2 Unit Weights

Actual and available construction material weights shall be used for design. The following are typical unit weights:

Steel or cast steel	490 pcf
Aluminum alloys	175 pcf
Timber (untreated or treated)	50 pcf
Concrete, reinforced (normal weight)	150 pcf
Concrete, reinforced (lightweight)	120 pcf
Compacted sand, earth, gravel, or ballast	150 pcf
Asphalt paving	150 pcf

### 3.3 Vertical Live Loads (L)

#### 3.3.1 Uniform Loads

The wharf shall be designed for a uniform live load of 1,000 psf, except for areas outboard of the waterside crane rail, which shall be designed for 500 psf. When combined with crane loading, the uniform live load in all areas should be 300 psf with no uniform loading within 5 feet of either side of the crane rails. For the design of wharf piles, the uniform live load may be reduced by 20% (800 psf). All uniform live loads shall be distributed to produce maximum forces. At predetermined locations, the outboard deck slab will also be checked for the loads imposed during loading and unloading of container cranes or other large equipment from their transport vessel. This load will be obtained from the equipment manufacturer and/or transporting company. Under some loading circumstances, a specified area may be designed into the wharf structure to accommodate those extreme loads.



### 3.3.2 Truck Loads

Truck loads shall be in accordance with the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) Standard Specification for Highway Bridges (Ref. 1). The wharf structure shall be designed for HL-93 truck loads shown in AASHTO, increased by a factor of 1.25. Lane loads need not be considered for the deck structure. Impact will be in accordance with Section 3.4. When truck load is transferred through 2.0 feet or deeper ballast fill, the impact factor need not be considered in design.

### 3.3.3 Container Crane Loads

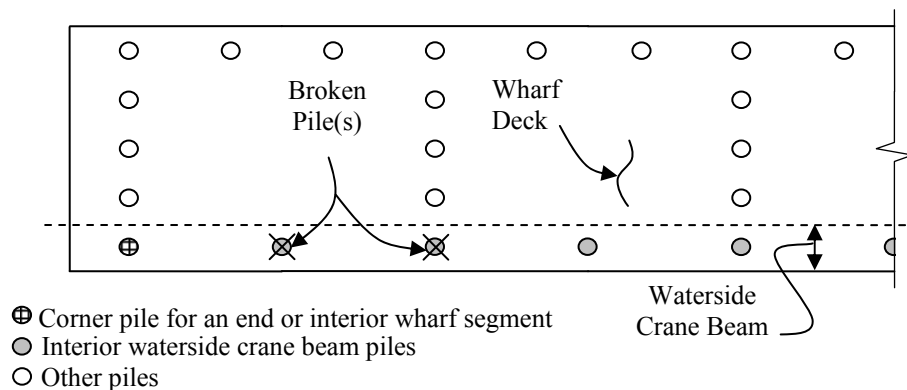
In the absence of actual crane load data from the manufacturer, the following values shall be used:

#### *Crane Rail Loads*

All crane rail beams and supporting substructures shall be designed for the container crane loads shown in Table 3-1. These crane rail loads are unfactored, and include crane dead and live loads. In addition, Table 3-1 shows the load factors for various cases, allowable stress and factors of safety for pile axial soil capacity. The uniform loading shown is based on eight wheels spaced at 5.0 feet on center at each corner of the crane. The factored crane loads shall be used in combination with other loads on the wharf deck, per

Table 3-3, for the design of the crane rail beam and piles.

The waterside crane rail beam shall be designed to span over interior pile(s) that may be damaged or broken, refer to Figure 3-1. The load factors associated with a crane moving over broken piles are shown in Table 3-1.



**Figure 3-1: Broken Piles Layout**

Both waterside and landside crane rail beams shall be designed for a lateral load of 3.0 klf applied at the top of rail.

#### *Crane Stowage Pin*

Crane stowage pins shall be designed for a horizontal force of 250 kips per rail at each location for strong wind conditions. For wind load see Section 3.10.

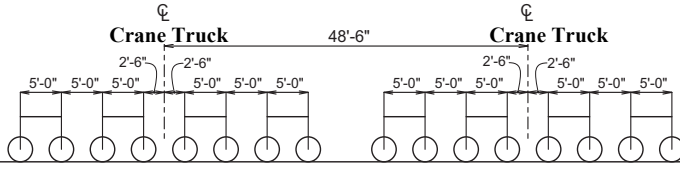
**Crane Stop Load**

Crane stop shall be designed to resist a horizontal runaway wind-blown crane impacting force of 350 kips per rail applied 6.0 feet above the top of the rail, and in a direction parallel to the rail.

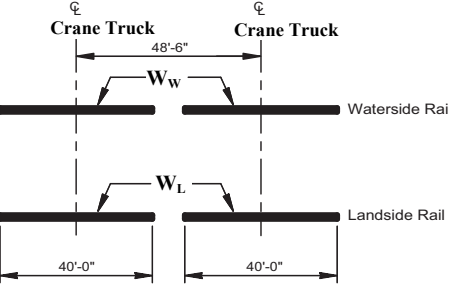
**Table 3-1: Container Crane Vertical Loads**

Load Case	Crane Rail Loads		Load Factor <sup>a</sup>	Flexural Capacity <sup>b</sup>	Pile Soil Capacity Factor of Safety <sup>c</sup>
	W <sub>w</sub> Waterside	W <sub>L</sub> Landside			
Normal operation <sup>d</sup>	50 klf	50 klf	1.3	$\phi M_n$	2.0
One interior pile broken <sup>e</sup>	50 klf	N/A	1.3	$1.1\phi M_n$	1.5
Two adjacent interior piles broken <sup>e,f</sup>	20 klf <sup>g</sup>	N/A	1.2	$1.1\phi M_n$	1.5

<sup>a</sup> These factors represent the combined dead and live load factors applied to the crane loads.  
<sup>b</sup>  $\phi M_n$  is the reduced nominal moment capacity of the crane rail beam or supporting pile head, calculated based on ACI-318.  
<sup>c</sup> This factor of safety is for service load design combinations.  
<sup>d</sup> Crane rail loads are based on 3,000 kips crane dead load with 60 long ton lifting beam, servicing 22 box wide vessels.  
<sup>e</sup> Use for exterior waterside crane girder only. If truck lane exists, the broken pile criteria are not applicable.  
<sup>f</sup> Only wharf dead load and the waterside crane dead weight rail load specified above need to be considered for the case of two adjacent interior piles broken.  
<sup>g</sup> This value represents the crane dead load for moving crane over broken piles only. No crane operations are permitted.



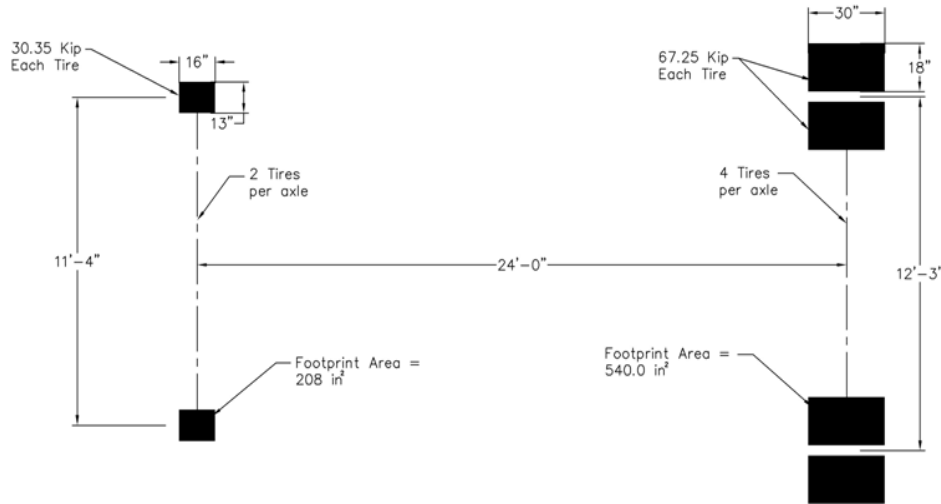
Crane Wheel Spacing



Crane Load Distribution

**3.3.4 Container Handling Equipment Loads**

Wharf deck slab shall be designed for container handler wheel loads shown in Figure 3-2. Wheel loads distribution shall be determined in accordance with AASHTO (Ref. 1). For equipment with hard rubber wheels or other wheels not inflated, the wheel contact area shall be designed as a point load. If handling equipment loading needs to be higher than the load shown in Figure 3-2, load values and distribution shall be provided to the port for approval.



**Figure 3-2: Container Handling Equipment Design Wheel Load**

**3.3.5 Railroad Track Loads**

Wharves accessible by freight car shall be designed for railroad loads. Wheel loads shall correspond to Cooper E-80 designation of “American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Association (AREMA) Manual” (Ref. 6).

**3.4 Impact Factor (I)**

The impact factors shown in Table 3-2 shall be applied to uniform live loads and wheel loads for the design of deck slab, crane beams and pile caps. Impact factors should not be used for the design of piles and other types of substructures.

**Table 3-2: Impact Factors**

Load	Impact Factor (I)
Uniform Loads	0%
Truck Loads	10%
Container Handling Equipment Loads	10%
Railroad Track Loads	20%

**3.5 Buoyancy Loads (BU)**

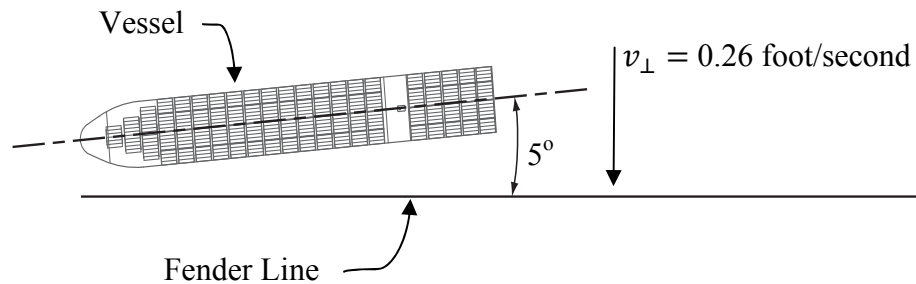
Typically, wharf decks are not kept low enough to be subjected to buoyancy forces. However, portions of the structure, such as utility lines and vaults and bent caps, may be low enough to be subjected to buoyancy forces. These are essentially uplift forces applied at the rate of 64 pounds per square foot of plan area for every foot of submergence below water level.

### 3.6 Berthing Loads (BE)

Berthing loads shall be based on the following vessel characteristics, unless otherwise specified. The approach velocity called out below includes the factor for abnormal berthing and assumes a favorable site condition. The berthing energy shall be determined by the deterministic approach as shown in “Guidelines for the Design of Fender Systems, 2002” (Ref. 22).

LOA (Length Overall)	1,300 feet
Maximum Displacement	220,000 metric tons (1 metric ton $\approx$ 2,205 pounds)
Beam	185 feet
Draft (Max)	51 feet
Allowable Hull Pressure	4 kips/square feet
Approach Velocity Normal to Fender Line, $v_{\perp}$	0.26 foot/second
Approach Angle	5°

Fender shear forces may be calculated using a friction coefficient,  $\mu_f = 30\%$ , at the fender face/ship hull interface. The berthing energy of the rubber fender shall be based on a fender panel deflected angle of 10°. Vessel ship energy shall be resisted by one fender or dual fenders system. If a dual fender system is used, each fender shall have the capacity for 75% of the total berthing energy.



**Figure 3-3: Vessel Berthing**

$$V_F = \mu_f \times R_F \quad (3.1)$$

where:

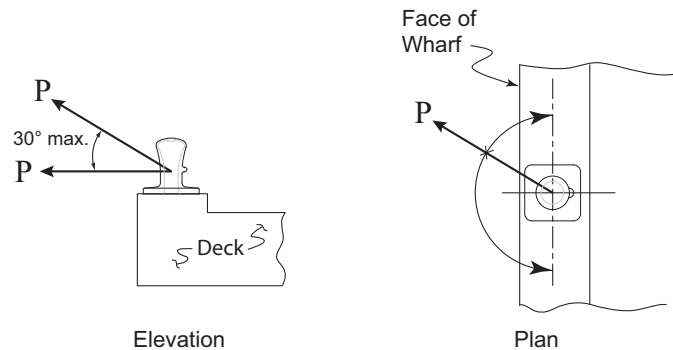
$V_F$	=	Fender shear force
$R_F$	=	Force perpendicular to the fender panel due to berthing load

### 3.7 Mooring Loads (M)

For the design of the wharf structure, mooring line loads (P) shall be equal to the mooring hardware capacity. These line loads shall be applied at angles between horizontal and a maximum of 30° from horizontal in a vertical plane outboard of the wharf face, as shown in Figure 3-4. These load directions represent possible bow and stern breasting line loads. In applying these loads to the wharf structure, consideration should be given to bow and

stern breasting line separations as well as distances to possible adjacent vessel breasting lines. Where applicable, mooring line loads shall also be considered adjacent to expansion joints and/or the end of the structure.

Mooring hardware for container ships shall have a minimum capacity of 200 metric tons. For other types of vessels, which may require higher mooring hardware capacities, a more detailed mooring analysis shall be performed. For mooring analysis use 75 mph design wind speed (30 seconds duration with 25 years return period), for more details refer to 2010 CBC Section 3103F.5 (Ref. 14).



**Figure 3-4: Mooring Line Force**

### 3.8 Earth Pressure Loads (E)

Detailed requirements for static and dynamic earth pressure loads are discussed in Section 2.

### 3.9 Earthquake Loads (EQ)

Wharf structure shall be designed to resist earthquake motions by considering the relationship of the site to active faults, the seismic response of the soils at the site, and the dynamic response characteristics of the total structure and its individual components in accordance with the Seismic Design Criteria described in Section 4.

To account for the effect of vertical ground acceleration on the pile and deck, upper bound and lower bound dead load combinations shall be considered with seismic load.

### 3.10 Wind Loads on Structure (W)

The wind load calculations should be based on 2010 CBC (Ref. 13) and ASCE 7-05 (Ref. 9) with basic wind speed of 85 mph (3-second gust with 50 years return period).

### 3.11 Creep Loads (R)

Creep is a material-specific internal load similar to shrinkage and temperature, and is critical only to prestressed concrete construction. The creep effect is also referred to as rib shortening and shall be evaluated using the PCI Design Handbook (Ref. 31).

### **3.12 Shrinkage Loads (S)**

Open wharf deck constructed from concrete components, are subject to forces resulting from shrinkage of concrete due to the curing process. Shrinkage load is similar to temperature load in the sense that both are internal loads. For long continuous open wharf structures, shrinkage load is significant and should be considered. However, on pile-supported wharf structures, the effect is not as critical as it may seem at first, because over the long time period in which shrinkage takes place, the soil surrounding the piles will slowly “give” and relieve the forces on the piles caused by the shrinking deck. The Prestressed Concrete Institute (PCI) Design Handbook (Ref. 31) is recommended for design of shrinkage.

### **3.13 Temperature Loads (T)**

Thermal loads in structural elements shall be determined based on a temperature increase or decrease of 25° F.

### **3.14 Current Loads on Structure (C)**

If site-specific current velocity data is not available, the current load on structure can be based on current velocity of 1.5 foot per second (Ref. 25). Loads due to tsunami-induced waves can be determined based on current and wave heights presented in Reference 26. Tsunami wave heights in shallow water and particle kinematics can also be obtained from Reference 26. Other structural considerations including uplift and debris impact shall be considered in the wharf design.

### **3.15 Loads Application**

#### *Concentrated Loads*

Wheel loads and outrigger float loads from container handling equipment may be applied at any point on a wharf deck except outboard of the waterside crane rail. The equipment may be oriented in any direction, and the orientation causing the maximum forces on the structural members shall be used in the design. Trucks are permitted to operate outboard of the waterside crane rail. Power trench covers and utility vault covers outboard of the waterside crane rail shall be designed for wheel loads of trucks only; no other concentrated loads shall be used. Loaded containers shall not be stacked on the wharf deck. However, empties may be stacked inboard of the waterside crane rail, and the resulting corner casting compression or punching shear forces due to empty containers stacked six high should be checked.

#### *Simultaneous Loads*

Uniform and concentrated live loads should be applied in a logical, practical manner. Designated uniform live loads and concentrated live loads from pneumatic-tired equipment shall not be applied simultaneously in the same area. However, a uniform live load shall be used between crane rails as described in Section 3.3.1. When railroad tracks are present between crane rails, both crane and railroad track loads shall be applied simultaneously, and no uniform load between crane rails shall be applied.

### ***Loads for Maximum Member Forces***

For determining the shear forces and bending moments in continuous members, the designated uniform and concentrated loads shall be applied to produce the maximum effect.

### ***Critical Loads***

Concentrated loads are generally critical for punching shear and for the design of short spans such as deck slabs, power trench covers and utility vault covers. Uniform load, container handling equipment load, crane loads, and railroad track loads are generally critical for the design of beams, pile caps, and supporting piles.

## **3.16 Load Combinations**

### **3.16.1 General**

Wharf structures shall be proportioned to safely resist the load combinations represented in

Table 3-3. Each component of the structure and the foundation elements shall be analyzed for all applicable combinations. For earthquake load combinations refer to Section 4.

### ***Load Symbols***

D	=	Dead Loads
L	=	Live Loads
I	=	Impact Factor
BU	=	Buoyancy Loads
BE	=	Berthing Loads
M	=	Mooring Loads
E	=	Earth Pressure Loads
W	=	Wind Loads on Structure
R	=	Creep Loads
S	=	Shrinkage Loads
T	=	Temperature Loads
C	=	Current on Structure Loads

### **3.16.2 Load Resistance Factor Design (LRFD)**

Load combinations and load factors used for load resistance factor design are presented in Table 3-3. Concrete and steel structural members shall be designed using the load resistance factor design method. However, concrete structural members shall also be checked for serviceability (i.e., creep, fatigue, and crack control as described in ACI-318 (Ref. 2), and temporary construction loads. Strength reduction factors shall follow ACI-318 (Ref. 2) for reinforced concrete design and AISC (Ref. 4) for structural steel design.

### 3.16.3 Service Load Design (SLD)

Load combinations used for service load design are presented in Table 3-3. The service load approach shall be used for designing vertical foundation capacity and long-term vertical wharf loads.

**Table 3-3: Load Combinations**

LOAD RESISTANCE FACTOR DESIGN (LRFD) <sup>a</sup>									
Case	LOAD COMBINATION FACTORS								
	D	L+I <sup>b</sup>	E	W	BE	M	R+S+T	BU	C
I	1.20	1.60	1.60	1.60	—	—	1.20	1.20	1.20
II <sup>c</sup>	0.90	—	1.60	1.60	—	—	1.20	1.00	1.20
III	1.20	1.00	1.60	1.60	1.60	—	—	1.20	1.20
IV	1.20	1.60	1.60	1.60	—	1.60	—	1.20	1.20
SERVICE LOAD DESIGN (SLD) <sup>d</sup>									
Case	LOAD COMBINATION FACTORS								
	D	L+I	E	W	BE	M	R+S+T	BU	C
I	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	—	—	1.00	1.00	1.00
II	1.00	0.75	1.00	0.75	1.00	—	—	1.00	1.00
III	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	—	1.00	—	1.00	1.00
<sup>a</sup> The Load Resistance Factor Design require the strength reduction factors, $\phi$ as specified in ACI-318 2008. Strength reduction factors shall follow ACI-318 (Ref. 2) for reinforced concrete design and AISC (Ref. 4) for structural steel design. <sup>b</sup> For the load factor of crane load case see Table 3-1. <sup>c</sup> Reduce load factor to 0.9 for dead load (D) to check members for minimum axial load and maximum moment. <sup>d</sup> Increase in allowable stress shall not be used.									



This page intentionally left blank.

## **4 Seismic Design Criteria**

### **4.1 Introduction**

The following criteria identify the minimum requirements for seismic design of wharves. The criteria, which are performance based, require the displacement capacities of the structural members to be greater than the displacement demand imposed by the seismic loads. Where required, structural members are intentionally designed and detailed to deform inelastically for several cycles without significant degradation of strength under earthquake demand.

### **4.2 General Design Criteria**

Wharf design shall consider the following items:

#### ***Ductile Design***

The wharf structure shall be designed as a ductile system. The pile-to-deck interface forms an integral part of the wharf structure, and shall be designed for ductile behavior.

#### ***Structural System***

The structural system shall be based on the strong beam (deck), weak column (pile) frame concept. The pile-deck structural system shall be designed to develop plastic hinges in the piles and not in the deck. This concept is different from the strong column-weak beam structural system concept that is used for the design of buildings. Capacity design is required to ensure that the dependable strengths of the protected members exceed the maximum feasible demand based on high estimates of the flexural strength of piles plastic hinges.

#### ***Pile Connection***

The pile shall be connected to the deck with mild steel dowels (Grade 60). Moment-resisting connection created by extending the prestressing tendons into the wharf deck shall not be permitted.

#### ***Vertical Piles***

An all-vertical (plumb) pile system shall be used, with an appropriate connection at the pile-to-deck interface to ensure ductile performance of the structure. Battered piles shall not be used for the design of new wharves without prior written approval from the Port. Refer to Section 0.0.0.0 for the appropriate use of batter piles.

#### ***Crane Rails***

Beams supporting crane rails shall be supported by vertical piles only. The gage between crane rails shall be maintained by structural members or a wharf deck that spans between the two rails to prevent spreading or loss of gage due to earth movements.

***Bulkheads***

Bulkheads shall be designed for dynamic earth pressures induced during seismic events. Cut-off wall shall be used to prevent loss of soil from the backland and shall not be designed to provide seismic lateral resistance.

***Slope Stability***

A slope stability analysis, including seismic induced movements, shall be performed as outlined in Section 2.

***Utilities & Pipelines***

Utilities shall be designed with flexible connections between the backland area and the wharf capable of sustaining expected wharf movements under CLE response. Flexible connections shall also be provided across wharf deck expansion joints.

**4.3 Performance Criteria**

The ground motions levels provided in Section 2.1 shall be used for the seismic design. The permitted level of structural damage for each ground motion is controlled by the concrete and steel strain limits in piles defined in Section 4.4. The performance criteria of the three-level ground motions are defined below:

***Operating Level Earthquake (OLE)***

Due to an OLE event, the wharf should have no interruption in operations. OLE forces and deformations, including permanent embankment deformations, shall not result in significant structural damage. All damage, if any, shall be cosmetic in nature and located where visually observable and accessible. Repairs shall not interrupt wharf operations.

***Contingency Level Earthquake (CLE)***

Due to a CLE event, there may be a temporary loss of operations that should be restorable within a few months. CLE forces and deformations, including permanent embankment deformations, may result in controlled inelastic structural behavior and limited permanent deformations. All damage shall be repairable and shall be located where visually observable and accessible for repairs.

***Code-level Design Earthquake (DE)***

Due to a DE event, forces and deformations, including permanent embankment deformations, shall not result in the collapse of the wharf and the wharf shall be able to support the design dead loads in addition to cranes dead load. Life safety shall be maintained.

**4.4 Strain Limits**

The strain limits for the OLE, CLE and DE performance levels are defined by the following material strains for concrete piles and steel pipe piles. Strain values calculated in the analysis shall be compared to the following limits:

**Table 4-1: Strain Limits**

Component Strain		Design Level		
		OLE	CLE	DE
Solid Concrete Pile <sup>a</sup>	Top of pile hinge concrete strain	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.005$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.005 + 1.1\rho_s \leq 0.025$	No limit
	In-ground hinge concrete strain	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.005$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.005 + 1.1\rho_s \leq 0.008$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.005 + 1.1\rho_s \leq 0.012$
	Deep In-ground hinge (>10D <sub>p</sub> ) concrete strain	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.008$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.012$	No limit
	Top of pile hinge reinforcing steel strain	$\varepsilon_s \leq 0.015$	$\varepsilon_s \leq 0.6\varepsilon_{smd} \leq 0.06$	$\varepsilon_s \leq 0.8\varepsilon_{smd} \leq 0.08$
	In-ground hinge prestressing steel strain	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.015$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.025$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.035$
	Deep In-ground hinge (>10D <sub>p</sub> ) prestressing steel strain	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.015$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.025$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.050$
Hollow Concrete Pile <sup>b</sup>	Top of pile hinge concrete strain	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.004$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.006$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.008$
	In-ground hinge concrete strain	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.004$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.006$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.008$
	Deep In-ground hinge (>10D <sub>p</sub> ) concrete strain	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.004$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.006$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.008$
	Top of pile hinge reinforcing steel strain	$\varepsilon_s \leq 0.015$	$\varepsilon_s \leq 0.4\varepsilon_{smd} \leq 0.04$	$\varepsilon_s \leq 0.6\varepsilon_{smd} \leq 0.06$
	In-ground hinge prestressing steel strain	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.015$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.020$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.025$
	Deep In-ground hinge (>10D <sub>p</sub> ) prestressing steel strain	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.015$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.025$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.050$

**Table 4-1: Strain Limits (Continued)**

Component Strain		Design Level		
		OLE	CLE	DE
Steel Pipe Piles <sup>c</sup>	Top of pile hinge concrete strain	$\epsilon_c \leq 0.010$	$\epsilon_c \leq 0.025$	No limit
	Top of pile hinge reinforcing steel strain	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.015$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.6\epsilon_{smd} \leq 0.06$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.8\epsilon_{smd} \leq 0.08$
	In-ground hinge hollow pipe steel strain	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.010$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.025$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.035$
	In-ground hinge pipe in-filled with concrete steel strain	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.010$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.035$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.050$
	Deep In-ground hinge (>10D <sub>p</sub> ) hollow pipe steel strain	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.010$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.035$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.050$
<sup>a</sup>	For solid round or octagonal piles.			
<sup>b</sup>	If a hollow concrete pile is in-filled with concrete, the strain limits shall be identical to a solid concrete pile.			
<sup>c</sup>	Steel pipe pile deck connection shall be accomplished by concrete plug with dowel reinforcement.			
Definitions:				
	D <sub>p</sub>	= Pile diameter		
	$\epsilon_c$	= Concrete compression strain		
	$\epsilon_s$	= Steel tensile strain		
	$\epsilon_{smd}$	= Strain at maximum stress of <u>dowel reinforcement</u> ; see Section 4.6.2		
	$\epsilon_p$	= Total prestressing steel tensile strain		
	$\rho_s$	= Effective volumetric ratio of confining steel		

## 4.5 Seismic Analysis

### 4.5.1 Analysis Methods

Analysis of wharf structures shall be performed for each performance level to determine displacement demand and capacity. The capacity shall be based on the pile strain limits defined in Table 4-1. The following analysis methods may be used:

- Nonlinear Static Pushover
- Equivalent Lateral Stiffness Method
- Elastic Stiffness Method
- Substitute Structure Method
- Modal Response Spectra Analysis
- Nonlinear Time-History Analysis

The flow diagram in Figure 4-1 shows the typical steps a designer should follow to complete the seismic analysis and design for a wharf structure. After the design for service static loads has been completed, the performance design shall be performed for OLE, CLE and DE. The seismic design may require additional pile rows or a modified pile layout. A model including the effective section properties, seismic mass, and soil springs shall be prepared. An Equivalent Lateral Stiffness method may be used for preliminary design, if desired. Nonlinear static pushover analysis is always required, and will provide the displacement capacity based on strain limits for all methods. The structural analysis shall account for wharf torsional plan eccentricity, soil structure interaction, multi-directional effects of the ground motion and the interaction between adjacent wharf segments. Displacement demand for regular wharves shall be estimated by the Elastic Stiffness method, the Substitute Structure method, or Modal Response Spectra Analysis. For wharves with irregular geometry, special cases, or when demand/capacity ratios from Modal Response Spectra Analysis are too high, Nonlinear Time-History methods may be employed for the global model to verify the analysis results. Nonlinear Time-History analyses, however, shall not be conducted without prior written approval from the Port.

The maximum pile displacement shall be determined from the demand analysis, and compared to the displacement capacity. The demand determined using the Elastic Stiffness and Substitute Structure methods shall be adjusted for torsional effects using the Dynamic Magnification Factor. If the demand is greater than the capacity, the design must be revised. If the demand is less than the capacity, the pile shear, the beam/deck pile joint and P-Δ effects shall be checked. If the simplified kinematic loading and lateral spreading analysis performed per Section 2.9.2 requirements indicate that the anticipated pile strains for the estimated deformations are likely to exceed the strain limits per Section 4.4, kinematic analysis of the deep in-ground hinge shall be performed in accordance with Section 4.12.

#### 4.5.2 Earthquake Load Combinations

The following load combinations shall be used to determine seismic moment, shear and axial demands for wharf deck and pile cap, and seismic shear and axial force demands for piles:

$$U = (I \pm K) D + 0.1 L + E + EQ \quad (4.1)$$

$$U = (I \pm K) D + E + EQ \quad (4.2)$$

where:

- $U$  = Total design load in moments, shear forces or axial forces
- $K$  =  $(0.5 \times \text{PGA} / \text{gravity})$  where PGA is the peak ground acceleration in feet/second<sup>2</sup> and gravity is 32.2 feet/second<sup>2</sup>
- $D$  = Dead Loads
- $L$  = Live Loads
- $E$  = Earth Pressure Loads
- $EQ$  = Earthquake Loads

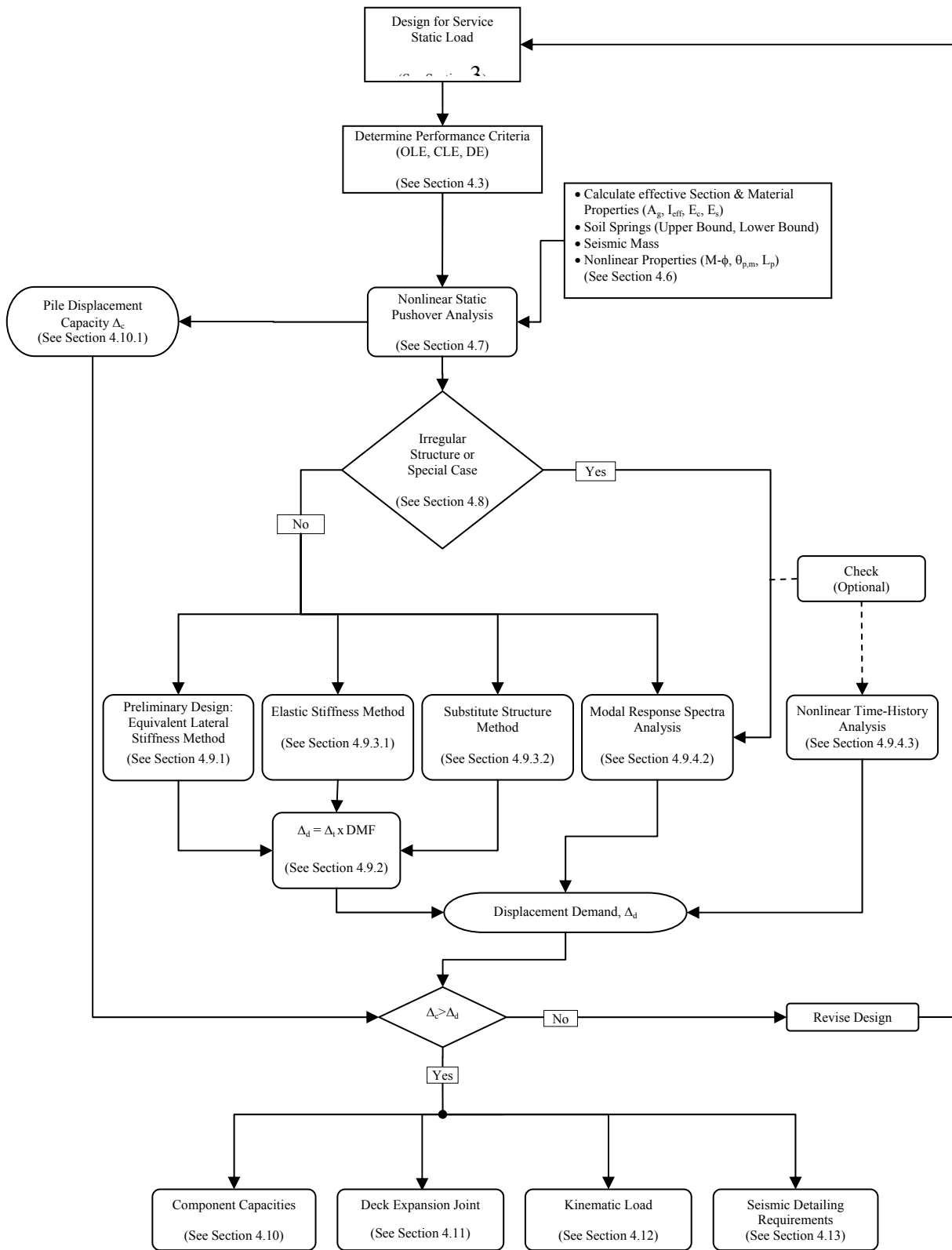
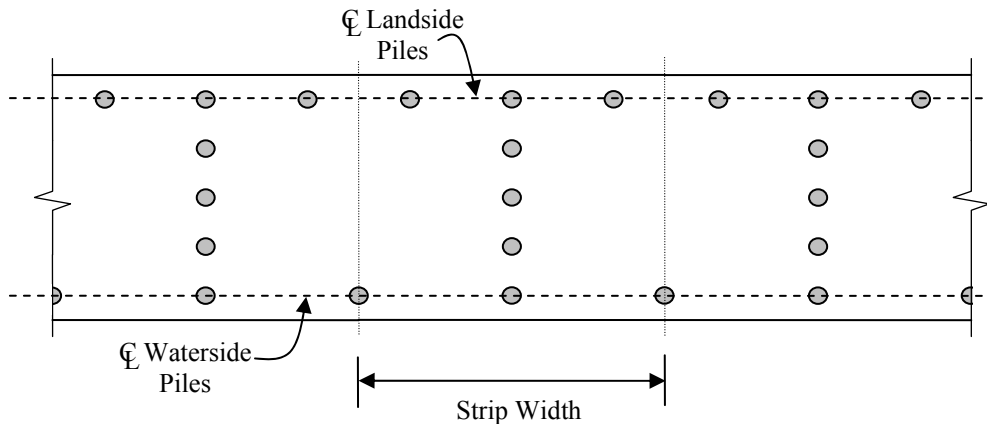


Figure 4-1: Flow Diagram for Seismic Analysis

## 4.6 Structural Model

### 4.6.1 Modeling

Due to the general uniformity and symmetry along the longitudinal axis of regular marginal wharves, the wharf may be modeled as a strip for pure transverse analyses. The number of piles considered in the strip should be modeled to reflect the pile spacing in each row, as shown in Figure 4-2.



**Figure 4-2: Pile Spacing for Modeling of Typical Wharf Strip**

The structural model shall incorporate components for the lateral resisting system. All members shall be modeled at the center of gravity of the section. A minimum of two members for the pile unsupported length from the soffit to the first soil spring shall be used in the modeling. The ratio of the stiffness between the rigid links and the surrounding elements should be no more than 100 to stabilize the stiffness matrix. Soil springs shall be used to model soil-structure interaction, and shall be spaced at each layer to accurately capture the soil behavior. Two distinct models shall be created to model upper bound and lower bound soil springs; see Section 2.7.3.

The interface between the deck and the pile should not be considered entirely rigid. The effective top of the pile should be located a distance  $l_{sp}$  into the deck to account for strain penetration. This additional length applies only to displacements. The strain penetration of the pile section into the deck shall be modeled as a member with properties equivalent to the top of the pile. The member between the strain penetration and the center of gravity (c.g.) of the deck shall be a rigid link. The length of the strain penetration member shall be equal to:

$$l_{sp} = 0.1 f_{ye} d_{bl} \quad (4.3)$$

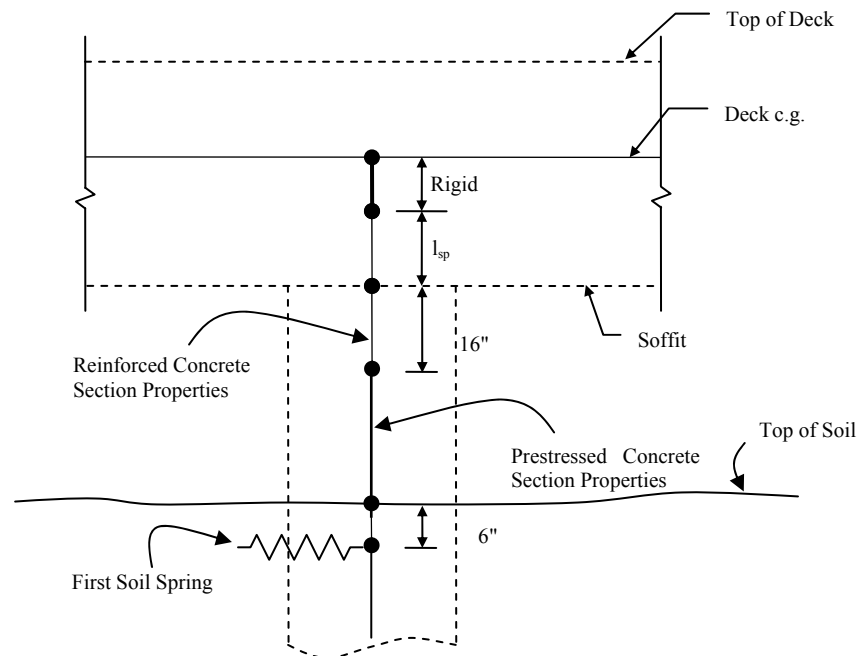
where,

$l_{sp}$  = Strain penetration length (in.)

$d_{bl}$  = The diameter of the dowel reinforcement (in.)



$f_{ye}$  = Expected yield strength of the longitudinal reinforcement, ksi; see Section 4.6.2.



**Figure 4-3: Pile-Deck Structural Model Schematic Showing Strain Penetration Length**

For prestressed piles, the reinforced concrete effective section property per Section 4.6.3 shall be used for the first 16 inches of the pile below the soffit to account for development of the prestressing strands. Below the first 16 inches of the pile, the prestressed concrete effective section properties shall be used, see Section 4.6.3. Maximum pile moment shall be considered to develop at the soffit. Maximum in-ground moment will normally occur at between 50 and 100 inches below the dike surface for 24-inch diameter piles. This value depends on the soil stiffness and strength, and the clear height between the deck soffit and top of dike. To insure adequate precision in modeling the pile moment profile, it is important that the soil springs be closely spaced in the upper region of the pile. For typical 24-inch diameter piles it is recommended that the first soil spring be located 6 inches below the dike surface, then springs be spaced at 12 inches to a depth of about 126 inches. Below this, the spacing can be increased to 24 inches to a depth of about 246 inches, then to 48 inches to a depth of about 390 inches. It will not normally be necessary to model the soil below this depth and the pile can generally be considered fixed against displacement and rotation at a depth of about 500 inches.

#### 4.6.2 Material Properties

The capacity of concrete components to resist all seismic demands, except shear, shall be based on the most probable (expected) material properties to provide a more realistic estimate for design strength.

The expected compressive strength of concrete,  $f'_{ce}$ , recognizes the typically conservative nature of concrete batch design, and the expected strength gain with age. The expected yield strength for reinforcing steel and structural steel,  $f_{ye}$ , is a “characteristic” strength and represents a low estimate of probable strength of the material, which is higher than the specified minimum strength. Expected material properties shall be used to assess capacity and demands for earthquake loads. Seismic shear capacity shall not be based on the expected material strength, see Section 4.10.3. For determining the demand on capacity-protected members, an additional overstrength factor shall be used on the capacity of pile plastic hinges as described in Section 4.10. Except for shear, the expected seismic material strengths shall be:

$$f'_{ce} = 1.3f'_c \quad (4.4)$$

$$f_{ye} = 1.1f_y \quad (4.5)$$

$$f_{yhe} = 1.0f_{yh} \quad (4.6)$$

$$f_{pye} = 1.0f_{py} \quad (4.7)$$

$$f_{pue} = 1.05f_{pu} \quad (4.8)$$

$$E_c = 57,000\sqrt{f'_{ce}} \quad (f'_{ce} \text{ is in psi}) \quad (4.9)$$

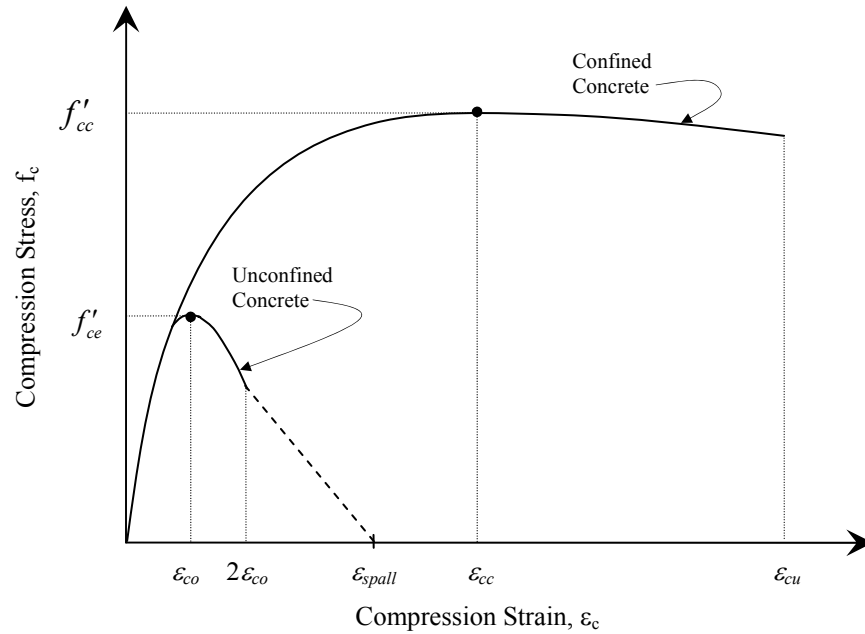
where,

- $f'_c$  = 28-day unconfined compressive strength
- $f_y$  = Yield strength of longitudinal reinforcing steel or structural steel
- $f_{yh}$  = Yield strength of confining steel
- $f_{py}$  = Yield strength of prestressing steel
- $f_{pu}$  = Maximum tensile strength of prestressing steel
- $f'_{ce}, f_{ye}, f_{yhe}, f_{pye}, f_{pue}$  = Expected material properties
- $E_c$  = Modulus of elasticity of concrete

The following stress-strain curves may be used to determine the deformation capacity of the structural members. Alternative stress-strain models are acceptable if adequately documented and supported by test results.

### **Concrete**

The stress-strain curves for both confined and unconfined concrete are shown in Figure 4-4. This model is based on Mander’s model for confined and unconfined concrete (Ref. 35).



**Figure 4-4: Stress-Strain Relationship for Confined and Unconfined Concrete**

*Unconfined Concrete:*

Unconfined concrete either has no confinement steel or the spacing of the confinement steel exceeds 12 inches. For these cases:

$\epsilon_{spall}$  = Ultimate unconfined compression (spalling) strain, taken as 0.005

$\epsilon_{co}$  = Unconfined compression strain at the maximum compressive stress, taken as 0.002

*Confined Concrete:*

For confined concrete, the following are defined:

$$\epsilon_{cu} = 0.005 + 1.1\rho_s \leq 0.025 \quad (4.10)$$

$$\epsilon_{cc} = \epsilon_{co} \left[ 1 + 5 \left( \frac{f'_{cc}}{f'_{ce}} - 1 \right) \right] \quad (4.11)$$

$$f'_{cc} = f'_{ce} \left( -1.254 + 2.254 \sqrt{1 + \frac{7.94 f'_l}{f'_{ce}}} - 2 \frac{f'_l}{f'_{ce}} \right) \quad (4.12)$$

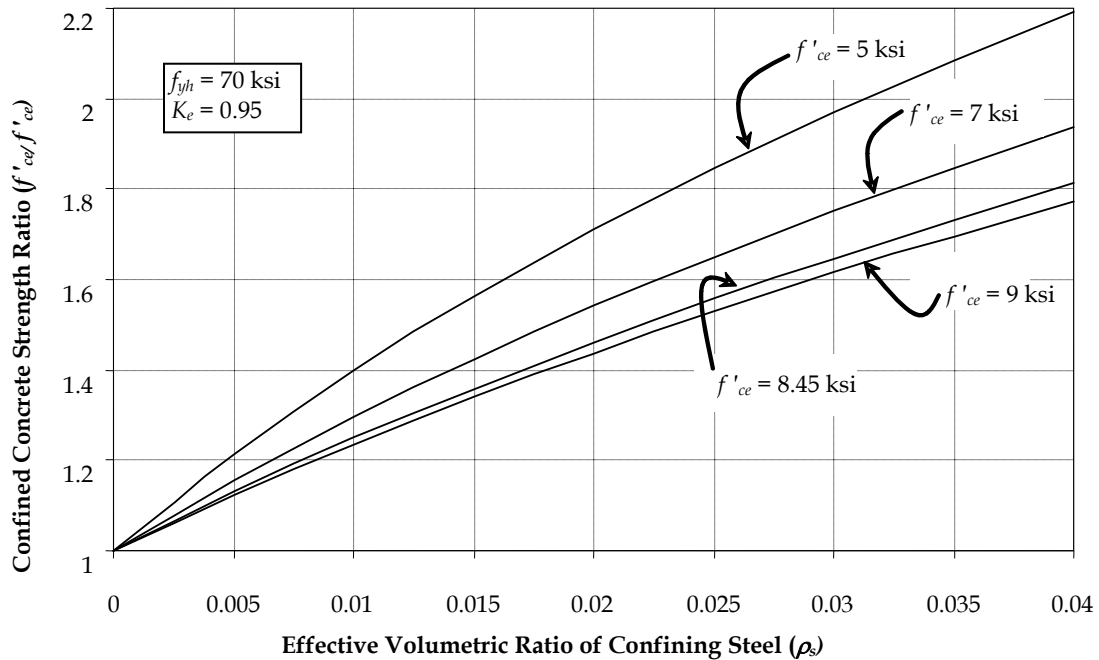
where for circular core sections,

$$f'_l = \frac{1}{2} K_e \rho_s f_{yh} \quad (4.13)$$

$$\rho_s = \frac{4A_{sp}}{D's} \quad (4.14)$$

- $\epsilon_{cu}$  = Ultimate concrete compression strain  
 $\epsilon_{cc}$  = Confined concrete compressive strain at maximum compressive stress  
 $f'_{cc}$  = Confined concrete compressive strength  
 $f'_{ce}$  = Expected compressive concrete strength of concrete  
 $f'_l$  = Effective lateral confining stress  
 $K_e$  = Confinement effectiveness coefficient, equal to 0.95 for circular core  
 $\rho_s$  = Effective volumetric ratio of confining steel  
 $f_{yh}$  = Yield stress of confining steel  
 $A_{sp}$  = Cross-section area of confining steel  
 $D'$  = Diameter of confined core, measured to the centerline of the confining steel  
 $s$  = Center-to-center spacing of confining steel along pile axis

Figure 4-5 plots the ratio of confined concrete compressive strength to expected concrete compressive strength ( $f'_{cc} / f'_{ce}$ ) with varying volumetric transverse steel ratios ( $\rho_s$ ). This graph may be used to determine the confined concrete strength,  $f'_{cc}$  for circular core sections.

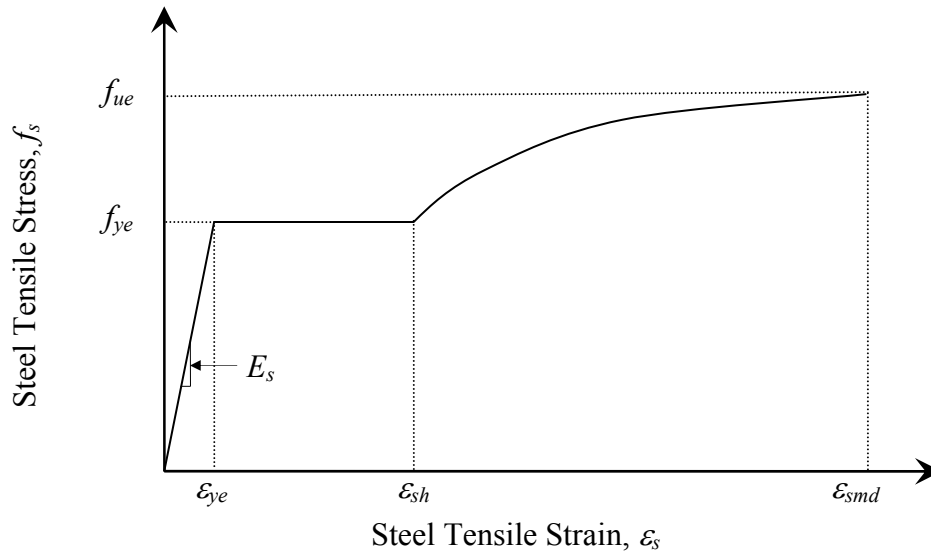


**Figure 4-5: Concrete Strength Ratio versus Confining Steel Ratio**

For pile sections with different transverse reinforcement strengths or shapes (i.e. rectangular stirrups), the confined concrete strength  $f'_{cc}$  may be approximated by  $1.5 f'_{ce}$  or calculated according to Mander's model (Ref. 35).

### Steel

The stress-strain curve for reinforcing steel is shown in Figure 4-6. The strain-hardening equation for this curve is available in References 15, 32 and 33. To control the tensile properties, A706 reinforcing steel is preferred for pile dowels. The stress-strain curve for structural steel is similar to this curve (Ref. 15).



**Figure 4-6: Stress-Strain Relationship for Reinforcing Steel**

Where for ASTM A706 Grade 60 steel (Ref. 16):

$$\text{Steel tensile strain at the onset of strain hardening} \quad \varepsilon_{sh} = \begin{cases} 0.0150 & \#8 \text{ bars} \\ 0.0125 & \#9 \text{ bars} \\ 0.0115 & \#10 \text{ \& \#11 bars} \\ 0.0075 & \#14 \text{ bars} \\ 0.0050 & \#18 \text{ bars} \end{cases}$$

$$\text{Strain at maximum stress of dowel reinforcements} \quad \varepsilon_{smd} = \begin{cases} 0.120 & \#10 \text{ bars and smaller} \\ 0.090 & \#11 \text{ bars and larger} \end{cases}$$

$$f_{ue} = 1.4 f_{ye}$$

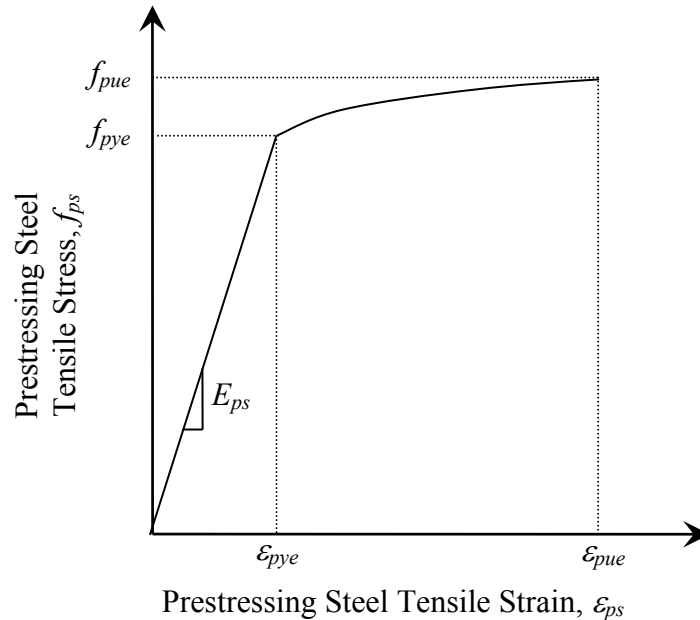
$f_{ue}$  = Expected maximum tensile strength of steel, equal to  $1.4 f_{ye}$

$$E_s = 29,000 \text{ ksi}$$

$\varepsilon_{ye}$  = Expected yield tensile strain of steel

### ***Prestressing Steel***

The stress-strain curve for prestressing steel is shown in Figure 4-7.



**Figure 4-7: Stress-Strain Relationship for Prestressing Steel**

$E_{ps}$  = Modulus of elasticity for prestressing steel, taken as 28,500 ksi

$\epsilon_{pye}$  = Expected yield strain for prestressing steel

$\epsilon_{pue}$  = Expected ultimate strain for prestressing steel, taken as 0.060

$f_{pye}$  = Expected yield strength of prestressing steel, equal to  $0.85f_{pue}$

$f_{pue}$  = Expected maximum tensile strength of prestressing steel

#### **4.6.3 Effective Section Properties**

Elastic analysis assumes a linear relationship between stiffness and strength of structural members. Concrete members display nonlinear response before reaching their idealized yield limit state. Section properties shall reflect the cracking that occurs before the yield limit state is reached. The effective section properties shall be used to determine realistic values for the structure's elastic period and seismic demands.

The effective moment of inertia,  $I_{eff}$  shall be used for the structural model.  $I_{eff}$  can be determined based on the value of the secant slope of the moment-curvature curve between the origin and the point of first yield:

$$E_c I_{eff} = \frac{M_y}{\phi_{yi}} \quad (4.15)$$

where:

$E_c$  = Modulus of elasticity of concrete

$M_y$  = Moment at first yield; see Section 4.6.6.1 for definition

$\phi_{yi}$  = Curvature at first yield; see Section 4.6.6.1 for definition

For reinforced concrete piles and the pile/deck connection, the effective moment of inertia ranges between 0.3-0.7 $I_{gross}$ , where  $I_{gross}$  is the gross moment of inertia. For prestressed concrete piles, the effective moment of inertia ranges between 0.6-0.75 $I_{gross}$ . The prestressing steel at the top of the prestressed pile near the pile/deck connection is not permitted to extend into the deck, therefore, it will not be developed at the deck soffit. Thus,  $I_{eff}$  of the dowel connection should be used. For the deck section, the effective moment of inertia is about 0.5 $I_{gross}$ . Sections that are expected to remain uncracked for seismic response should be represented by the gross section properties.

The polar moment of inertia of individual piles is typically an insignificant parameter for the global response of wharf structure. The effective polar moment of inertia,  $J_{eff}$ , could be assumed to be equal to 0.2  $J_{gross}$ , where  $J_{gross}$  is the gross polar moment of inertia.

#### 4.6.4 Seismic Mass

The seismic mass for the seismic analysis shall include the mass of the wharf deck, permanently attached equipment, and 10% of the design uniform live loads or 100 psf. In addition, 1/3 of the pile mass between the deck soffit and  $5D_p$  below the dike surface shall be considered additional mass lumped at the deck. Hydrodynamic mass associated with piles, where significant, should be considered. For 24-inch diameter piles or less, hydrodynamic mass may be ignored.

The seismic mass shall also include the larger of: 1) part of the crane mass positioned within 10 feet above the wharf deck or 2) 5% of the crane mass.

#### 4.6.5 Lateral Soil Springs

Upper and lower bound (UB and LB) lateral soil springs (p-y) shall be used to create two distinct models to determine the seismic demands and the corresponding capacities. This recognizes the inherent uncertainties associated with soil-structure interaction. The higher of the two demand-to-capacity ratios will provide a conservative estimate of compliance for displacement response. See Section 2 for further discussion on soil spring values.

#### 4.6.6 Pile Nonlinear Properties

##### 4.6.6.1 Moment-curvature Analysis

The plastic moment capacity of the piles shall be calculated by Moment-curvature ( $M-\phi$ ) analysis using expected material properties. The analysis must be modeling the core and cover concrete separately, and must model the enhanced concrete strength of the core concrete. The pile in-ground hinge section shall be analyzed as a fully confined section due to the soil confinement. Reinforcement and prestressing steel nonlinearity must also be modeled using material properties as specified in Section 4.6.2. Moment-curvature analysis provides a curve showing the moments associated with a range of curvatures for a cross-section based on the principles of strain compatibility and equilibrium of forces. The analysis shall include the pile axial load and the effective prestressing force.

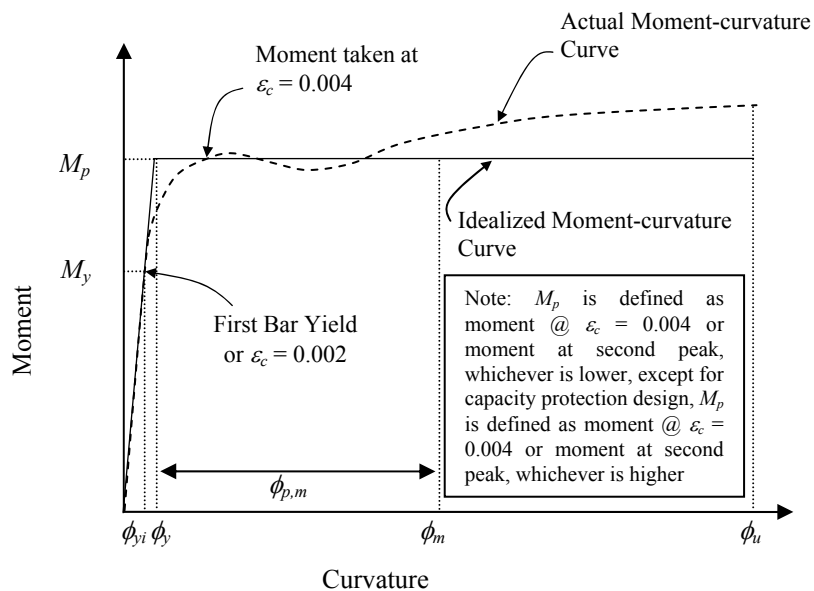
The  $M$ - $\phi$  curve may be idealized by an elastic-perfectly plastic curve as follows:

***Moment-curvature Curve Idealization - Method A:***

The idealized plastic moment capacity,  $M_p$ , for typical concrete pile at the POLB corresponds to the moment associated with an extreme concrete strain of 0.004, as shown in Figure 4-8. Typically, the  $M$ - $\phi$  curve peaks around an extreme concrete strain of 0.004, has a reduction in moment, and peaks again, depending on confinement, spalling of concrete cover and strain-hardening of reinforcement. If the second peak on the curve is less than the  $M_p$  value, the moment at the lower second peak should be taken as  $M_p$ . However, for capacity protection analysis, the moment at the higher peak shall be used for  $M_p$ . The elastic portion of the idealized  $M$ - $\phi$  curve passes through the curvature at first reinforcing bar yield of the section or when concrete strain equals 0.002, whichever occurs first ( $\phi_{yi}$ ,  $M_y$ ), and extends to meet  $M_p$ . The idealized yield curvature,  $\phi_y$ , is determined as the curvature corresponding to the plastic moment value.

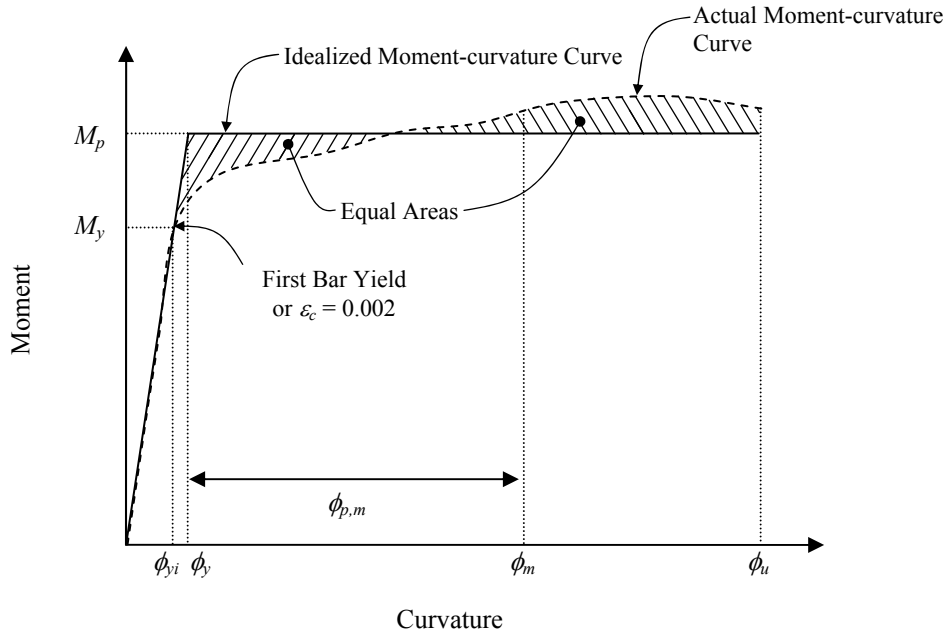
***Moment-curvature Curve Idealization - Method B:***

For other  $M$ - $\phi$  curves of concrete piles different than the typical POLB piles, the moment-curvature relationship may not exhibit the dramatic reduction in section moment capacity near the cover spalling strain. This may occur for larger diameter concrete piles, concrete-filled steel pipe piles with concrete plug connections, and hollow steel piles. For these types, an equal area approach to determine the idealized  $M$ - $\phi$  curve is more appropriate. For this approach, the elastic portion of the idealized  $M$ - $\phi$  curve should pass through the point marking the first reinforcing bar yield or when  $\varepsilon_c = 0.002$ , whichever comes first ( $\phi_{yi}$ ,  $M_y$ ). The idealized plastic moment capacity is obtained by balancing the areas between the actual and the idealized  $M$ - $\phi$  curves beyond the first yield point (Figure 4-9).



**Figure 4-8: Moment-curvature Curve and Idealization for Method A**





**Figure 4-9: Moment-curvature Curve and Idealization for Method B**

where:

- $M_y$  = Moment at first yield (corresponding to  $\phi_{yi}$ )
- $\phi_{yi}$  = Curvature at first yield (first rebar yield or  $\epsilon_c = 0.002$ )
- $\phi_y$  = Idealized yield curvature
- $\phi_m$  = Total curvature at the OLE, CLE or DE strain limits
- $\phi_{p,m}$  = Plastic curvature at the OLE, CLE or DE strain limits
- $\phi_u$  = Ultimate curvature of the section

**4.6.6.2 Plastic Hinge Length**

The plastic hinge length is needed to convert the moment-curvature relationship into a force-displacement or moment-rotation relationship for the nonlinear static pushover analysis. Table 4-2 cross references the equations that should be used to determine pile plastic hinge lengths for different pile sections.

**Table 4-2: Plastic Hinge Length Equations**

Section	Top	In-ground
Concrete Pile	4.16	4.18
Hollow Concrete Pile	4.16	4.18
Steel Pipe Pile (hollow with concrete plug connection)	4.17	4.18
Steel Pipe Pile (infilled with concrete)	4.17	4.18

For concrete pile dowel connections, the pile's plastic hinge length,  $L_p$  (above ground), when the plastic hinge forms against a supporting member, at deck soffits may be taken as:

$$L_p = 0.08L_c + 0.1f_{ye}d_{bl} \geq 0.2f_{ye}d_{bl} \quad (4.16)$$

where,

- $L_c$  = The distance from the center of the pile top plastic hinge to the point of contraflexure in the pile (in.)
- $d_{bl}$  = Diameter of dowel reinforcement (in.)
- $f_{ye}$  = Expected yield strength dowel reinforcement (ksi)

For steel pipe sections connected to the deck by a concrete plug with dowels, the plastic hinge length for the top of pile hinge may be taken as:

$$L_p = 0.3f_{ye}d_{bl} + d_{gap} \quad (4.17)$$

where,

- $d_{gap}$  = The distance between the top of the pile steel shell and the deck soffit

The plastic hinge length for in-ground hinges may be calculated as defined in equation 4.18 for piles with 18 to 30 inches in diameter. For piles with larger diameter, reduced plastic hinge length for in-ground hinges may be used.

$$L_p = 2D_p \quad (4.18)$$

where,

- $D_p$  = Pile diameter

#### 4.6.6.3 Plastic Rotation

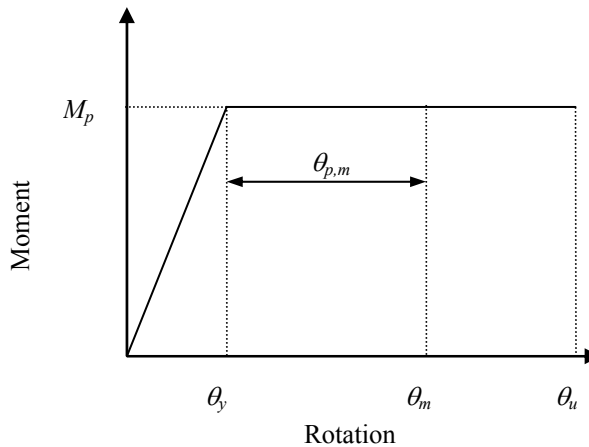
The pile plastic rotation can be determined as follows:

$$\theta_{p,m} = L_p\phi_{p,m} = L_p(\phi_m - \phi_y) \quad (4.19)$$

where,

- $\theta_{p,m}$  = Plastic rotation at the OLE, CLE or DE strain limits
- $\phi_{p,m}$  = Plastic curvature at the OLE, CLE or DE strain limits

The idealized moment-rotation ( $M-\theta$ ) curve is shown in Figure 4-10.

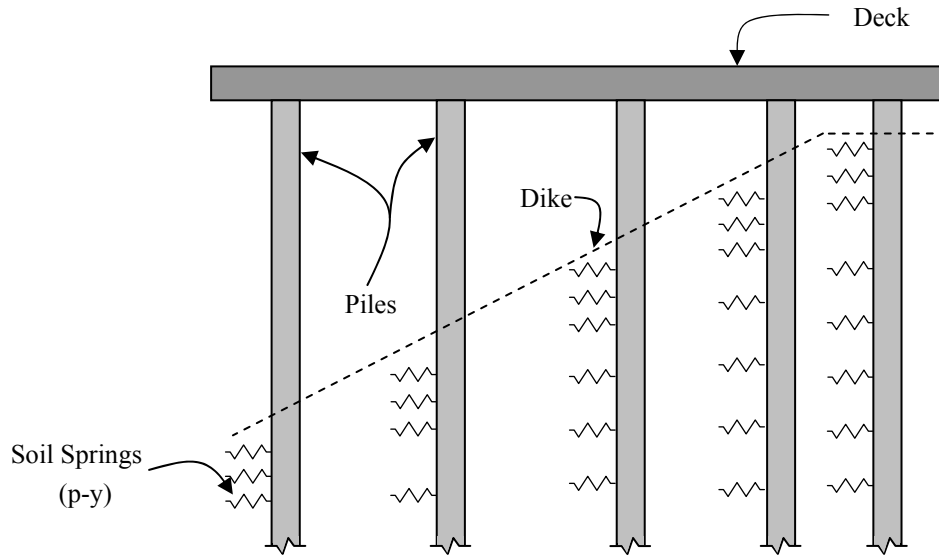


**Figure 4-10: Idealized Moment-rotation Curve**

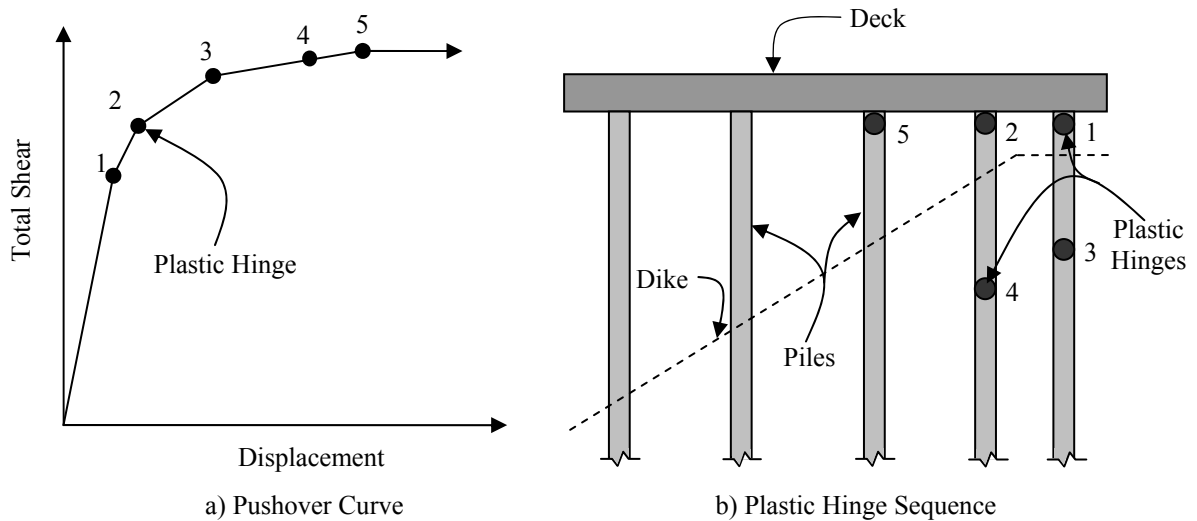
- $\theta_u$  = Ultimate rotation
- $\theta_y$  = Idealized yield rotation ( $\theta_y = \phi_y L_p$ )
- $\theta_m$  = Total rotation at the OLE, CLE or DE strain limits

#### 4.7 Nonlinear Static Pushover Analysis

Two-dimensional nonlinear static pushover analyses (pushover analysis) shall be performed for all wharf structures. The pushover curve shall have sufficient points to encompass the system's initial elastic response and predicted seismic demand. The pushover curve shall also encompass the OLE, CLE and DE displacement capacities. The yield displacements and OLE, CLE or DE displacement capacities may be obtained directly from the pushover analyses when plastic rotation and hinge proper definitions are included in the model. This analysis method incorporates soil deformation into the total displacement capacity of the pile. Pushover model shall use effective section properties and shall incorporate soil stiffness with nonlinear upper and lower bound  $p-y$  springs, see Figure 4-11. The results from the pushover analysis will provide the displacement capacities for OLE, CLE or DE, as well as the parameters needed for the Elastic Stiffness and Substitute Structure methods, see Figure 4-12. The pushover curve shall not experience a significant drop (greater than 20%) in total shear at the target-strain limits for OLE, CLE or DE.



**Figure 4-11: Pushover Model with p-y Springs**

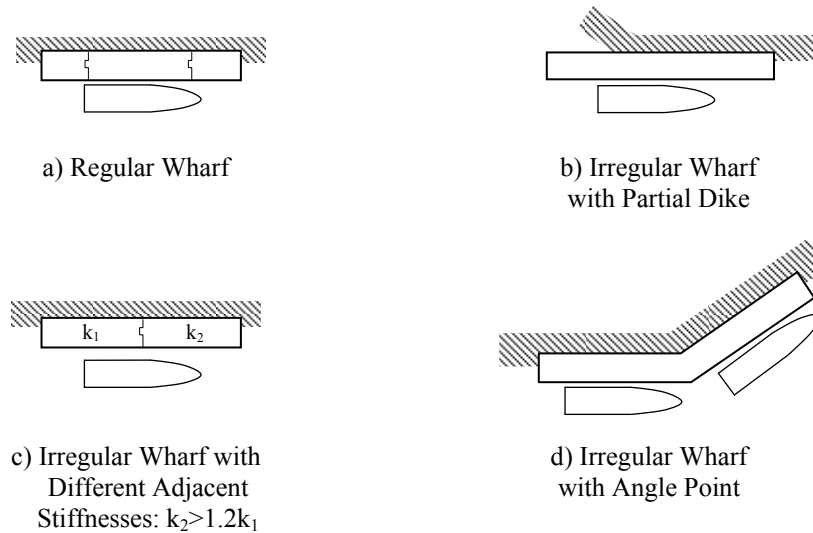


**Figure 4-12: Example of Pushover Curve and Plastic Hinge Sequence**

## 4.8 Irregular Structures and Special Cases

### 4.8.1 Irregular Structures

Horizontal irregularity occurs when wharves have unsymmetrical pile and/or dike layouts, and when wharves have an angle point; see Figure 4-13. Figure 4-13 a) shows a regular marginal wharf structure. The wharf in Figure 4-13 b) shows an irregular marginal wharf constructed with a partial dike. Figure 4-13 c) shows two adjacent wharves with large differences in stiffness, which may occur between two adjacent wharves with different pile or soil stiffnesses. Figure 4-13 d) shows an irregular wharf with an angle point.



**Figure 4-13: Horizontal Marginal Wharf Configurations**

Vertical irregularity occurs when soil profiles below the wharf have sharp variations in lateral soil deformation over short vertical distances under seismic response.

## 4.8.2 Special Cases

### 4.8.2.1 Crane-wharf Interaction Analysis

A special case for crane-wharf interaction analysis shall be considered if the crane mass impacts the wharf behavior as follows:

$$T_{crane} < 2T_w \quad (4.20)$$

where:

- $T_{crane}$  = Translational elastic period of the crane mode with the maximum participating mass
- $T_w$  = Effective elastic period of the wharf structure based on cracked section properties

For crane-wharf interaction analysis, the displacement demand,  $\Delta_d$  of the wharf shall be determined using Nonlinear Time-history Analysis per Section 4.9.4.3. This analysis requires prior written approval by the Port.

### 4.8.2.2 Linked-wharf Interaction Analysis

A special case for linked-wharf interaction analysis shall be considered for wharf structures if one of the following requirements is met:

1.  $L_L < 400$  feet or  $L_L > 800$  feet
2.  $B < 100$  feet or  $B > 120$  feet
3. More than 20% variation in the initial elastic stiffness of the wharf structure along the wharf length

where:

$L_L$  = length of the shortest exterior wharf unit

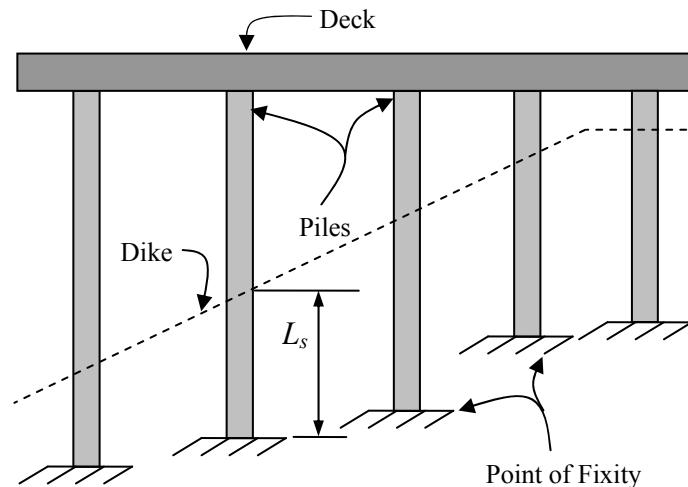
B = width of a wharf unit

For linked-wharf interaction analysis, the displacement demand,  $\Delta_d$  of the wharf shall be determined using Nonlinear Time-history Analysis per Section 4.9.4.3. This analysis requires prior written approval by the Port.

## 4.9 Demand Analysis

### 4.9.1 Equivalent Lateral Stiffness Method

The Equivalent Lateral Stiffness method uses a wharf model with piles fixed at the bottom without p-y lateral springs. In this method, the equivalent depth to point of fixity,  $L_s$ , is determined as the depth that produces the same top of pile displacement as that given by an individual lateral analysis for a given lateral load applied at top of pile. The equivalent pile length has all soil and associated lateral stiffness removed above its supported base, as shown in Figure 4-14. For different assumed displacements, different pile head conditions, free-head or fixed-head, and different subsurface conditions,  $L_s$  is expected to vary from approximately two times pile diameter to approximately fifteen times pile diameter.



**Figure 4-14: Depth to Point of Fixity**

This method may not accurately predict pile top and in-ground hinge forces; therefore this method should only be used for preliminary design.

### 4.9.2 Dynamic Magnification Factor (DMF)

Most of the seismic lateral resistance of marginal wharves is provided by landward piles due to long embedment in soil. The seaward piles are mainly used for gravity loads and might provide about 10% of the overall seismic lateral resistance. This configuration creates eccentricity between the center of mass and the effective center of rigidity for the wharf, which will induce torsional response in the structure under longitudinal excitation.

Displacement demand of the critical piles at the end of a segment can be determined by multiplying the displacement demand calculated under pure transverse excitation by Dynamic Magnification Factor, which accounts for torsional response and simultaneous longitudinal and transverse excitations, and interaction across expansion joints. An analytical study utilizing nonlinear time-history analysis was performed to calculate the DMF (Ref 11) using OLE and CLE ground motions with lower and upper bound soil springs conditions. The study was performed on 110-ft wide wharf with single segment, two linked segments and three linked segments. Segment lengths varied between 400 feet, 600 feet, and 800 feet. The study results show that DMF for CLE is always lower than DMF for OLE. Therefore, DMF for DE may conservatively be assumed to be equal to DMF for CLE.

Based on the study results, the DMF may be calculated as follows:

**Single Wharf Unit:**

$$\text{DMF} = 1.80 - 0.05 L_L / B \geq 1.10 \text{ for OLE} \quad (4.21)$$

$$\text{DMF} = 1.65 - 0.05 L_L / B \geq 1.10 \text{ for CLE/DE, UB soil springs} \quad (4.22)$$

$$\text{DMF} = 1.50 - 0.05 L_L / B \geq 1.10 \text{ for CLE/DE, LB soil springs} \quad (4.23)$$

**Linked Wharf Exterior Unit:**

$$\text{DMF} = 1.55 - 0.04 L_L / B \geq 1.10 \text{ for OLE} \quad (4.24)$$

$$\text{DMF} = 1.35 - 0.02 L_L / B \geq 1.10 \text{ CLE/DE, UB soil springs} \quad (4.25)$$

$$\text{DMF} = 1.16 - 0.02 L_L / B \geq 1.10 \text{ for CLE/DE, LB soil springs} \quad (4.26)$$

**Linked Wharf Interior Unit:**

$$\text{DMF} = 1.10 \quad (4.27)$$

where:

$L_L$  = length of the shortest exterior wharf unit

B = width of a wharf unit

LB = lower bound

UB = upper bound

Wharf Exterior Unit = a wharf structure with an expansion joint at one end

Wharf Interior Unit = a wharf structure with expansion joints at both ends

The DMF values shall be used for straight wharf units only if all the following conditions are met, otherwise refer to Section 4.8.2.2 for the requirements of special case analysis:

1. 400 feet <  $L_L$  < 800 feet
2. 100 feet < B < 120 feet
3. Less than 20% variation in the initial elastic stiffness of the wharf structure along the wharf length
4. Crane-wharf interaction analysis is not required per Section 4.8.2.1

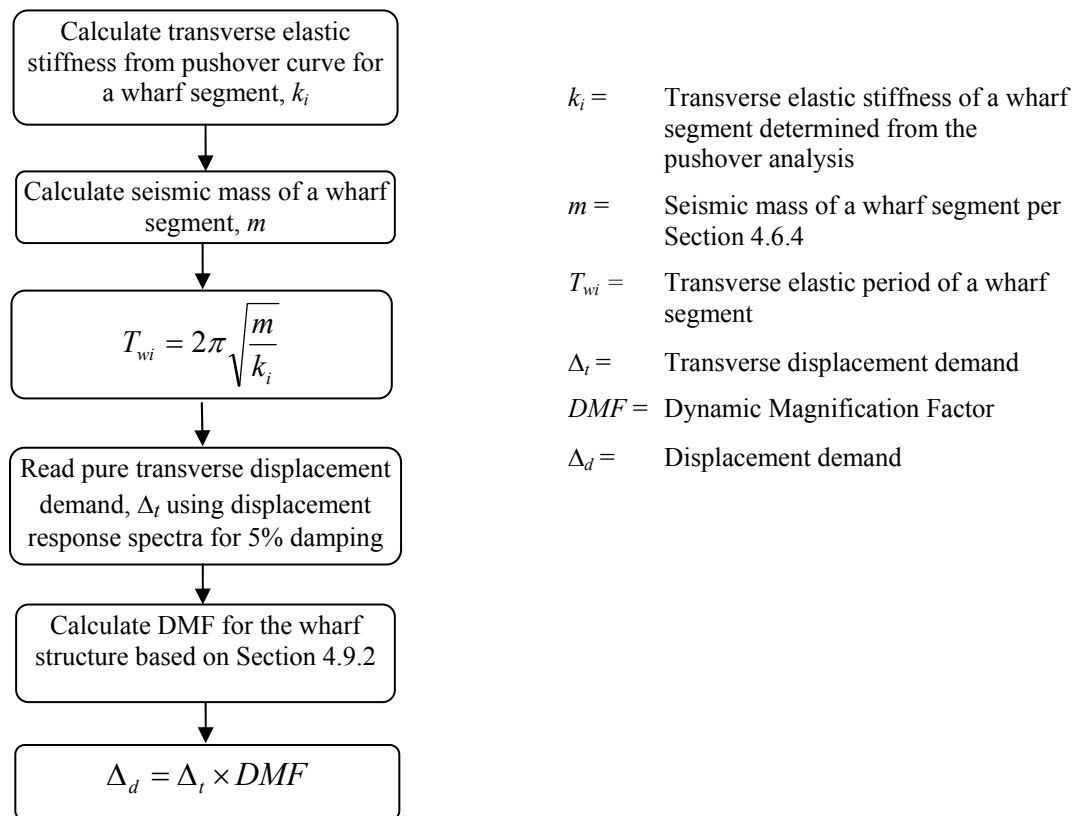
### 4.9.3 Transverse Single Mode Analysis

Reasonable estimates of displacement demand could be obtained from the Elastic Stiffness Method using cracked-section elastic stiffness of piles. However, improved representation of displacement demand could be obtained using the Substitute Structure Method. If the Elastic Stiffness Method described in Section 4.9.3.1 is used for the wharf design, the displacement demand-to-capacity ratio (DCR) shall be less than or equal to 0.85. If the DCR is larger than 0.85, the Substitute Structure Method described in Section 4.9.3.2 shall be used for verification.

#### 4.9.3.1 Elastic Stiffness Method

The Elastic Stiffness Method is a single-mode pure transverse analysis of a typical wharf strip, refer to Figure 4-2. This method uses the transverse elastic stiffness,  $k_i$ , of wharf segment determined from the pushover curve to calculate the pure transverse displacement demand. For this method, the damping ratio shall be 5%.

The pure transverse displacement demand shall then be modified with the DMF to include the influence of simultaneous longitudinal response, interaction across expansion joints, and torsional effects, to calculate the displacement demand  $\Delta_d$ . The flow chart shown in Figure 4-15 demonstrates the analysis steps for the Elastic Stiffness Method.



**Figure 4-15: Flow Diagram for the Elastic Stiffness Method**



### 4.9.3.2 Substitute Structure Method

The Substitute Structure Method is a single-mode pure transverse analysis, modified for simultaneous transverse and longitudinal response interaction across expansion joints and torsional effects by the DMF to calculate the displacement demand. Figure 4-16 demonstrates the analysis steps to calculate the displacement demand using the Substitute Structure Method.

This method is an iterative process that uses the effective secant stiffness,  $k_e$ , of a wharf segment at the demand displacement determined from the pushover curve, and an equivalent elastic damping representing the combined effects of elastic and hysteretic damping to determine the pure transverse displacement demand for each iteration, see Figure 4-17.

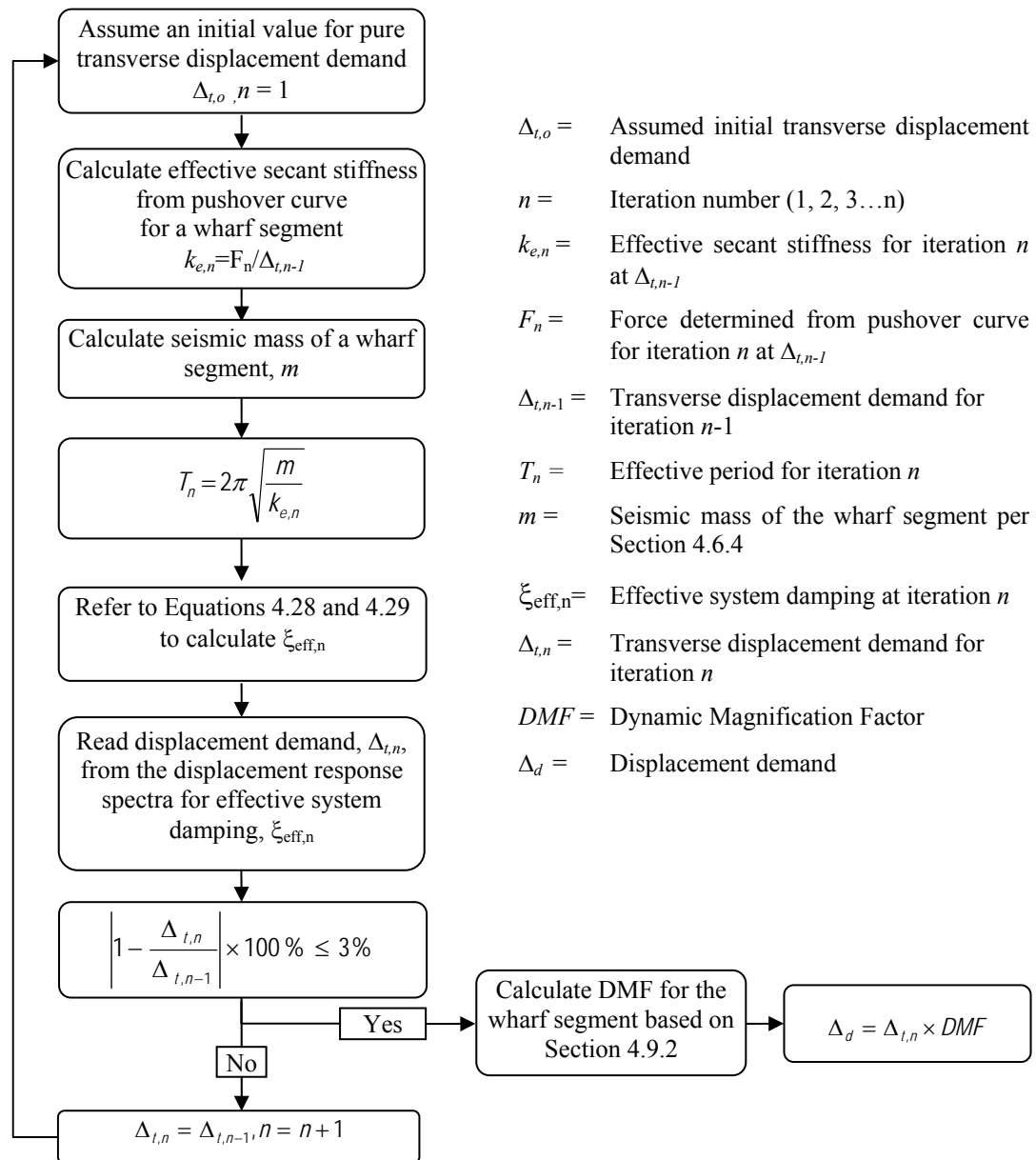
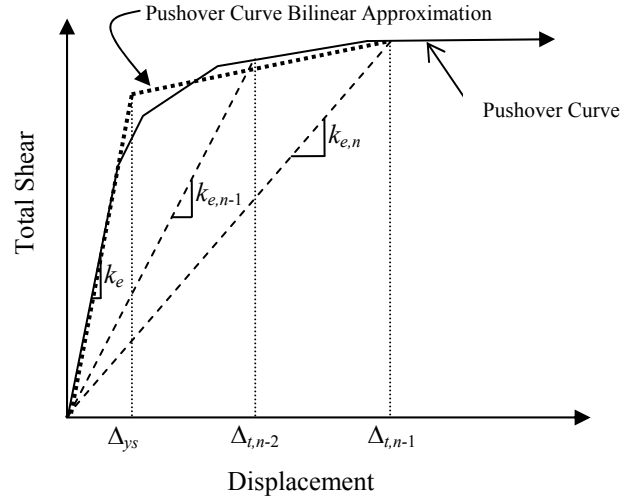


Figure 4-16: Flow Diagram for Substitute Structure Method



**Figure 4-17: Effective System Stiffness for a Wharf Segment**

The effective secant stiffness,  $k_e$  is the slope of the line that starts from the pushover curve origin point to the point of the first plastic hinge formed in a pile, refer to Figure 4-17. The system yield displacement,  $\Delta_{ys}$ , is determined from the intersection of the elastic and post-yield branches of the bilinear approximation. The “Equal Energy” approach should be used to estimate the bilinear approximation of the system pushover curve. The bilinear curve should be determined at an estimated displacement demand,  $\Delta_{t,n-1}$ , for CLE. The system yield displacement will always be larger than the displacement at first yield of piles. The system displacement ductility demand at iteration  $n$ ,  $\mu_n$ , is determined as follows:

$$\mu_n = \frac{\Delta_{t,n}}{\Delta_{ys}} \quad (4.28)$$

The effective system damping at iteration  $n$  is then found as follows:

$$\xi_{eff,n} = 0.10 + 0.565 \left( \frac{\mu_n - 1}{\mu_n \pi} \right) \quad (4.29)$$

The wharf transverse displacement demand based on pure transverse excitation may be considered to have converged when  $\left| 1 - \frac{\Delta_{t,n}}{\Delta_{t,n-1}} \right| \times 100\% \leq 3\%$ . Once the transverse displacement demand converges, the result shall be modified using the DMF.

#### 4.9.4 Three Dimensional Analysis

Three dimensional demand analyses include Modal Response Spectra Analysis and Nonlinear Time-History Analysis. A typical wharf segment between expansion joints has a large number of piles, which may result in unacceptable matrix sizes for analysis. As an alternative, the structural characteristics of a wharf segment may be modeled by using the “Super-Pile” concept, as explained below.

### 4.9.4.1 Super-Pile Model

Four super-piles may be used to represent the combined properties and stiffness of piles in the model for a regular wharf segment between expansion joints. For the analysis of an irregular wharf, the super-pile concept should be used with special consideration of the irregular elements.

The super-pile locations are determined based on the locations of the gravity piles and the seismic piles, as shown in Figure 4-18. The gravity piles mainly carry vertical loads, usually carrying less than 10% of the total lateral seismic load, and have less stringent detailing requirements. Seismic piles also carry vertical loads and provide most of the lateral seismic resistance with stringent detailing requirements.

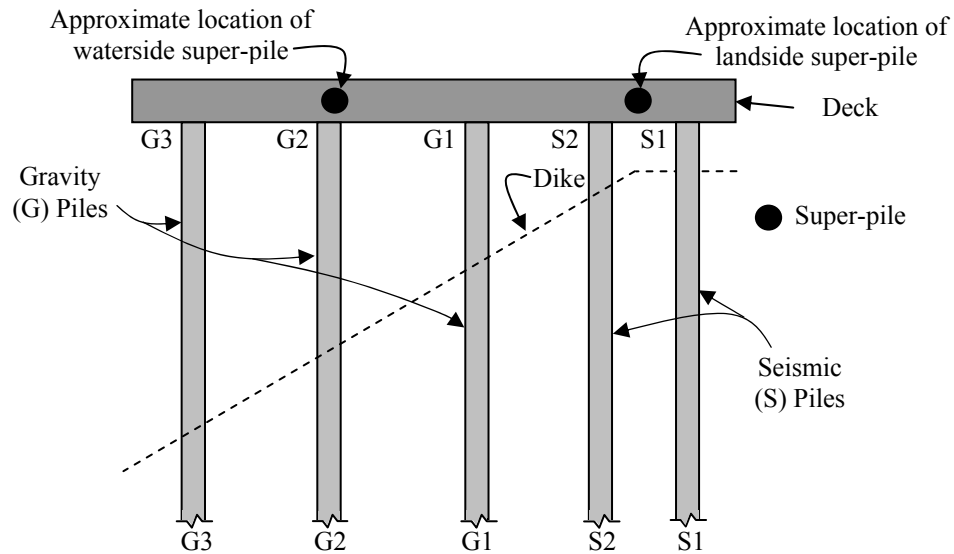


Figure 4-18: Elevation View of Transverse Wharf Segment

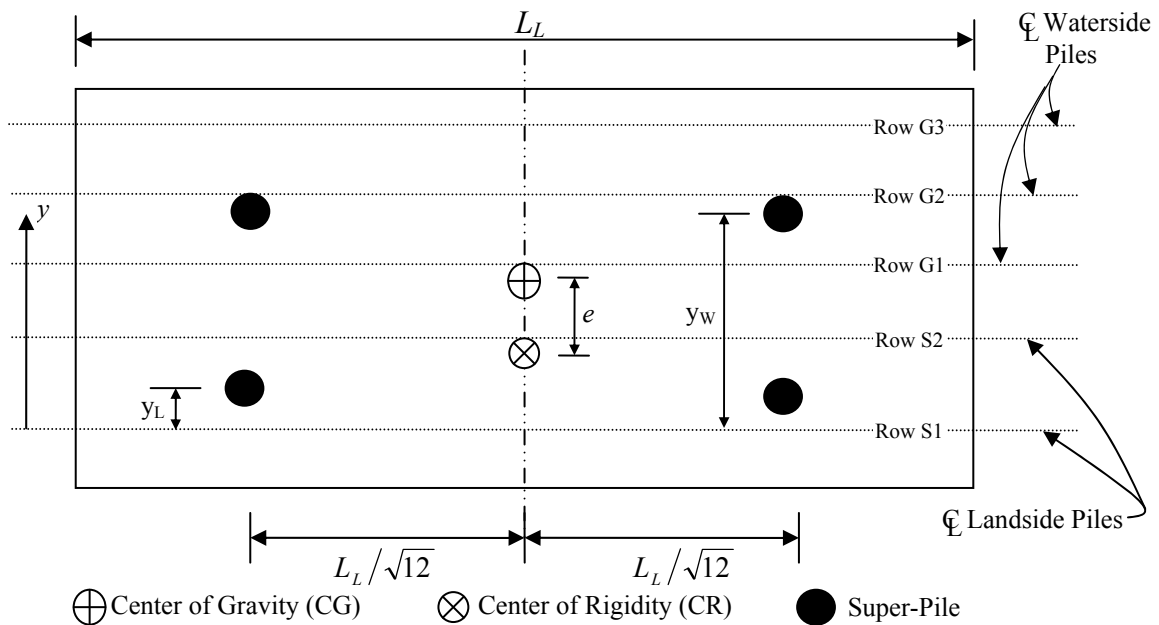


Figure 4-19: Super-pile Locations for a Wharf Segment

The super-piles shown in Figure 4-19 are located at distances  $y_L$  and  $y_W$  from the center line of landside pile row S1:

$$y_L = \frac{\sum_{i=S1}^{S2} n_i F_i y_i}{\sum_{i=S1}^{S2} n_i F_i} \quad \text{and} \quad y_W = \frac{\sum_{i=G1}^{G3} n_i F_i y_i}{\sum_{i=G1}^{G3} n_i F_i} \quad (4.30)$$

where:

- $y_L$  = Distance of landside super-pile from centerline of landside pile row S1
- $i$  = Pile row (i.e. S1, S2, G1-G3 as shown in Figure 4-19 and Figure 4-18)
- $n_i$  = Total number of piles in row  $i$  for length  $L_L$
- $F_i$  = Lateral force per pile in row  $i$  from pushover analysis when seismic pile yield reach displacement
- $y_i$  = Distance of row  $i$  from the landside pile row S1
- $y_W$  = Distance of waterside super-pile from centerline of waterside pile row S1

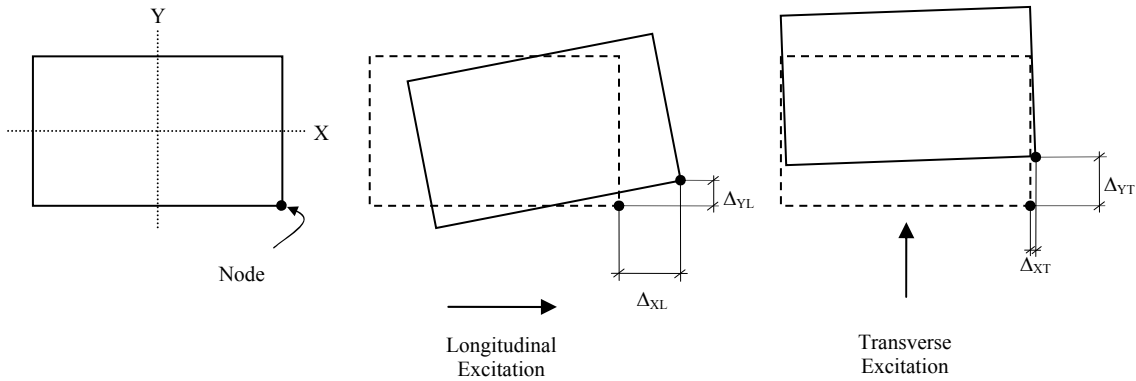
The super-pile stiffness is calculated from the pushover curve for the piles represented. The location of the super-pile should be determined based on the elastic response when the seismic piles reach yield displacement. For compatibility reasons, the gravity piles should have their stiffness determined at the same displacement. The landside super-pile stiffness is equal to the stiffness of all piles on the landside of the dike. The remainder of the total pile stiffness goes to the waterside super-piles. For a regular structure, the two landside super-piles should have equal stiffness, and the two waterside super-piles should have equal stiffness. In order to ensure the correct torsional stiffness under longitudinal response, the super-piles must be located at the center of gyration of the wharf segment. For a regular wharf segment the super-piles must be located at a distance of  $L_L / \sqrt{12}$  from the segment centroid, as shown in Figure 4-19.

The simplified model described above is suitable for both Modal Response Spectral Analysis and Nonlinear Time-History Analysis.

#### 4.9.4.2 Modal Response Spectra Analysis

This method is essentially a linear response spectrum analysis for a stand-alone wharf segment. When wharf segments are linked by shear keys at movement joints, Modal Response Spectral Analysis will not provide adequate representation of shear key forces or displacement of the movement joint. A three dimensional linear elastic modal response analysis shall be used with effective section properties to determine lateral displacement demands.

Sufficient modes shall be included in the analysis such that 90% of the participating mass is captured in each of the structure's principal horizontal directions. For modal combinations, the Complete Quadratic Combination (CQC) rule shall be used. A damping ratio of 5% for spectral analysis shall be used unless a higher ratio can be justified.



**Figure 4-20: Wharf Response due to Longitudinal and Transverse Excitations**

Input response spectra shall be applied separately along two orthogonal global axes (longitudinal and transverse), see Figure 4-20. Spectral displacement demand shall be obtained by the maximum of the following two load cases:

- Case 1: Combine the displacement demand resulting from 100% of the longitudinal load with the corresponding displacement demand from 30% of the transverse load:

$$\Delta_{X1} = \Delta_{XL} + 0.3\Delta_{XT}$$

$$\Delta_{Y1} = \Delta_{YL} + 0.3\Delta_{YT}$$

- Case 2: Combine the displacement demand resulting from 100% of the transverse load with the corresponding displacement demand from 30% of the longitudinal load:

$$\Delta_{X2} = 0.3\Delta_{XL} + \Delta_{XT}$$

$$\Delta_{Y2} = 0.3\Delta_{YL} + \Delta_{YT}$$

where,

$\Delta_{XL}$  = X-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the longitudinal direction

$\Delta_{XT}$  = X-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the transverse direction

$\Delta_{YL}$  = Y-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the longitudinal direction

$\Delta_{YT}$  = Y-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the transverse direction

$\Delta_{X1}, \Delta_{X2}$  = Combined X-axis displacement demands from motions in the transverse and longitudinal directions

$\Delta_{Y1}, \Delta_{Y2}$  = Combined Y-axis displacement demands from motions in the transverse and longitudinal directions

Pile seismic demand,  $\Delta_d$ , is defined as follows:

$$\Delta_d = \max\left(\sqrt{\Delta_{x1}^2 + \Delta_{y1}^2} \text{ or } \sqrt{\Delta_{x2}^2 + \Delta_{y2}^2}\right) \quad (4.31)$$

Nonlinear time-history analysis has shown that the 100% + 30% spectral combination rule to be non-conservative for wharf structures (Ref. 11). If Modal Response Spectra Analysis method is used for the wharf design with soil initial lateral stiffness, the displacement demand to capacity ratio (DCR) shall be less than or equal to 0.85. If the DCR is larger than 0.85 other analysis methods shall be used.

#### 4.9.4.3 Nonlinear Time-History Analysis

Nonlinear Time-History Analysis (NTHA) is the most accurate method for determining displacement demand. Since the inelastic characteristics of the piles can be directly incorporated in the response, the longitudinal and transverse excitation can be simultaneously applied, and the complexities of the movement joints can be directly modeled. NTHA must always be used in conjunction with another simplified analysis approach to verify results. The NTHA results should be within 20% of the results obtained from another simplified approach such as response spectral analysis. When modeling reinforced or prestressed concrete piles or steel piles with concrete plugs, degrading stiffness models such as the Modified Takeda rule (Ref. 35) should be adopted with  $\alpha=0.3$  and  $\beta=0.5$ . Elastic damping should be represented by tangent stiffness damping equivalent to 10% critical damping.

Displacement demands from NTHA shall be based on simultaneous orthogonal horizontal input motions, as defined in Section 2.1. Multiple time-history records will be required to achieve a representative displacement demand for the global model.

When three sets of spectrum-compatible time-history records are used, the envelope value of each response parameter shall be used in the design. When seven sets or more of spectrum-compatible time-history records are used, the average value of each response parameter shall be used.

When NTHA methods are used, a peer review shall be conducted per Section 4.14.

### 4.10 Structural Capacities

For the evaluation of capacity-protected members and actions, such as shear in piles, and shear and moment in deck beams, and deck slabs, the demand forces shall be determined from using an amplified strength (overstrength) of pile plastic hinges:

$$M_o = 1.25M_p \text{ and } V_o = 1.25V_p \quad (4.32)$$

where

$M_o$  = Pile overstrength moment capacity

$M_p$  = Pile idealized plastic moment capacity, which can be calculated by  $M$ - $\phi$  analysis

$V_o$  = Pile overstrength shear demand

$V_p$  = Pile plastic shear, which can be calculated based on pile plastic moments or as the maximum shear in the pile from both Upper Bound and Lower Bound pushover analyses

Deck beam and deck slab design moment and shear forces shall be in equilibrium with pile overstrength moment and shear demands.

The wharf structural elements shall be designed for the induced forces due to the lateral seismic deformations. For wharf deck, beam and deck slab, and pile beam/deck joint, the moment, shear and axial demands shall be determined using the load combinations per Section 4.5.2. Any moment demand caused by dead load and 10% live load need to be distributed to the entire frame. The pile earthquake moment represents the amount of moment induced by an earthquake, when coupled with the existing pile dead load moment and pile 10% live load moment, will equal the pile's overstrength moment capacity.

#### 4.10.1 Pile Displacement Capacity

Pile displacement capacity,  $\Delta_c$ , shall be determined at OLE, CLE and DE using strain limits provided in Table 4-1 for upper bound and lower bound soil conditions. The displacement capacity shall be the lesser of displacement capacity at pile top plastic hinge or at in-ground hinge, determined as follows:

$$\Delta_c = \Delta_y + \Delta_{p,m} \quad (4.33)$$

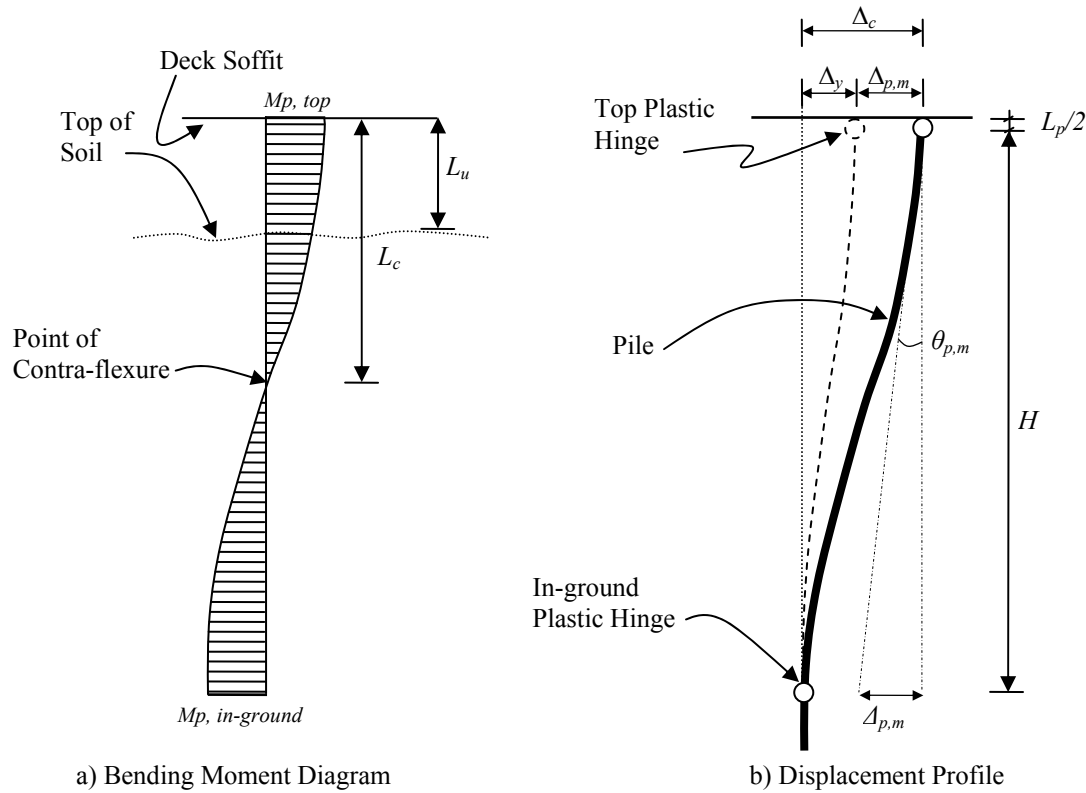
$$\Delta_{p,m} = \theta_{p,m} \times H \quad (4.34)$$

where:

- $\Delta_c$  = Displacement capacity
- $\Delta_y$  = Pile yield displacement, determined from pile initial position to the formation of the plastic hinge being considered (i.e. top hinge or in-ground hinge)
- $\Delta_{p,m}$  = Pile plastic displacement capacity due to rotation of the plastic hinge at the OLE, CLE or DE strain limits
- $\theta_{p,m}$  = Plastic rotation at LE, CLE, or DE strain limits, determined per equation 4.19
- $H$  = The distance between the center of pile top plastic hinge and the center of pile in-ground plastic hinge

The pile yield displacements,  $\Delta_y$ , of the top and in-ground hinges are obtained from the pushover analysis. Figure 4-21 shows a graphical representation of the displacement capacity calculation for a top plastic hinge. The concept is similar for an in-ground plastic hinge.

For piles with a large unsupported length,  $L_u$  and in-ground and top plastic hinges with a ratio  $M_{p, in-ground} / M_{p, top} > 1.25$ , the distance from the top and in-ground plastic hinges to the point of contraflexure becomes uneven. Therefore, the displacement capacity calculation becomes more complex, and the procedure used above will not provide accurate results. Thus, a detailed pushover analysis with proper definition of plastic curvature or rotation limits should be used to determine the displacement capacity.



**Figure 4-21: Pile Displacement Capacity**

#### 4.10.2 Pile Beam/Deck Joint

As previously stated, wharves are designed with weak column (pile), strong beam (deck beam or deck slab) concept. In this capacity, weak column (pile) is required to form plastic hinges and experience permanent deformation due to seismic load. The nominal strength capacity of the beam or deck shall be sufficient to ensure the piles have reached their plastic limit prior to the beam or deck reaching its expected nominal strength. The beam or deck shear and flexural capacities shall be determined based on ACI-318 using strength reduction factors. The superstructure flexural capacity shall be greater than the largest combination of deck dead load moment, deck moment due to 10% of live load, and pile overstrength moment distributed on each side of the pile beam/deck joint (joint). Any distribution factors shall be based on cracked section properties.

For the pile beam/deck joint details shown in Figure 4-27, joint shear requirements are satisfied by providing adequate confinement. The required effective volumetric ratio of confining steel,  $\rho_s$ , around the pile dowels anchored in the joint shall be:

$$\rho_s = \max \left[ \frac{0.46 A_{sc}}{D' l_a} \left[ \frac{f_{ye}}{0.0015 E_{sh}} \right] \text{ or } 0.016 \right] \quad (4.35)$$

where:

$A_{sc}$  = Total cross-section area of dowels in the joint



- $D'$  = Diameter of the confined core measured to the centerline of the confining steel  
 $l_a$  = Actual embedment length of dowels anchored in the joint  
 $f_{ye}$  = Expected yield strength of dowels  
 $E_{sh}$  = Confining steel modulus of elasticity

Less conservative mechanisms for joint shear transfer are suggested in Ref. 32. If an alternate detail is proposed, joint shear principal stresses shall be checked according to ACI-318.

#### 4.10.3 Pile Shear

Pile overstrength shear demand,  $V_o$  shall be determined by nonlinear pushover analyses using an overstrength factor of 1.25 including the effect of the axial load on piles due to crane dead load. In lieu of pushover analysis,  $V_o$  may be calculated as follows:

$$V_o = 1.25 (M_{p, top} + M_{p, in-ground})/H \quad (4.36)$$

where

- $M_{p, top}$  = Pile plastic moment capacity at the top plastic hinge including the effect of axial load due to crane dead load  
 $M_{p, in-ground}$  = Pile plastic moment capacity at the in-ground plastic hinge including the effect of axial load due to crane dead load  
 $H$  = The distance between the center of pile top plastic hinge and the center of pile in-ground plastic hinge

#### *Steel Piles Shear Capacity*

The shear capacity of steel piles shall be determined according to AISC-LRFD or API provisions, where applicable.

#### *Concrete Piles Shear Capacity*

The following applies to concrete piles and steel pipe piles with concrete plug and dowels connections to the deck. The shear capacity,  $\Phi V_n$ , shall be calculated using the method described below.

This method is based on the modified UCSD three-parameter model (Ref. 33) with separate contributions to shear strength from concrete, transverse reinforcement and axial load:

$$\Phi V_n = \Phi(V_c + V_s + V_a) < \Phi(0.2f'_{ce}A_e) \quad (4.37)$$

where,

- $\Phi$  = Strength reduction factor for shear, equal to 0.85 for OLE and CLE and equal to 1.0 for DE  
 $V_n$  = Nominal shear strength  
 $V_c$  = Concrete shear strength

- $V_s$  = Transverse reinforcement shear strength  
 $V_a$  = Shear strength due to axial load  
 $f'_{ce}$  = Expected compressive strength of concrete  
 $A_e$  = Effective shear area, equal to 80% of gross cross-sectional area for solid circular and octagonal piles

**Concrete Shear Strength,  $V_c$ :**

$$V_c = k\sqrt{f'_c}A_e \quad (4.38)$$

where:

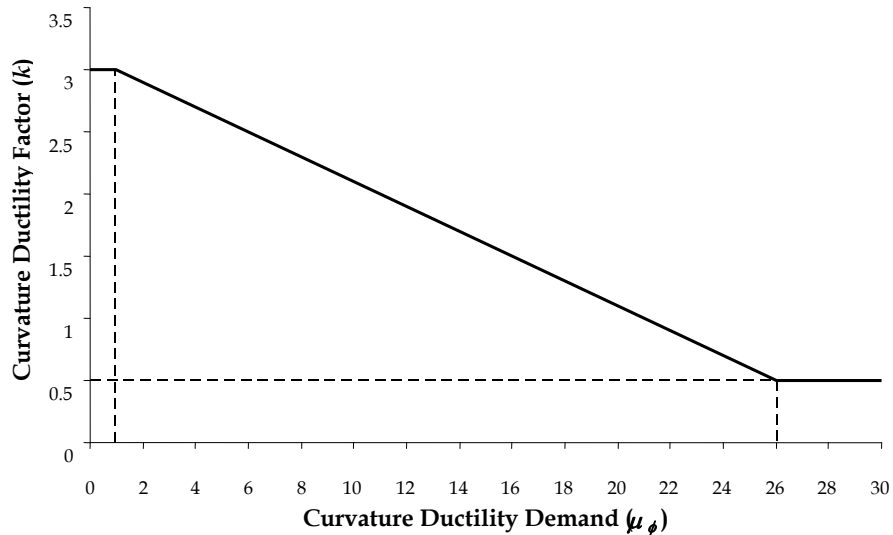
- $k$  = Curvature ductility factor, determined as a function of  $\mu_\phi$ , refer to Figure 4-22  
 $f'_c$  = 28-day of unconfined concrete compressive strength (psi)  
 $A_e$  = Effective shear area, equal to 80% of gross cross-sectional area for solid circular and octagonal piles  
 $\mu_\phi$  = Curvature ductility demand

The curvature ductility demand,  $\mu_\phi$  shall be calculated at the demand displacement, and can be found using the formula below:

$$\mu_\phi = 1 + \frac{\phi_{P,dem}}{\phi_y} = 1 + \frac{\theta_{P,dem}}{L_p\phi_y} \quad (4.39)$$

where:

- $\phi_{P,dem}$  = Plastic curvature at displacement demand  
 $\phi_y$  = Idealized yield curvature  
 $\theta_{P,dem}$  = Plastic rotation at displacement demand  
 $L_p$  = Plastic hinge length



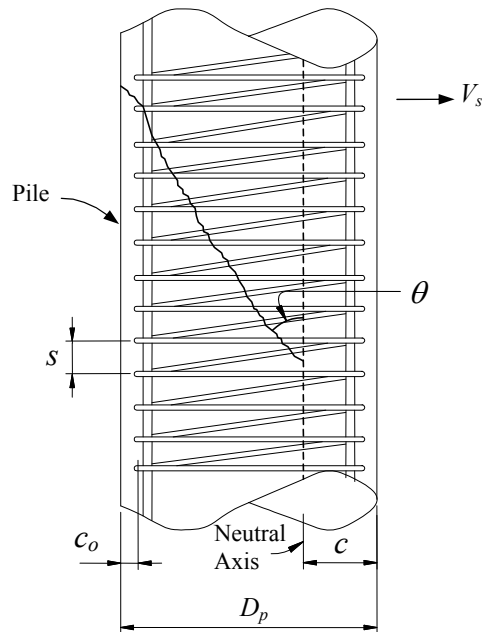
**Figure 4-22: Curvature Ductility Factor versus Curvature Ductility Demand**

***Transverse Reinforcement Shear Strength,  $V_s$ :***

$$V_s = \frac{\pi A_{sp} f_{yh} (D_p - c - c_o) \cot(\theta)}{2s} \quad (4.40)$$

where:

- $A_{sp}$  = Cross-section area of transverse reinforcement
- $f_{yh}$  = Yield strength of transverse reinforcement
- $D_p$  = Pile diameter
- $c$  = Depth from the extreme compression fiber to the neutral axis at flexural strength, see Figure 4-23
- $c_o$  = Clear concrete cover plus half the diameter of the transverse reinforcement, see Figure 4-23
- $\theta$  = Angle of critical shear with respect to the longitudinal axis of the pile, taken as  $30^\circ$  for existing structures and  $35^\circ$  for new design, see Figure 4-23
- $s$  = Center-to-center spacing of transverse reinforcement along pile axis



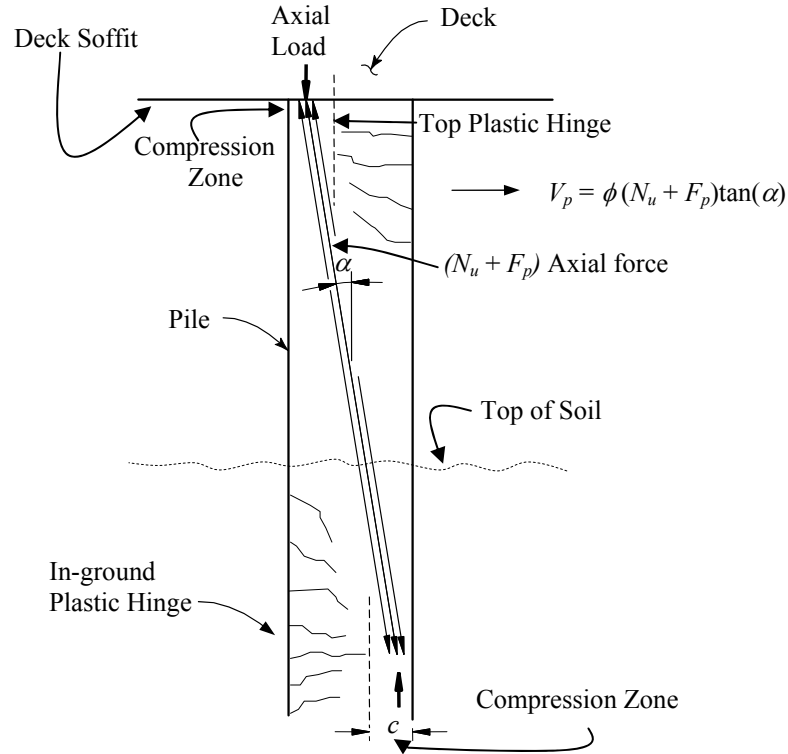
**Figure 4-23: Transverse Shear Reinforcement Shear Strength Components**

**Shear Strength due to Axial Load,  $V_a$ :**

$$V_a = \beta(N_u + F_p) \tan(\alpha) \quad (4.41)$$

where:

- $N_u$  = External axial compression on pile including seismic load; compression is taken as positive, and tension as negative
- $F_p$  = Prestress compressive force in pile, taken as zero for top plastic hinge
- $\alpha$  = Angle between the line joining centers of flexural compression zones at top and in-ground plastic hinges and the pile axis, see Figure 4-24
- $\beta$  = Axial load shear strength factor, taken as 1.0 for existing structures, and 0.85 for new design



**Figure 4-24: Axial Load Shear Strength Components**

Alternatively, for piles with curvature ductility,  $\mu_\phi < 2$ , the pile shear strength may be calculated according to ACI-318 provisions.

#### 4.10.4 P- $\Delta$ Effects

Additional secondary forces due to the effect of dead load and lateral seismic displacement demand (P- $\Delta$ ) shall be included in the analysis for OLE, CLE and DE. The P- $\Delta$  effects may be ignored when:

$$\frac{F}{W_{DL}} \geq 4 \frac{\Delta_d}{H'} \quad (4.42)$$

where:

- $F$  = Total lateral seismic force of the wharf strip considered at displacement demand, determined from pushover curve
- $W_{DL}$  = Effective dead load of the wharf strip considered
- $\Delta_d$  = Displacement demand
- $H'$  = The distance from the maximum in-ground moment to the center of gravity of the deck

### 4.11 Deck Expansion Joint

Modal Response Spectral Analysis does not directly predict shear key forces between wharf segments at expansion joints. A series of time-history analyses were conducted as

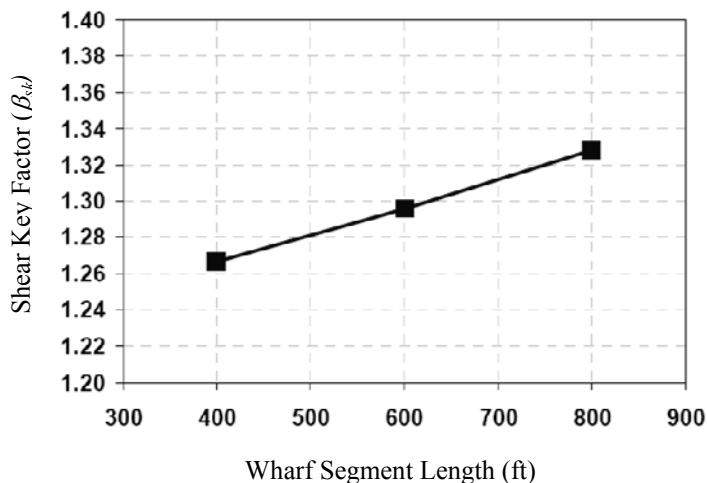
part of a research study (Ref. 11) to obtain shear key forces for different wharf configurations, soil properties and ground motion intensities. The results of the study are based on a 110-ft wide wharf section with wharf segment length combinations that varied from 400 feet, 600 feet, and 800 feet. The analysis was conducted using both lower and upper bound soil conditions and OLE and CLE ground motions.

The study results show that for two linked wharf units, the shear key should be designed for a seismic shear key force demand,  $V_{sk}$ , as shown below:

$$V_{sk} = \beta_{sk} \left( \frac{F_{\Delta} e}{L_L} \right) \quad (4.43)$$

where,

- $F_{\Delta}$  = Total lateral seismic force of a wharf segment at displacement demand, determined from the pushover curve of an entire wharf segment when the shear key joins two segments of different lengths,  $F_{\Delta}$  refers to the shorter segment
- $e$  = Eccentricity between the wharf center of mass and center of rigidity
- $L_L$  = Length of the shorter exterior wharf unit
- $\beta_{sk}$  = Shear key factor, determined as a function of wharf segment length, refer to Figure 4-25



**Figure 4-25: Share Key Factor versus Wharf Segment Length**

For wharf section with configurations different than the wharf configurations used in the research study (Ref. 11), special case analysis per Section 4.8.2.2 needs to be performed with prior written approval by the port.

The wharf expansion joint shall be designed for the combined effect of seismic deformation, seismic forces and thermal expansion. For calculating expansion joint shear capacity according to ACI-318, a reduction factor of 0.85 should be used.

## 4.12 Kinematic Loads

Kinematic loads occurs in piles when the dike begins sliding on a weak soil layer during an earthquake, inducing bending moments in piles beneath the soil surface. Deep in-ground plastic hinges may form due to the dike movement, see Figure 4-26.

Section 2 provides screening criteria for kinematic analysis (nonlinear dynamic soil-structure interaction analysis) of the dike. If a kinematic analysis is required, the geotechnical engineer shall provide displacement profiles for the piles under kinematic load. The structural engineer shall analyze the piles for the given displacement profiles, and the material strains in the piles shall not exceed the strain limits provided in Table 4-1. In addition, the shear demand in piles shall not exceed shear capacity determined according to Section 4.10.3.

For the 24-inch octagonal, precast, prestressed concrete piles and dike configurations that are typically used at POLB and having an embedment length of at least 20 feet into the dike, kinematic load should not be considered when the permanent free field embankment or dike deformation determined per Section 2 are less than 3 inches for OLE, less than 12 inches for CLE and less than 36 inches for DE.

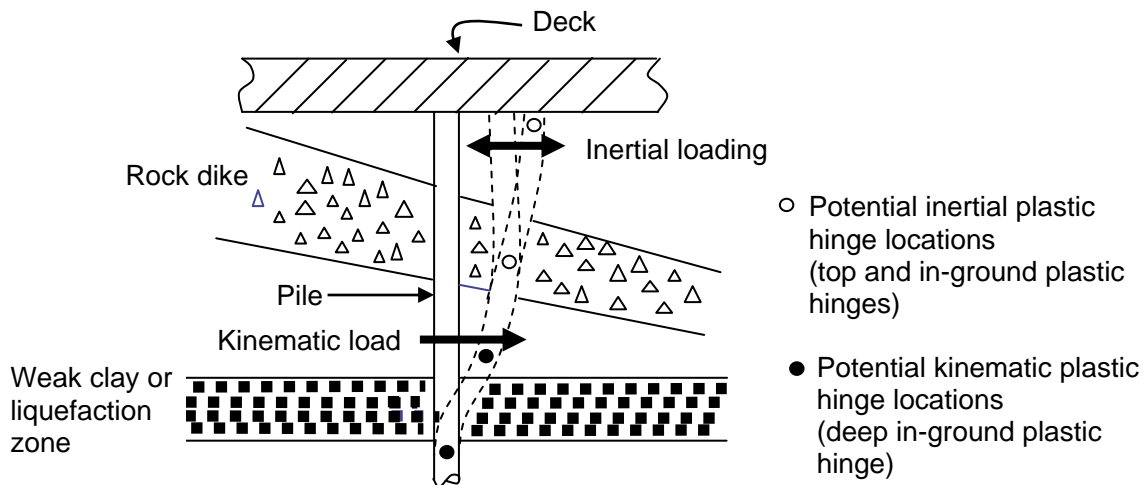
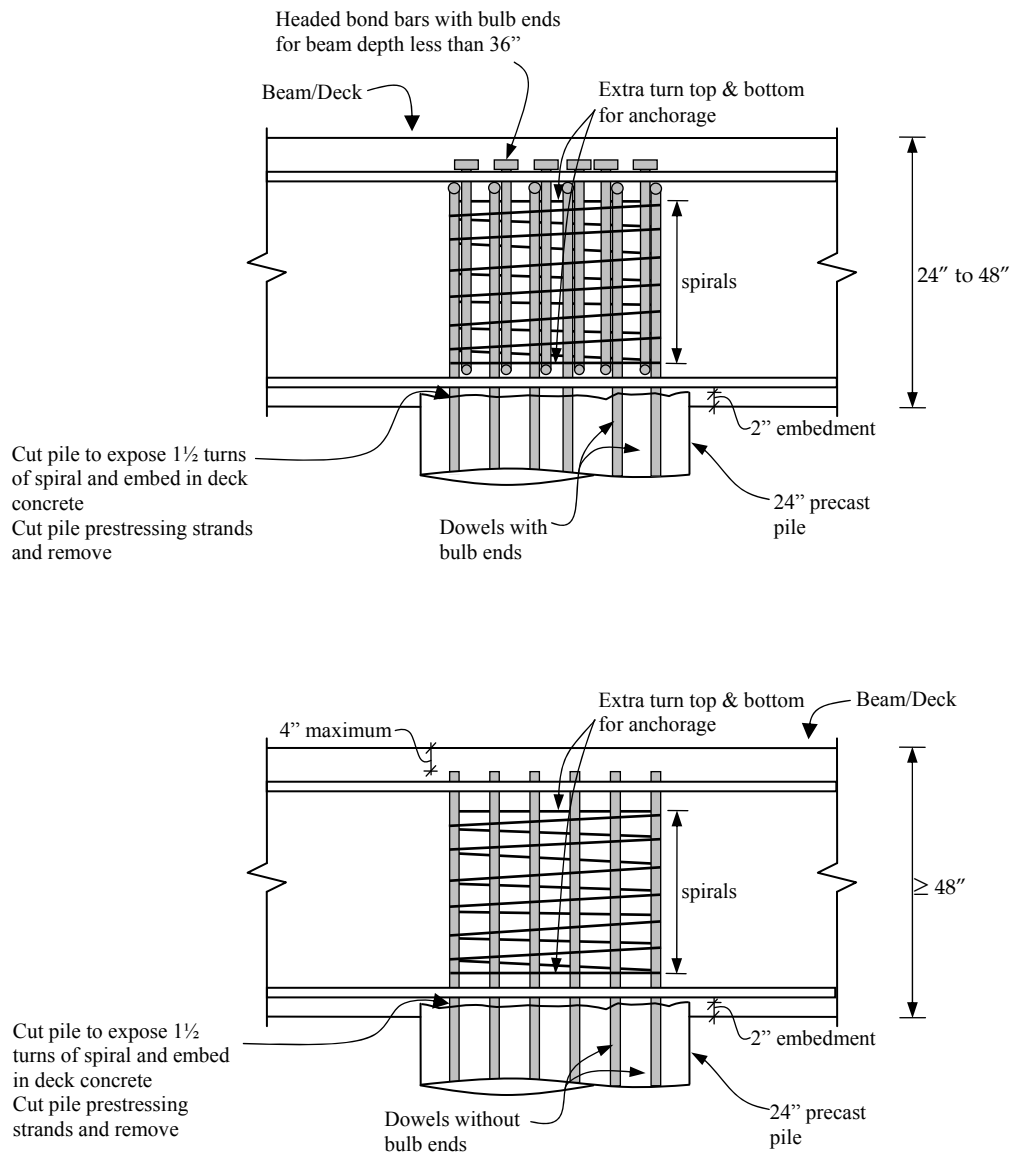


Figure 4-26: Plastic Hinge Formation due to Kinematic Loads

## 4.13 Seismic Detailing

The details shown in Figure 4-27 are acceptable confinement details for the pile beam/deck connection. The volumetric ratio of longitudinal reinforcing steel (dowels),  $\rho$  shall be between 1% and 4%. The maximum dowel bar size should be No. 11. The dowels shall be developed into the pile according to ACI-318 requirements. The effective volumetric ratio of confining steel,  $\rho_s$  shall be provided according to Section 4.10.2. The pile prestressing steel shall be cut-off and removed at the top of the pile.



**Figure 4-27: Anchorage Details for Pile Dowels**

#### 4.14 Peer Review

A peer review of the analysis and design shall be performed by an engineering team selected by the Port for:

1. Presence of new faults at the project site
2. Detailed numerical analysis for liquefaction potential
3. Irregular wharf structures
4. Nonlinear time-history analysis
5. Kinematic analysis (nonlinear dynamic soil-structure interaction analysis)





## 5 Structural Considerations

### 5.1 Design Standards

Wharf analysis and design shall comply with the provisions of POLB Wharf Design Criteria and the following codes and standards as applicable. The provisions of POLB Wharf Design Criteria shall supersede the requirements of all other documents if there are disagreements.

1. California Building Code (CBC), “California Code of Regulations, Title 24,” (Ref. 13).
2. American Concrete Institute (ACI), “Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary,” ACI-318, (Ref. 2).
3. ASCE 7-05, Standard, “Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures,” (Ref. 9).
4. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC), “Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges,” (Ref. 4).
5. ANSI/AWS D1.1, “Structural Welding Code – Steel,” (Ref. 7).
6. California Building Code “Chapter 31F [For SLC], Marine Oil Terminals,” also known as “Marine Oil Terminal Engineering Standards (MOTEMS),” (Ref. 14).
7. American Petroleum Institute (API), “Recommended Practice for Planning, Designing and Constructing Fixed Offshore Platforms – Working Stress Design,” (Ref. 5).
8. American Forest and Paper Association (AF&PA), “National Design Specifications for Wood Construction and Supplement LRFD/ASD,” (Ref. 3).

### 5.2 Wharf Geometrics

#### *Controls*

The wharf controls shall refer to the “Control” Section of the “Design Criteria and Standard Plans” under “General Criteria,” (Ref. 29) for specific instructions as to survey controls.

#### *Vertical Datum*

The vertical datum for the POLB is based on NGVD 29 (National Geodetic vertical Datum of 1929), with MLLW elevation = 0.0 feet. The City of Long Beach uses NGVD 29 with MSL elevation = 0.0 feet. As a reference, tidal elevations are provided in Table 5-1 for NAVD 88 (North American Vertical Datum of 1988) and NGVD 29.

#### *Monuments*

The Project Plans shall show the location and type for installation of baseline monuments. The Port survey section shall provide the required locations and type of monuments.

**Table 5-1: Tidal Elevations**

Abbreviation	Description	Elevation (ft)	
		NGVD 29	NAVD 88
---	Highest Observed Water Level <sup>a</sup>	+7.54	+7.16
MHHW	Mean Higher-High Water	+5.43	+5.05
MHW	Mean High Water	+4.71	+4.33
MSL	Mean Sea Level	+2.80	+2.42
MLW	Mean Low Water	+0.95	+0.57
MLLW	Mean Lower-Low Water	0.00	-0.38
---	Lowest Observed Water Level	-2.56	-2.94
<sup>a</sup> The extreme elevations should be used with caution. Irregularities in the predicted tide (seiches) have been known to cause variations of up to 1.0 feet			

***Wharf Elevations***

Wharf elevations shall be determined to maintain facility operations under all tidal conditions. Where applicable, the wharf elevation shall also match that of adjacent facilities, unless directed otherwise by project-specific criteria. Wharf elevations for RO-RO, barge loading and unloading, and special purpose docks are to be determined by project-specific criteria.

***Crane Rail Elevations***

The top of crane rails (except for wheel flange notches) shall be level with the adjacent deck surface. The top of rail elevation is dictated by drainage conditions for the wharf. This normally results in a relative elevation difference between the waterside and landside crane rails, due to deck transverse cross-slope. If cross-section elevations differ, crane design shall accommodate elevations differential by specifying crane legs to match. The longitudinal elevation of a crane rail shall be constant.

Typical rail elevations are at +15.0 feet for the waterside crane rail. The landside crane rail elevation is based on minimum grade requirements, typically 0.75%.

The allowable tolerances for the top of crane rail elevation shall be 1/8 inch, and 1/16 inch for any 10 feet along the rail length.

**5.3 Construction Materials*****Cement***

Portland cement type II modified shall be used.

***Reinforcing Steel***

Grade 60 reinforcing steel shall be used. Epoxy coating is not permitted without prior written approval by the Port.

***Prestressing Steel***

270 ksi strands shall be used for piles prestressing steel.

***Cast-in-place Concrete***

Cast-in-place concrete strength ( $f'_c$ ) shall be a minimum of 5,000 psi at 28 days. Minimum concrete cover over reinforcing steel shall be 2 inches for the top of wharf face, and 3 inches for all other faces.

***Non-prestressed Precast Concrete***

Precast non-prestressed concrete strength ( $f'_c$ ) shall be a minimum of 5,000 psi at 28 days. Minimum concrete cover over reinforcing steel shall be 2 inches for the top face, and 3 inches for all other faces.

***Prestressed Concrete Piles***

Precast prestressed concrete piles strength ( $f'_c$ ) shall be a minimum of 6,500 psi at time of driving, and 4,500 psi at time of prestressing steel stress transfer. Minimum concrete cover over transverse reinforcing steel shall be 2½ inches.

***Prestressed Precast Concrete (other than piles)***

Precast prestressed concrete strength ( $f'_c$ ) shall be a minimum of 6,000 psi at 28 days. Minimum concrete cover over reinforcing steel shall be 2 inches for the top face, and 3 inches for all other faces.

**5.4 Wharf Components****5.4.1 Wharf Deck*****Beam/Slab***

This system consists of a cast-in-place concrete slab supported by cast-in-place beams (pile caps) that are supported by piles. When beams (pile caps) exist both longitudinally and transversely, this system is also called a “waffle slab”.

***Flat Slab***

The flat slab system consists of a cast-in-place concrete deck supported by piles. The thickness of the deck slab is normally controlled by slab punching shear capacity to resist pile reactions. The slab depth in this case can be reduced by the use of capitals or shear caps under the deck at pile locations.

Flat slab system may have larger seismic mass when compared to a beam/slab system.

***Precast Slab Panels***

This system consists of precast deck slab panels placed on top of cast-in-place bent caps supported by piles. The entire system can also be covered with a reinforced cast-in-place

topping slab for continuity. Precast deck slabs have the advantage of reducing the amount of required falsework, which lowers both the construction cost and construction duration. However, the bent cap beams reduce the construction tolerance of the pile placement (i.e. misalignment). This can be an important factor in locations of construction nearby or replacing existing structures, where submerged obstacles can be expected during pile driving. Additionally, the depth of the bent cap beams with this type of deck can become relatively large as the pile spacing is increased. This can place portions of the beam in the tidal zone, potentially increasing the corrosion potential of the superstructure.

### ***Ballasted Decks***

Ballasted decks are normally not a preferred system due to their high seismic mass and associated higher seismic demands. However, this type of system works well when deck accessories such as railroad tracks are necessary, and a large number of utilities and pipelines are required. A dropped deck or ballasted section is necessary in utility corridors, and can be combined with any of the above systems. Ballasted decks are also useful for non-container and general cargo (break-bulk) wharves where point loads from odd shaped equipment and freight are operated.

### **5.4.2 Expansion Joints**

Expansion joints are joints between two wharf units with a shear key that allows relative longitudinal movement (movement parallel to shore) but restricts relative transverse movement (movement perpendicular to shore). Expansion joints locations are determined by thermal forces, and are typically placed at a maximum of approximately 800 feet along the wharf.

The wharf expansion joints shall be designed for the combined effect of seismic deformation, seismic forces and thermal expansion.

### **5.4.3 Cut-off Wall**

A cut-off wall is a vertical subsurface barrier designed to prevent erosion of backland materials under the wharf. It is normally constructed along the back edge of the wharf with a sufficient depth to maintain kick-out stability, while still providing erosion protection. It can be of either precast or cast-in-place construction. Cut-off wall shall not be relied on for seismic resistance of the wharf structure.

### **5.4.4 Crane Rails**

#### ***Support System***

Crane rails shall be supported by a continuous weight distributing sole plate with attached rail clips, a continuous flexible impact pad, and the appropriate crane rail. The assembly shall be galvanized and installed in a recessed pocket with an epoxy fill under the sole plate and asphalt concrete (AC) fill around the rail assembly to match the finished grade of the wharf deck, with block-outs for wheel flanges. Crane rails shall be continuously welded at expansion joint.

### ***Crane Stops***

Crane stops are provided at the ends of the wharf to restrict crane motion beyond their intended travel limits. The crane stop bumpers shall be positioned per crane manufacturer's recommendation. See Section 3.3.3 for further discussion on crane stops.

### ***Crane stowage pins***

The number of crane stowage pins and their location shall be based on operational considerations. They are typically placed at ends of wharf, and at intermediate points for long wharves. Consideration should be given to the number of cranes, length of wharf, location of power source, and distance between stowage pins.

## **5.4.5 Fenders and Mooring Hardware**

Fenders and mooring hardware spacing shall be determined based on operational requirements and design vessels characteristics. Also, mooring hardware shall be located to not cause line interference with fenders. Due to the likelihood of bulbous bow vessels, a minimum distance of 8.5 feet shall be provided between the supporting structure piling and the face of a compressed fender. This requirement is not applicable to fender piling, if used.

To minimize additional crane boom reach, the maximum allowable stand off for fenders shall be considered per crane and vessel configurations. Fenders shall be located along the wharf face at a distance that will minimize the chance the vessel will contact the concrete face of the wharf. Vessel dimensions and allowable hull pressure shall also be considered in positioning and sizing fenders.

Mooring bollards shall be placed at intervals based on multiples of bent spacing, but no more than 60 feet to avoid hull/wharf strikes. Refer to Section 3.7 for mooring loads.

## **5.4.6 Safety Ladder**

Safety ladders shall be provided at a maximum spacing of 400 feet along the face of the wharf.

## **5.4.7 Piling**

### ***Clearance***

An approximate minimum of 4 feet clearance shall be used between the deck/ beam soffit and top of dike to allow for adequate post-earthquake inspection and repairs.

### ***Concrete Piles***

The Port's standard pile is a 24-inch octagonal precast prestressed concrete pile. Larger size solid or hollow piles may be proposed for situations where the 24-inch octagonal pile is not a cost effective solution. The Port prefers to use only one size pile for the entire structure, varying only the length and prestress level, unless project conditions and/or cost savings prove otherwise. The use of piles other than the standard 24-inch octagonal precast prestressed piles is not permitted without a prior written approval by the Port.

***Steel Piles***

The use of steel piles is strongly discouraged due to the corrosion potential and associated higher maintenance cost. Additionally, corrosion barrier coating systems and encasements impede routine visual pile inspections. Steel piles should only be used when project-specific criteria and site circumstances dictate.

***Battered Piles***

The use of battered piles is not permitted without a prior written approval by the Port. However, battered piles may be used for isolated structures with low seismic mass, such as landside anchors, mooring and breasting dolphins.

**5.4.8 Guard Timber**

On the waterside edges of the wharf deck, a curb or chemically treated guard timber 10-inch high by 12-inch wide shall be used. Notches shall be provided on the underside of the guard timber to permit drainage. The guard timber shall be anchored to the deck slab using recessed bolts or pins, and should include vessel's net anchor rings.

**5.4.9 Trench Cover Plates**

Galvanized steel checker plate shall be used for trench covers. Special consideration should be given to the hinge design due to the weight of the plates. The preferred location of the power trench is on the waterside of the waterside crane rail. The trench cover plates shall be designed using the applicable load specified in Section 3.

**5.4.10 Cable Trench**

Trench for crane power cables shall be covered with a continuous flexible material, fabricated from rubber with inlaid steel reinforcement. The trench shall be a minimum width and depth to accommodate the crane power cables anticipated at the facility.

**5.4.11 Inclinometer Tubes/ Motion Instrumentation**

The decision to install inclinometer tubes/ motion instrumentation in the wharf structure should be made during design, and should be coordinated with other instrumentations functioning within the Port.

**5.4.12 Dike Scour**

Submerged slopes shall be protected to withstand the effects of ocean waves, tidal currents, propeller wash, and vessels wakes. At a minimum, the slope protection shall consist of an under layer of quarry run rock and an armor layer consisting of nominal 500 pounds armor stone. The submerged slope protection shall at a minimum extend above all expected water levels and wave run-up elevations. Other approaches to slope protection shall require prior written approval by the Port.

Design current speed, wave height and other coastal hydrodynamic processes shall be defined and approved by the Port. Armor design and analysis shall consider the design water level including sea level rise, design wave conditions, design current speeds, design currents from propeller and bow thruster wash, design ship wake and any other potential

sources of currents and waves such as tsunami (Ref. 37). The design vessel, for vessel related factors, is provided in Section 3.6. An approach for addressing sea level rise is given in Ref. 38.

## 5.5 Structural Analysis Considerations

### *Materials Properties*

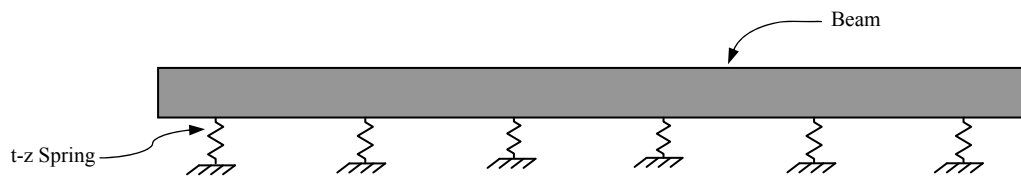
For service load analysis such as dead loads, live loads, and wind loads, the material properties shall be based on the relevant design code, see Section 5.1.

### *Section Properties*

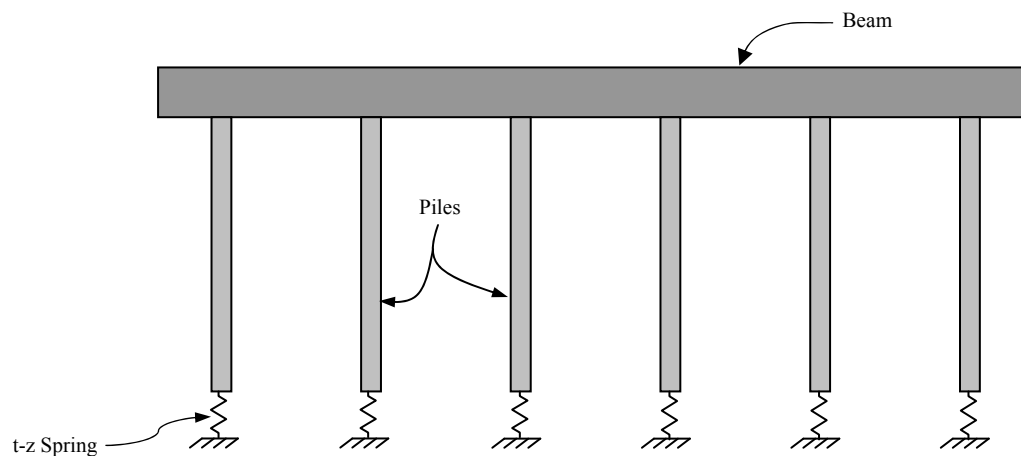
For temperature or creep loads, the effective moment of inertia ( $I_{eff}$ ) should be used for piles, see Section 4.6.3. For all other service loads, gross moment of inertia ( $I_{gross}$ ) shall be used.

### *Beam on Elastic Foundation Model*

For modeling the wharf structure frame as beams on elastic foundation, UB and LB t-z springs shall be used for the analysis including the pile elastic shortening, see Section 2. To calculate moments in the beam and axial force in the piles, the t-z springs may replace modeling the piles, as shown in Figure 5-1-a). The piles should be included in the model to determine moments and shear in the piles, as in Figure 5-1-b).



a) Model for Beam Analysis



b) Model for Beam and Pile Analysis

**Figure 5-1: Beam on Elastic Foundation**



This page intentionally left blank.

## 6 References

1. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO), "LRFD Bridge Design Specifications," 2007.
2. American Concrete Institute (ACI), "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary," ACI 318, 2008.
3. American Forest and Paper Association (AF&PA), "National Design Specifications for Wood Construction and Supplement LRFD/ASD," ANSI/AF&PA NDS 2005, AF&PA, Washington DC, 2005.
4. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC), "Manual of Steel Construction," 13<sup>th</sup> Edition, 2005.
5. American Petroleum Institute, "Recommended Practice for Planning, Designing and Constructing Fixed Offshore Platforms – Working Stress Design," API Recommended Practice 2A-WSD (RP2-WSD), 21<sup>st</sup> Edition, December 2000.
6. American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Association (AREMA), "Manual for Railway Engineering," 2011.
7. ANSI/AWS, D1.1, "Structural Welding Code, Steel" – 2008 Edition.
8. Applied Technology Council/Multidisciplinary Center for Earthquake Engineering Research, "Recommended LRFD Guidelines for the Seismic Design of Highway Bridges," MCEER/ATC-49, Based on NCHRP 12-49, 2003.
9. ANSI/ASCE 7, "Standard, Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures," 2005.
10. Blake, T. F., R. A. Hollingsworth, and J. P. Stewart, J. P. (eds.), "Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Landslide Hazards in California," Southern California Earthquake Center, University of Southern California, February 2002.
11. Blandon, C. A., "Seismic Analysis and Design of Pile Supported Wharves," Ph. D. Dissertation, Rose School, Pavia, Italy, October 2007.
12. Boulanger, R. W. and I. M. Idriss, "Liquefaction Susceptibility Criteria for Silts and Clays," ASCE: Journal of Geotechnical and Geoenvironmental Engineering Vol. 132, No. 11, November 2006.
13. California Building Code (CBC) (2010), "California Code of Regulations, Title 24," January 2011.
14. California Building Code (CBC) (2010) "Chapter 31F [For SLC], Marine Oil Terminals," January 2011.
15. California Department of Transportation, "Guide Specifications for Seismic Design of Steel Bridges," First Edition, December 2001.
16. California Department of Transportation, "Seismic Design Criteria," Version 1.6, November 2010.

17. Earth Mechanics, Inc., "Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California," Prepared for the Port of Long Beach, August 7, 2006.
18. Earth Mechanics, Inc., "Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California, Addendum to Final Report," Prepared for the Port of Long Beach, August 15, 2008.
19. Earth Mechanics, Inc., "Addendum No. 2 to Port-Wide Ground Motion Study Report, Port of Long Beach, California," Prepared for the Port of Long Beach, April 11, 2011.
20. FHWA, "Design and Construction of Driven Pile Foundations," US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration, Publication No. FHWA/NHI-05-042, April 2006.
21. Hart, E. W. and Bryant, W. A., "Fault Rupture Hazard Zones in California," California Geological Survey Special Publication SP-042, 1992. Revised 1997 (Supplements 1 and 2 Added 1999).
22. International Navigation Association [PIANC], "Guidelines for the Design of Fender Systems: 2002," Working Group No. 33 of the Maritime Navigation Commission, 2002.
23. Mander, J.P., Priestley, M.J.N, and Park, R., "Theoretical Stress-Strain Model for Confined Concrete," ASCE: Journal of Structural Engineering, Vol. 114, No. 8, August 1988.
24. Martin, G.R., and Lew, M. (eds.), "Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Liquefaction Hazards in California," Southern California Earthquake Center, University of Southern California, March 1999.
25. Moffatt & Nichol et al., "Alameda Corridor Currents and Tracer Study Revised Final Report," Prepared for Alameda Corridor Transportation Authority, May 31, 2001.
26. Moffatt & Nichol, "Tsunami Hazard Assessment for the Ports of Long Beach and Los Angeles," Final Report, Prepared for the Port of Long Beach and the Port of Los Angeles, April, 2007.
27. NAVFAC, "Foundation and Earth Structures," Design Manual 7.02, Department of the Navy, Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Alexandria, VA, September 1986.
28. NAVFAC, "Soil Mechanics," Design Manual 7.01, Department of the Navy, Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Alexandria, VA, September 1986.
29. Port of Long Beach, "Design Criteria and Standard Plans."
30. Port of Los Angeles, "Draft Commentary to the Code for Seismic Design, Upgrade, and Repair of Container Wharves," July 2004.
31. Prestressed Concrete Institute, "PCI Design Handbook, Precast and Prestressed Concrete," 6<sup>th</sup> Edition, January 2004.

32. Priestley, M.J.N., Seible, F., and Calvi, G.M., "Seismic Design and Retrofit of Bridges," John Wiley & Sons, 1996.
33. Priestley, M.J.N., Calvi G.M., and Kowalski M.J., "Displacement-Based Seismic Design of Structures," IUSS Press, Pavia, ITALY, 2007.
34. Seed, R. B. et al., "Recent Advances in Soil Liquefaction Engineering: A Unified and Consistent Framework," 26<sup>th</sup> Annual ASCE Los Angeles Section, Spring Seminar, Long Beach, California, April 2003.
35. Takeda, T., Sozen, M., and Nielsen, N., "Reinforced Concrete Response to Simulated Earthquakes," Journal of the Structural Division, Proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers, Vol. 96, No. 12, December 1970.
36. Transportation Research Board, National Cooperative Highway Research Program, "Seismic Analysis and Design of Retaining Walls, Buried Structures, Slopes, and Embankments," NCHRP Report 611, 2008.
37. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, "Coastal Engineering Manual," USACE EM-1110-2-1100 (6 volumes), Washington, D.C., 2008.
38. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, "Water Resource Policies and Authorities Incorporating Sea-Level Change Considerations in Civil Works Programs," USACE Guidance EC 1165-2-211, Washington, D.C., 2009.
39. Youd, T.L. et al., "Liquefaction Resistance of Soils: Summary Report from the 1996 NCEER and 1998 NCEER/NSF Workshops on Evaluation of Liquefaction Resistance of Soils," ASCE, Journal of Geotechnical and Geoenvironmental Engineering, Vol. 127, No. 10, October 2001.

## Bibliography

American Concrete Institute, "Guide for the Design and Construction of Fixed Offshore Concrete Structures," ACI- 357R-84, Reapproved 1997.

American Concrete Institute, "Design, Manufacture, and Installation of Concrete Piles," ACI 543R-00, 2000.

American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC 303-05), "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," 2005.

American Society for Testing and Materials, "American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Standards in Building Codes," 2007.

American Petroleum Institute (API), "Recommended Practices 2A RP 2A-LRFD", 1997.

ANSI/AWS, D1.4, "Structural Welding Code, Reinforcing Steel" – 2005 Edition.

Bell J., C. Blandon, and J. Restrepo, "Seismic Testing of Existing Full-Scale Pile to Deck Connections: Precast Prestressed and Steel Pile," Structural Systems Research Project, UCSD, January 2008.

Blake, T. F., R. A. Hollingsworth, and J. P. Stewart, J. P. (eds.), "Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Landslide Hazards in California," Southern California Earthquake Center, University of Southern California, February 2002.

Blakely, J.P. and R. Park, "Prestressed Concrete Sections with Cyclic Flexure," Journal of the Structural Division, ASCE, 1973.

California Department of Transportation (CALTRANS), "Seismic Design Criteria (SDC)," Version 1.6", 2010.

Department of Defense, "Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC), Design: Piers and Wharves," UFC 4-152-01, July 2005.

FEMA 4500-1, National Earthquake Hazards Reduction Program, "NEHRP Recommended Provisions for Seismic Regulations for New Buildings and Other Structures," 2003.

Ferritto, J., Dickenson, S., Priestley N., Werner, S., Taylor, C., Burke D., Seelig W., and Kelly, S., "Seismic Criteria for California Marine Oil Terminals," Vol.1 and Vol.2, Technical Report TR-2103-SHR, Naval Facilities Engineering Service Center, Port Hueneme, CA, July 1999.

International Navigation Association [PIANC], "Seismic Design Guidelines for Port Structures," Working Group No. 34 of the Maritime Navigation Commission, A. A. Balkema Publishers, 2001.

Joel, P. and Park, R., "Flexural Strength and Ductility Analysis of Spirally Reinforced Prestressed Concrete Piles," PCI Journal, July-August 1990.

Kawamata Y., C. Blandon, S. Ashford, and J. Restrepo, "Seismic Performance of Container Wharf Piles: Test Results," Structural Systems Research Project, UCSD, June 2008.

Krier C., J. Restrepo, and C. Blandon, "Seismic Testing of Precast Prestressed Pile to Deck Connections," Structural Systems Research Project, UCSD, January 2008.

Priestley, M.J.N., "Seismic Criteria for California Marine Oil Terminals, Vol.3: Design Example," Technical Report TR-2103-SHR, Naval Facilities Engineering Service Center, Port Hueneme, CA, May 2000.

Youd, T.L. and Idriss, I.M. (eds.), "Proceedings of the NCEER Workshop on Evaluation of Liquefaction Resistance of Soils," Salt Lake City, UT, NCEER Technical Report NCEER-97-0022, Buffalo, NY, 1997.

End of POLB WDC Version 3.0



# **Port of Long Beach Wharf Design Criteria**

**POLB WDC Version 4.0**

**May 20, 2015**





## Table of Contents

<b>List of Tables .....</b>	<b>v</b>
<b>List of Figures.....</b>	<b>vi</b>
<b>List of Symbols .....</b>	<b>vii</b>
<b>Acronyms/Definitions .....</b>	<b>xi</b>
<b>1 Introduction .....</b>	<b>1-1</b>
<b>2 Geotechnical Considerations.....</b>	<b>2-1</b>
2.1 Ground Motions .....	2-1
2.2 Site Characterization .....	2-2
2.3 Liquefaction Potential .....	2-2
2.4 Slope Stability and Seismically Induced Lateral Spreading .....	2-3
2.4.1 Static Slope Stability .....	2-4
2.4.2 Pseudo-static Seismic Slope Stability .....	2-5
2.4.3 Post-earthquake Static Slope Stability .....	2-5
2.4.4 Lateral Spreading – Free-Field .....	2-5
2.5 Settlement .....	2-6
2.5.1 Static Consolidation Settlement .....	2-6
2.5.2 Seismically Induced Settlement .....	2-6
2.6 Earth Pressures .....	2-6
2.6.1 Earth Pressures under Static Loading .....	2-6
2.6.2 Earth Pressures Under Seismic Loading .....	2-6
2.7 Pile Axial Behavior .....	2-7
2.7.1 Pile Capacity .....	2-7
2.7.2 Axial Springs for Piles .....	2-8
2.7.3 Upper and Lower Bound Springs .....	2-8
2.8 Soil Behavior under Lateral Pile Loading .....	2-9
2.8.1 Soil Springs for Lateral Pile Loading .....	2-9
2.8.2 Upper and Lower Bound Soil Springs .....	2-9
2.9 Soil-pile Interaction .....	2-10
2.9.1 Inertial Loading Under Seismic Conditions .....	2-10
2.9.2 Kinematic Loading from Lateral Spreading .....	2-10
2.10 Ground Improvement .....	2-14
<b>3 Structural Loading Criteria .....</b>	<b>3-1</b>
3.1 General .....	3-1

3.2	Dead Loads (D).....	3-1
3.2.1	General.....	3-1
3.2.2	Unit Weights.....	3-1
3.3	Vertical Live Loads (L).....	3-1
3.3.1	Uniform Loads.....	3-1
3.3.2	Truck Loads.....	3-2
3.3.3	Container Crane Loads.....	3-2
3.3.4	Container Handling Equipment Loads.....	3-3
3.3.5	Railroad Track Loads.....	3-4
3.4	Impact Factor (I).....	3-4
3.5	Buoyancy Loads (BU).....	3-4
3.6	Berthing Loads (BE).....	3-5
3.7	Mooring Loads (M).....	3-5
3.8	Earth Pressure Loads (E).....	3-6
3.9	Earthquake Loads (EQ).....	3-6
3.10	Wind Loads on Structure (W).....	3-6
3.11	Creep Loads (R).....	3-6
3.12	Shrinkage Loads (S).....	3-7
3.13	Temperature Loads (T).....	3-7
3.14	Current Loads on Structure (C).....	3-7
3.15	Loads Application.....	3-7
3.16	Load Combinations.....	3-8
3.16.1	General.....	3-8
3.16.2	Load and Resistance Factor Design (LRFD).....	3-8
3.16.3	Service Load Design (SLD) / Allowable Stress Design (ASD) ..	3-9
<b>4</b>	<b>Seismic Design Criteria.....</b>	<b>4-1</b>
4.1	Introduction.....	4-1
4.2	General Design Criteria.....	4-1
4.3	Performance Criteria.....	4-2
4.4	Strain Limits.....	4-3
4.5	Seismic Analysis.....	4-4
4.5.1	Analysis Methods.....	4-4
4.5.2	Earthquake Load Combinations.....	4-5
4.6	Structural Model.....	4-7
4.6.1	Modeling.....	4-7
4.6.2	Material Properties.....	4-8
4.6.3	Effective Section Properties.....	4-13

4.6.4	Seismic Mass .....	4-14
4.6.5	Lateral Soil Springs.....	4-14
4.6.6	Pile Nonlinear Properties .....	4-14
4.6.6.1	Moment-curvature Analysis .....	4-14
4.6.6.2	Plastic Hinge Length .....	4-17
4.6.6.3	Plastic Rotation.....	4-18
4.7	Nonlinear Static Pushover Analysis.....	4-18
4.8	Irregular Structures and Special Cases .....	4-20
4.8.1	Irregular Structures .....	4-20
4.8.2	Special Cases .....	4-20
4.8.2.1	Crane-wharf Interaction Analysis.....	4-20
4.8.2.2	Linked-wharf Interaction Analysis.....	4-21
4.9	Demand Analysis.....	4-21
4.9.1	Equivalent Lateral Stiffness Method .....	4-21
4.9.2	Dynamic Magnification Factor (DMF).....	4-22
4.9.3	Transverse Single Mode Analysis .....	4-23
4.9.3.1	Elastic Stiffness Method.....	4-23
4.9.3.2	Substitute Structure Method .....	4-24
4.9.4	Three-Dimensional (3-D) Analysis.....	4-26
4.9.4.1	Super-Pile Model.....	4-27
4.9.4.2	Modal Response Spectral Analysis .....	4-28
4.9.4.3	Nonlinear Time-History Analysis.....	4-30
4.10	Structural Capacities .....	4-31
4.10.1	Pile Displacement Capacity .....	4-31
4.10.2	Pile Beam/Deck Joint.....	4-33
4.10.3	Pile Shear .....	4-33
4.10.4	P- $\Delta$ Effects .....	4-37
4.11	Deck Expansion Joint .....	4-37
4.12	Kinematic Loads .....	4-39
4.13	Seismic Detailing.....	4-39
4.14	Peer Review .....	4-40
<b>5</b>	<b>Structural Considerations .....</b>	<b>5-1</b>
5.1	Design Standards .....	5-1
5.2	Wharf Geometrics.....	5-1
5.3	Construction Materials.....	5-3
5.4	Wharf Components .....	5-4
5.4.1	Wharf Deck.....	5-4
5.4.2	Expansion Joints .....	5-4
5.4.3	Cut-off Wall .....	5-5
5.4.4	Crane Rails.....	5-5
5.4.5	Fenders and Mooring Hardware .....	5-5

5.4.6	Safety Ladder .....	5-6
5.4.7	Piling .....	5-6
5.4.8	Guard Timber .....	5-6
5.4.9	Trench Cover Plates .....	5-6
5.4.10	Cable Trench .....	5-7
5.4.11	Inclinometer Tubes/ Motion Instrumentation .....	5-7
5.4.12	Dike Scour .....	5-7
5.5	Structural Analysis Considerations .....	5-7
<b>6</b>	<b>References .....</b>	<b>6-1</b>

---

**List of Tables**

Table 2-1:	Minimum Requirement for Slope Stability Analyses.....	2-4
Table 3-1:	Broken Pile Criteria .....	3-3
Table 3-2:	Impact Factors.....	3-4
Table 3-3:	Design Vessel Parameters.....	3-5
Table 3-4:	Load Combinations.....	3-9
Table 4-1:	Strain Limits.....	4-3
Table 4-2:	Plastic Hinge Length Equations.....	4-17
Table 5-1:	Tidal Elevations .....	5-2

## List of Figures

Figure 2-1: Axial Soil Springs .....	2-9
Figure 2-2: Flow Diagram for Evaluation of Kinematic Lateral Spread Loading for OLE, CLE and DE .....	2-13
Figure 2-3: Sliding Layer Model .....	2-14
Figure 3-1: Waterside Crane Beam Broken Piles Layout.....	3-2
Figure 3-2: Container Handling Equipment Design Wheel Load .....	3-4
Figure 3-3: Vessel Berthing.....	3-5
Figure 3-4: Mooring Line Force .....	3-6
Figure 4-1: Flow Diagram for Seismic Analysis.....	4-6
Figure 4-2: Pile Spacing for Modeling of Typical Wharf Strip.....	4-7
Figure 4-3: Pile-Deck Structural Model Schematic Showing Strain Penetration Length .....	4-8
Figure 4-4: Stress-Strain Relationship for Confined and Unconfined Concrete .....	4-10
Figure 4-5: Concrete Strength Ratio versus Confining Steel Ratio.....	4-11
Figure 4-6: Stress-Strain Relationship for Reinforcing Steel .....	4-12
Figure 4-7: Stress-Strain Relationship for Prestressing Steel.....	4-13
Figure 4-8: Moment–curvature Curve and Idealization for Method A .....	4-16
Figure 4-9: Moment-curvature Curve and Idealization for Method B .....	4-16
Figure 4-10: Idealized Moment-rotation Curve.....	4-18
Figure 4-11: Pushover Model with p-y Springs.....	4-19
Figure 4-12: Example of Pushover Curve and Plastic Hinge Sequence.....	4-19
Figure 4-13: Horizontal Marginal Wharf Configurations.....	4-20
Figure 4-14: Depth to Point of Fixity .....	4-21
Figure 4-15: Flow Diagram for the Elastic Stiffness Method .....	4-24
Figure 4-16: Flow Diagram for Substitute Structure Method.....	4-25
Figure 4-17: Effective System Stiffness for a Wharf Segment .....	4-26
Figure 4-18: Elevation View of Transverse Wharf Segment .....	4-27
Figure 4-19: Super-pile Locations for a Wharf Segment .....	4-27
Figure 4-20: P-y Soil Springs .....	4-29
Figure 4-21: Wharf Response due to Longitudinal and Transverse Excitations .....	4-29
Figure 4-22: Pile Displacement Capacity .....	4-32
Figure 4-23: Curvature Ductility Factor versus Curvature Ductility Demand .....	4-35
Figure 4-24: Transverse Shear Reinforcement Shear Strength Components .....	4-36
Figure 4-25: Axial Load Shear Strength Components.....	4-37
Figure 4-26: Share Key Factor versus Wharf Segment Length.....	4-38
Figure 4-27: Plastic Hinge Formation due to Kinematic Loads .....	4-39
Figure 4-28: Anchorage Details for Pile Dowels.....	4-40
Figure 5-1: Beam on Elastic Foundation .....	5-8

## List of Symbols

$A_{gross}$	Gross cross-sectional area
$A_{sc}$	Total cross-sectional area of dowels in the joint
$A_{sp}$	Cross-sectional area of confining steel/ transverse reinforcement
B	Width of a wharf unit
BE	Berthing loads
BU	Buoyancy loads
C	Current loads on structure
D	Dead loads
$D'$	Diameter of confined core measured to the centerline of the confining steel
$D_p$	Pile diameter
$DMF$	Dynamic magnification factor
E	Earth pressure loads
$E_c$	Modulus of elasticity of concrete
$E_{ps}$	Modulus of elasticity for prestressing steel
$E_s$	Modulus of elasticity of steel
$E_{sh}$	Confining steel modulus of elasticity
EQ	Earthquake loads
$F$	Total lateral seismic force of the wharf strip considered at displacement demand
$F_i$	Lateral force per pile in row $i$ from pushover analysis when seismic piles reach yield displacement
$F_n$	Lateral force determined from pushover curve for iteration $n$ at $\Delta_{t,n-1}$
$F_p$	Prestress compressive force in pile
$F_{\Delta}$	Total lateral seismic force of a wharf segment at displacement demand
$H$	The distance between the center of pile top plastic hinge and the center of pile in-ground plastic hinge
$H'$	The distance from the maximum in-ground moment to the center of gravity of the deck
I	Impact factor
$I_{eff}$	Effective moment of inertia
$I_{gross}$	Gross moment of inertia
$J_{eff}$	Effective polar moment of inertia
$J_{gross}$	Gross polar moment of inertia
$k$	Factor applied to dead load in earthquake load combination
$K_e$	Confinement effectiveness coefficient
L	Live loads
LB	Lower bound
$L_c$	The distance from the center of the pile top plastic hinge to the point of contraflexure
$L_L$	Length of the shorter exterior wharf unit
$L_p$	Plastic hinge length
$L_s$	Equivalent depth to point of fixity
$L_u$	Pile unsupported length
M	Mooring loads
$M_n$	Nominal moment capacity
$M_o$	Pile overstrength moment capacity



---

$M_p$	Pile idealized plastic moment capacity
$M_{p,in-ground}$	Pile plastic moment capacity at the in-ground plastic hinge including the effect of axial load due to crane dead load
$M_{p,top}$	Pile plastic moment capacity at the top plastic hinge including the effect of axial load due to crane dead load
$M_y$	Moment at first yield
$N_u$	External axial compression on pile including seismic load
P	Mooring line load
R	Creep loads
$R_F$	Force perpendicular to the fender panel due to berthing load
S	Shrinkage loads
T	Temperature loads
$T_{crane}$	Translational elastic period of the crane mode with the maximum participating mass
$T_n$	Effective period for iteration $n$
$T_w$	Effective elastic period of the wharf structure based on cracked section properties
$T_{wi}$	Transverse elastic period of a wharf segment
U	Total design load in moment, shear forces or axial forces
UB	Upper bound
$V_a$	Shear strength due to axial load
$V_c$	Concrete shear strength
$V_F$	Fender Shear Force
$V_n$	Nominal shear strength
$V_o$	Pile overstrength shear demand
$V_p$	Pile plastic shear
$V_s$	Transverse reinforcement shear strength
W	Wind loads on structure
$W_{DL}$	Effective dead load of the wharf strip considered
$W_W$	Waterside crane wheel load
$W_L$	Landside crane wheel load
$X_1, X_2$	Distance from the back of the wharf
$c$	Depth from the extreme compression fiber to the neutral axis at flexural strength
$c_o$	Clear concrete cover plus half the diameter of the transverse reinforcement
$d_{bl}$	Diameter of dowel reinforcement
$d_{gap}$	Distance between the top of the pile steel shell and the deck soffit
$e$	Eccentricity between the wharf center of mass and the center of rigidity
$f_c$	Concrete compression stress
$f'_c$	28-day unconfined concrete compressive strength
$f'_{cc}$	Confined concrete compressive strength
$f'_{ce}$	Expected compressive strength of concrete
$f'_l$	Effective lateral confining stress
$f_{pu}$	Maximum tensile strength of prestressing steel
$f_{pue}$	Expected maximum tensile strength of prestressing steel
$f_{py}$	Yield strength of prestressing steel
$f_{pye}$	Expected yield strength of prestressing steel

---

---

$f_s$	Steel tensile stress
$f_{ue}$	Expected maximum tensile strength of steel
$f_y$	Yield strength of longitudinal reinforcing steel or structural steel
$f_{ye}$	Expected yield strength of reinforcing steel/ structural steel
$f_{yh}$	Yield strength of confining steel/ transverse reinforcement
$f_{yhe}$	Expected yield strength of confining steel
$i$	Pile row
$k$	Curvature ductility factor determined as a function of $\mu_\phi$
$k_e$	System secant stiffness
$k_{e,n}$	Effective secant stiffness for iteration $n$ at $\Delta_{t,n-1}$
$k_i$	Transverse elastic stiffness of a wharf segment
$l_a$	Actual embedment length of dowels anchored in the joint
$l_{sp}$	Strain penetration length
$m$	Seismic mass of a wharf segment
$n$	Iteration number (1, 2, 3, ... $n$ )
$n_i$	Total number of piles in row $i$ for length $L_L$
$p_1, p_2$	Uniform backland load
$s$	Center-to-center spacing of confining steel/transverse reinforcement along pile axis
$v_\perp$	Approach velocity normal to fender line
$\alpha$	Angle between the line joining the centers of flexural compression zones at the top and in-ground plastic hinges and the pile axis
$\beta$	Axial load shear strength factor
$\Delta_c$	Displacement capacity
$\Delta_d$	Displacement demand
$\Delta_{p,m}$	Pile plastic displacement capacity due to rotation of the plastic hinge at the OLE, CLE, or DE strain limits
$\Delta_t$	Transverse displacement demand
$\Delta_{t,0}$	Assumed initial transverse displacement demand
$\Delta_{t,n}$	Transverse displacement for iteration $n$
$\Delta_{t,n-1}$	Transverse displacement for iteration $n-1$
$\Delta_{X1}, \Delta_{X2}$	Combined X-axis displacement demands from motions in the transverse and longitudinal directions
$\Delta_{XL}$	X-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the longitudinal direction
$\Delta_{XT}$	X-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the transverse direction
$\Delta_{Y1}, \Delta_{Y2}$	Combined Y-axis displacement demands from motions in the transverse and longitudinal directions
$\Delta_{YL}$	Y-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the longitudinal direction
$\Delta_{YT}$	Y-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the transverse direction
$\Delta_y$	Pile yield displacement
$\Delta_{ys}$	System yield displacement

---

---

$\epsilon_c$	Concrete compression strain
$\epsilon_{cc}$	Confined concrete compressive strain at maximum compressive stress
$\epsilon_{co}$	Unconfined concrete compression strain at maximum compressive stress
$\epsilon_{cu}$	Ultimate confined concrete compression strain
$\epsilon_p$	Total prestressing steel tensile strain
$\epsilon_{pue}$	Expected ultimate strain for prestressing steel
$\epsilon_{pye}$	Expected yield tensile strain for prestressing steel
$\epsilon_s$	Steel tensile strain
$\epsilon_{smd}$	Strain at maximum stress of dowel reinforcement
$\epsilon_{sh}$	Steel tensile strain at the onset of strain hardening
$\epsilon_{spall}$	Ultimate unconfined compression (spalling) strain
$\epsilon_{ye}$	Expected yield tensile strain for steel
$\phi$	Reduction factor for nominal moment capacity according to ACI-318
$\phi_m$	Total curvature at the OLE, CLE, or DE strain limits
$\phi_{p,dem}$	Plastic curvature at displacement demand
$\phi_{p,m}$	Plastic curvature at the OLE, CLE, or DE strain limit
$\phi_u$	Ultimate curvature of the section
$\phi_y$	Idealized yield curvature
$\phi_{yi}$	Curvature at first yield
$\Phi$	Strength reduction factor for shear
$\mu_n$	System displacement ductility demand at iteration $n$
$\mu_\phi$	Curvature ductility demand
$\mu_f$	Friction coefficient
$\theta$	Angle of critical shear crack with respect to the longitudinal axis of the pile
$\theta_m$	Total rotation at the OLE, CLE, or DE strain limits
$\theta_{p,m}$	Plastic rotation at the OLE, CLE, or DE strain limits
$\theta_{p,dem}$	Plastic rotation at displacement demand
$\theta_u$	Ultimate rotation
$\theta_y$	Idealized yield rotation
$\rho$	Volumetric ratio of longitudinal reinforcing steel
$\rho_s$	Effective volumetric ratio of confining steel
$\xi_{eff,n}$	Effective system damping for iteration $n$ at $\Delta_{t,n-1}$

### Acronyms/Definitions

AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
AC	Asphalt Concrete
ACI	American Concrete Institute
AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction
AF&PA	American Forest and Paper Association
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
AREMA	American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Associates
ASD	Allowable Stress Design
ATC	Applied Technology Council
AWS	American Welding Society
CALTRANS	California Department of Transportation
CBC	California Building Code
CLE	Contingency Level Earthquake
Cooper E-80	Railroad load type per AREMA
CPT	Cone Penetration Test
CQC	Complete Quadratic Combination
c.g.	Center of gravity
DCR	Demand-to-capacity Ratio
DE	Code-level Design Earthquake
DMG	Division of Mines and Geology
e.g.	For example
FEMA	Federal Emergency Management Agency
FHWA	Federal Highway Administration
FOS	Factor of Safety
ft	Foot/ Feet
HL-93	Truck load type per AASHTO
in.	Inch/ Inches
Joint	Pile beam/deck joint
klf	Kips per foot
ksi	Kips per square foot
LOA	Length Overall
LRFD	Load Resistance Factor Design
MCE <sub>G</sub>	Geometric Mean Maximum Considered Earthquake
MCEER	Multidisciplinary Center for Earthquake Engineering Research
MHHW	Mean Higher-High Water
MHW	Mean High Water
MLLW	Mean Lower-Low Water
MLW	Mean Low Water
MSL	Mean Sea Level
mph	Miles per hour
$M-\phi$	Moment-curvature analysis

NAVD 88	North American Vertical Datum of 1988
NAVFAC	Naval Facilities Engineering Command
NCEER	National Center for Earthquake Engineering Research
NCHRP	National Cooperative Highway Research Program
NDS	National Design Specification
NEHRP	National Earthquake Hazards Reduction Program
NGVD 29	National Geodetic vertical Datum of 1929
NSF	National Science Foundation
NTHA	Nonlinear Time-History Analysis
N/A	Not Applicable
OLE	Operating Level Earthquake
PCI	Prestressed Concrete Institute
PIANC	International Navigation Association
PGA	Peak ground acceleration
POLB	Port of Long Beach
pcf	Pounds per cubic foot
psf	Pounds per square foot
p-q	Pile tip soil springs
p-y	Pile lateral soil springs
RO-RO	Roll-on/Roll-off vessels
SDC	Seismic Design Criteria
SLC	State Lands Commission
SLD	Service Load Design
t-z	Pile axial soil springs
UCSD	University of California at San Diego
UFC	Unified Facilities Criteria
USACE	United States Army Corps of Engineers
WDC	Wharf Design Criteria
Wharf exterior unit	A wharf structure with an expansion joint at one end
Wharf interior unit	A wharf structure with expansion joints at both ends

# 1 Introduction

This document contains design guidelines and criteria for pile supported wharf construction, other structures may need to be considered differently. It is published by the Port of Long Beach (POLB or Port) to assist engineering staff of the POLB, as well as consulting firms providing consulting services related to the design of wharves for the POLB. Any deviation from the criteria listed herein will require specific prior written approval from the Port.

Design guidelines and reference materials cited throughout this document will be revised from time to time as required. Updates and revisions occurring during design shall be followed as directed by the Port.

This document is Version 4.0 of the “Port of Long Beach Wharf Design Criteria” and it supersedes the previous Version 3.0 that was published on February 29, 2012, Version 2.0 that was published on January 30, 2009, and Version 1.0 that was published in March 2007.

This document was prepared for the POLB under the leadership of Cheng Lai, P.E., S.E., Deputy Chief Harbor Engineer, POLB, and by a team of consultants consisting of Moffatt & Nichol (M&N), WKE, Inc., and Earth Mechanics, Inc. (EMI). The expert review team included Dr. Nigel Priestley, Emeritus Professor, Department of Structural Engineering, University of California, San Diego and Dr. Geoffrey Martin, Emeritus Professor, Department of Civil Engineering, University of Southern California.

This page intentionally left blank.

## 2 Geotechnical Considerations

Geotechnical evaluations identified in this section shall use methodologies that are considered acceptable standards of practice in the industry.

For seismic evaluations, ground motion criteria provided in Section 2.1 shall be used. Ground motions and response spectra are provided in the “Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 20) and “Final Addendum No. 3 to Port-wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 21). No deviation from these ground motions shall be allowed without prior written approval by the Port.

These guidelines are specific to pile-supported marginal wharves with engineered sloping ground conditions located under the wharf structure comprising dredged soils or cut slopes protected or stabilized by quarry run rock material. Applicability of these guidelines to other structures may be allowed upon written approval by the Port.

### 2.1 Ground Motions

Three earthquake levels shall be used in the analysis and design of wharf structures: the Operational Level Earthquake (OLE), the Contingency Level Earthquake (CLE), and the Code-level Design Earthquake (DE). The OLE and CLE correspond to different probabilities of occurrence (different average return periods). The DE corresponds to a larger and rare earthquake than the OLE and CLE. The three levels of ground motions are defined below:

#### *Operating Level Earthquake (OLE)*

The OLE is defined as the seismic event that produces ground motions associated with a 72-year return period. The 72-year return period ground motions have a 50% probability of being exceeded in 50 years. The OLE event occurs more frequently than the CLE and DE events and has a lower intensity. Recommended response spectra for OLE for different ground conditions are provided in “Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 20).

#### *Contingency Level Earthquake (CLE)*

The CLE is defined as the seismic event that produces ground motions associated with a 475-year return period. The 475-year return period ground motions have a 10 percent probability of being exceeded in 50 years. The CLE event occurs less frequently than the OLE event, but more frequently than the DE event. The CLE event has a higher intensity than the OLE event, but lower intensity than the DE event. Recommended response spectra for CLE for different ground conditions are provided in “Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 20).

#### *Code-level Design Earthquake (DE)*

The DE shall comply with the Design Earthquake requirements of the current California Building Code (Ref. 16). The DE event occurs less frequently than the OLE and CLE events and has a higher intensity than the other two events.



Recommended response spectra for DE for different ground conditions are provided in “Final Addendum No. 3 to Port-wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 21). This reference also provides peak ground accelerations that should be used for geotechnical evaluations.

## **2.2 Site Characterization**

Site characterization shall be based on site-specific information. Reviewing and cataloging available geotechnical information from past Port projects shall be performed to maximize the use of available data and to avoid conducting additional explorations where information already exists.

The presence of known active faults shall be verified using the available geological information such as the California Geological Survey (Ref. 24) or other appropriate documents. If a new fault is found at the project site, a peer review is required per Section 4.14.

Adequate coverage of subsurface data, both horizontally and vertically, shall be provided to develop geotechnical parameters that are appropriate for the project. An adequate number of explorations should extend to depths of at least 20 feet below the deepest anticipated foundation depths and should be deep enough to characterize subsurface materials that are affected by embankment behavior. Particular attention should be given during the field exploration to the presence of continuous low-strength layers or thin soil layers that could liquefy or weaken during the design earthquake shaking or cause embankment failure during dredging or other construction activities. Cone penetration tests (CPT) provide continuous subsurface profile and, therefore, should be used on large projects to complement exploratory borings. When CPTs are performed, at least one boring shall be performed next to one of the CPT soundings to check that the CPT-soil behavior type interpretations are reasonable for the project site. Any differences between CPT interpretations and subsurface conditions obtained from borings shall be reconciled prior to developing geotechnical design parameters.

An appropriate and sufficient number of laboratory tests shall be performed to provide the necessary soil parameters for geotechnical evaluations. Guidelines for site characterization can be found in “Soil Mechanics” (Ref. 34) and “Design and Construction of Driven Pile Foundations” (Ref. 22) or other appropriate documents.

## **2.3 Liquefaction Potential**

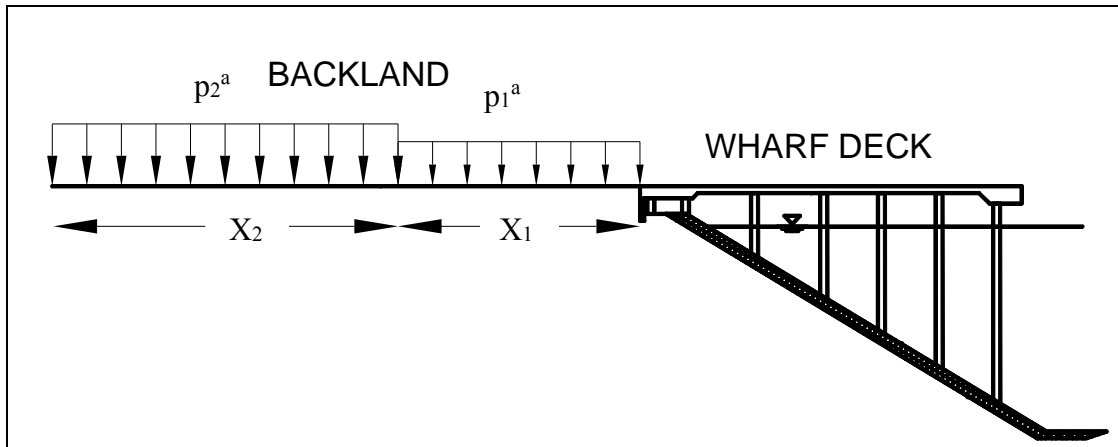
Liquefaction potential of the soils in the immediate vicinity of or beneath the wharf structure and associated embankment or rock dike shall be evaluated for the OLE, CLE, and DE. When performing geotechnical evaluations of wharf sites that are accessible to the general public, peak ground acceleration corresponding to geometric mean maximum considered earthquake ( $MCE_G$ ) as provided in Final Addendum No. 3 to Port-Wide Ground Motion Study Report (Ref. 21) shall be used for liquefaction and associated strength loss evaluations, per current CBC (Ref. 16). For wharves that are not accessible to the general public, two-thirds of the  $MCE_G$  peak ground acceleration shall be used for liquefaction and associated strength loss evaluations. Liquefaction potential evaluation should follow the

procedures outlined in “Liquefaction Resistance of Soils: Summary Report from the 1996 NCEER and 1998 NCEER/NSF Workshops on Evaluation of Liquefaction Resistance of Soils” (Ref. 45), “Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Liquefaction Hazards in California” (Ref. 29), “Chapter 31F, 2013 California Building Code” (Ref. 17), “Liquefaction Susceptibility Criteria for Silts and Clays” (Ref. 14), “Criteria for Liquefaction of Silty Soils,” (Ref. 7), and “Assessment of the Liquefaction Susceptibility of Fine-Grained Soils” (Ref. 15).

If liquefaction is shown to be initiated in the above evaluations, the particular liquefiable strata and their thicknesses, including zones of liquefaction induced in the backland area, should be clearly shown on site profiles. Resulting hazards associated with liquefaction should be addressed, including translational or rotational deformations of the slope or embankment system and post liquefaction settlement of the slope or embankment system and underlying foundation soils. If such analyses indicate the potential for partial or gross failure of the embankment, adequate evaluations shall be performed to confirm such conditions exist. In these situations, and for projects where more detailed numerical analyses are performed, a peer review is required per Section 4.14.

## **2.4 Slope Stability and Seismically Induced Lateral Spreading**

The surcharge loading values for different loading conditions and the required minimum factors of safety values are discussed in Sections 2.4.1, 2.4.2, and 2.4.3 and presented in Table 2-1. These recommended surcharge loading values may be revised based on project-specific load information, upon prior written approval by the Port.

**Table 2-1: Minimum Requirement for Slope Stability Analyses**


Load Condition	$p_1^a$ (psf)	$X_1$ (ft)	$p_2^a$ (psf)	$X_2$ (ft)	Min. FOS <sup>b</sup>
Static Condition	250	75	1,200	Remaining Backland	1.5
Temporary Condition (See Section 2.4.1)	250	Entire Backland	-	-	1.25
Pseudo-static Seismic Condition	250	75	800	Remaining Backland	- <sup>c</sup>
Post-earthquake Static Condition	250	75	800	Remaining Backland	1.1

<sup>a</sup> Load values may be revised based on project-specific information, upon prior written approval by the Port.

<sup>b</sup> FOS – Factor of Safety.

<sup>c</sup> Yield acceleration shall be obtained from the analysis to determine lateral deformations per Section 2.9.2.

### 2.4.1 Static Slope Stability

Static slope stability analysis shall be performed for the slope or embankment system. Backland loading shall be considered in the analyses. Slope stability analyses should follow guidelines outlined in “Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Landslide Hazards in California” (Ref. 12), or other appropriate documents. Backland loading shall be 250 psf for the first 75 feet from the back end of the wharf deck and 1,200 psf for the remaining backland area, see Table 2-1. The long-term static factor of safety of the slope or embankment shall not be less than 1.5.

For temporary conditions, the static factor of safety shall not be less than 1.25. The loading considerations shall be based on project-specific information (such as terminal operation, construction staging, etc.). The surcharge loading value shall not be less than 250 psf for the entire backland area, see Table 2-1.

### **2.4.2 Pseudo-static Seismic Slope Stability**

Pseudo-static seismic slope stability analyses shall be performed to estimate the horizontal yield acceleration for the slope for the OLE, CLE, and DE. During the seismic event, the backland loading shall be 250 psf for the first 75 feet from the back end of the wharf deck and 800 psf for the remaining backland area, see Table 2-1.

If liquefaction and/or strength loss of the site soils is likely, residual strength of liquefied soils, strengths compatible with the pore-pressure generation of potentially liquefiable soils, and/or potential strength reduction of clays shall be used in the analysis. The residual strength of liquefied soils should be estimated using guidelines outlined in “Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Liquefaction Hazards in California” (Ref. 29), “SPT- and CPT-Based Relationships for the Residual Strength Shear Strength of Liquefied Soils,” (Ref. 25), “Liquefied Strength Ratio for Liquefaction Flow Failure Case Histories,” (Ref. 35), or other appropriate documents.

Using a seismic coefficient of one-half of the PGA or 0.15g, whichever is greater, in the pseudo-static seismic slope stability analyses the factor of safety shall be estimated without considering the presence of wharf piles. If the estimated factor of safety is greater than or equal to 1.1, then no further evaluation for deformations or kinematic analysis as outlined in Sections 2.4.4 and 2.9.2 is necessary.

### **2.4.3 Post-earthquake Static Slope Stability**

The static factor of safety immediately following OLE, CLE or DE event shall not be less than 1.1 when post-earthquake residual strength of liquefied soils, strengths compatible with the pore-pressure generation of potentially liquefiable soils, and/or potential strength reduction of clays are used in the static stability analysis. The backland loading for post-earthquake stability analyses shall be 250 psf for the first 75 feet from the back end of the wharf deck and 800 psf for the remaining backland area, see Table 2-1.

### **2.4.4 Lateral Spreading – Free-Field**

The earthquake-induced lateral deformations of the slope or embankment and associated foundation soils shall be determined for the OLE, CLE, and DE using the peak ground acceleration at the ground surface (not modified for liquefaction) based on the “Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 20) and “Final Addendum No. 3 to Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref.21). If liquefaction and/or strength loss of the site soils is likely, residual strength of liquefied soils, strengths compatible with the pore-pressure generation of potentially liquefiable soils, and/or potential strength reduction of clays should be used in the analysis. The wharf piles should not be included in the “free-field” evaluations.

Additional analyses may be performed with prior written approval by the Port.

## **2.5 Settlement**

### **2.5.1 Static Consolidation Settlement**

Long-term static consolidation settlement of sites that are underlain by continuous or large lenses of fine-grained soils shall be evaluated. The long-term static settlement should be estimated following guidelines outlined in “Foundation and Earth Structures” (Ref. 33) or other appropriate documents. If long-term settlement is anticipated, the resulting design impacts shall be considered, including the potential for development of downdrag loads on piles (See Section 2.7.1).

### **2.5.2 Seismically Induced Settlement**

Seismically induced settlement shall be evaluated. The seismically induced settlement should be based on guidelines outlined in “Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Liquefaction Hazards in California” (Ref. 29) or other appropriate documents. If seismically induced settlement is anticipated, the resulting design impacts shall be considered, including the potential development of downdrag loads on piles (See Section 2.7.1).

## **2.6 Earth Pressures**

### **2.6.1 Earth Pressures under Static Loading**

The effect of static active earth pressures on wharf structures resulting from static loading of backfill soils shall be considered where appropriate. Backfill sloping configuration, if applicable, and backland loading conditions shall be considered in the evaluations. The loading considerations shall be based on project-specific information, with a minimum assumed surcharge loading value of 250 psf. The earth pressures under static loading should be based on guidelines outlined in “Foundation and Earth Structures” (Ref. 33) or other appropriate documents.

### **2.6.2 Earth Pressures Under Seismic Loading**

The effect of earth pressures on wharf structure resulting from seismic loading of backfill soils, including the effect of pore-water pressure build-up in the backfill, shall be considered. The seismic coefficients used for this analysis should be based on the earthquake magnitudes, peak ground accelerations, and durations of shaking provided in “Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 20) and “Final Addendum No. 3 to Port-wide Ground Motion Study Report, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 21). Backfill sloping configuration, if applicable, and backland loading conditions shall be considered in the evaluations. The loading considerations shall be based on project-specific information, with a minimum assumed surcharge loading value of 250 psf. Mononabe-Okabe equations may be used to estimate earth pressures under seismic loading, if appropriate. Refer to “Foundation and Earth Structures” (Ref. 33); “Seismic Analysis and Design of Retaining Walls, Buried Structures, Slopes, and Embankments” (Ref. 42). If Mononabe-Okabe equations are not appropriate, methods outlined in “Seismic Analysis and Design of Retaining Walls, Buried Structures, Slopes, and Embankments” (Ref. 42) or other appropriate methods may be used.

## 2.7 Pile Axial Behavior

These guidelines are based on the assumption that piles are driven into the dense to very dense soil layer that is generally present throughout the Port area at elevations approximately -80 feet to -100 feet MLLW and below. If piles are not embedded into this layer, additional guidelines may be applicable and the geotechnical engineer should provide recommendations for review and approval by the Port.

### 2.7.1 Pile Capacity

Axial geotechnical capacity of piles shall be evaluated using the load combinations in Table 3-4. Guidelines for estimating axial pile capacities are provided in “Foundation and Earth Structures” (Ref. 33), “Recommended Procedures for Planning, Designing, and Constructing Fixed Offshore Platforms” (Ref. 5), and other appropriate documents. A minimum factor of safety of 2.0 shall be achieved on the ultimate axial capacity of pile when using the largest of the service load combinations provided in Table 3-4. In addition, piles supporting the waterside crane rail girder should have a minimum safety factor of 1.5 on ultimate axial capacity of pile when using the broken pile load combinations provided in Table 3-1.

If long-term soil settlement is anticipated (See Section 2.5.1) above the pile tip, the effects of downdrag on axial geotechnical and structural capacity of piles shall be evaluated. The geotechnical capacity when evaluating the effects of downdrag loads should be estimated by considering only the tip resistance of the pile and the side friction resistance below the lowest layer contributing to the downdrag. Due to the short-term nature of transient loads, the factor of safety for the downdrag load evaluation may be reduced when downdrag loads are combined with transient loads. A minimum factor of safety of 1.5 should be achieved when combining the downdrag with the maximum of the service load estimated using load combination per Table 3-4.

For the earthquake load case, 10% of the design uniform live load should be included, per Section 4.5.2. However, the factor of safety should not be less than 2.0 when downdrag loads are combined with dead loads only. The geotechnical engineer should provide the magnitude of the downdrag load and its extent along the pile to the structural engineer.

An alternate approach to the evaluation of long-term settlement induced downdrag loads is to estimate the pile top settlement under the downdrag load plus service load and to design the structure to tolerate the resulting settlement.

If liquefaction or seismically-induced settlement are anticipated (See Section 2.5.2), the ultimate pile axial geotechnical capacity under seismic conditions shall be evaluated for the effects of liquefaction and/or downdrag forces on the pile. The ultimate geotechnical capacity of the pile during liquefaction should be determined on the basis of the residual strength of the soil for those layers where the factor of safety for liquefaction is determined to be less than or equal to 1.0. When seismically-induced settlements are predicted to occur during design earthquakes, the downdrag loads should be calculated, and the combination of downdrag load and earthquake load should be determined. Only the tip resistance of the pile and the skin friction resistance below the lowest layer contributing to the downdrag should be used in the capacity evaluation. The ultimate axial capacity of the pile should

not be less than the combination of the seismically induced downdrag load and the maximum of the earthquake load combinations, refer to Section 4.5.2.

### **2.7.2 Axial Springs for Piles**

The geotechnical engineer shall coordinate with the structural engineer and develop axial springs (T-z) for piles. The t-z springs may be developed either at the top or at the tip of the pile, see Figure 2-1. If the springs are developed at the pile tip, the tip should include both the skin frictional resistance along the pile (i.e., side springs [T-z]) and tip resistance at the pile tip (i.e., tip springs [q-w]), as illustrated in Figure 2-1. If T-z springs are developed at the pile top, the appropriate elastic axial stiffness of the pile should also be included in the springs. Linear or nonlinear springs may be developed if requested by the structural engineer.

Normally, it is assumed that the soil resistance along the side of the pile is developed at very small displacement (e.g., less than 0.5 inches) while the resistance at the tip of the pile will require large displacements (e.g., 5% of the pile diameter), (Ref. 23).

### **2.7.3 Upper and Lower Bound Springs**

Due to the uncertainties associated with the development of axial springs (t-z), such as the axial soil capacity, load distributions along the pile, and the simplified spring stiffnesses used, both upper bound (UB) and lower bound (LB) limits should be used for the axial springs. The UB and LB springs should be developed by multiplying the load values estimated in Section 2.7.2 by 2 and 0.5, respectively, to be used in the structural analysis. Different values may be acceptable if supported by rational analysis and/or testing and upon written approval by the Port.

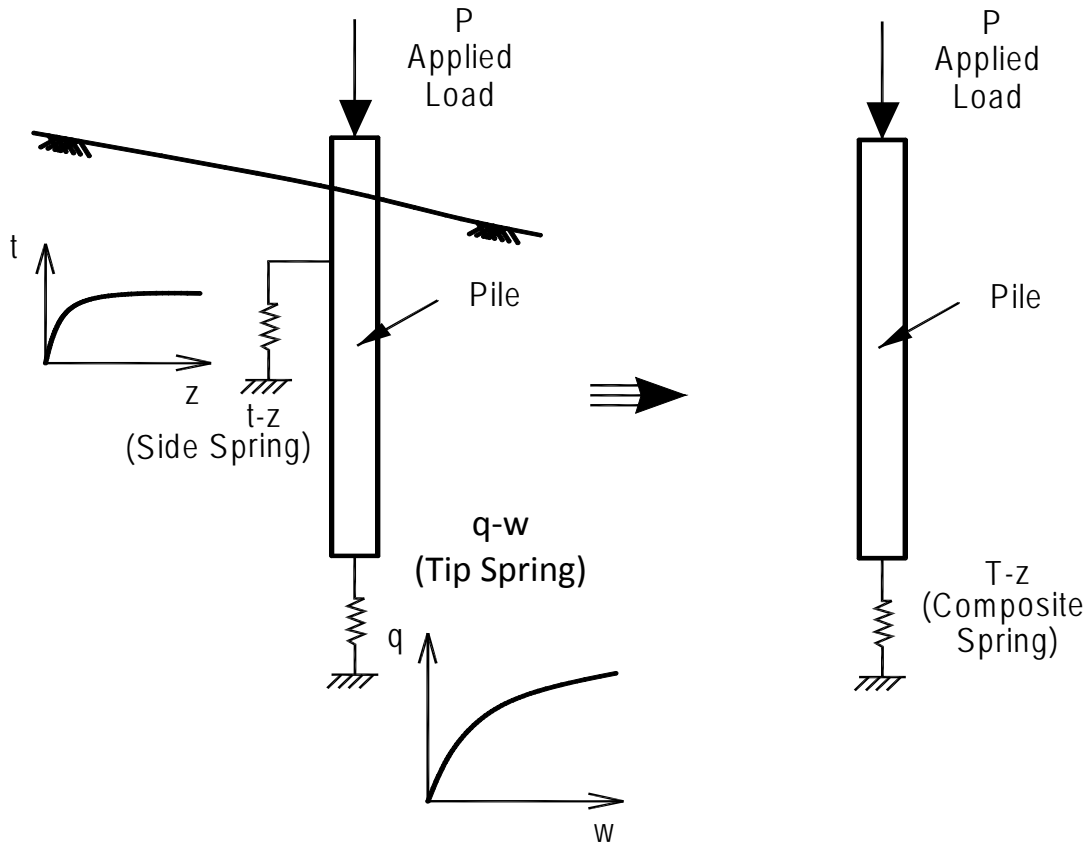


Figure 2-1: Axial Soil Springs

## 2.8 Soil Behavior under Lateral Pile Loading

### 2.8.1 Soil Springs for Lateral Pile Loading

For the design of piles under loading associated with the inertial response of the wharf structure, level-ground inelastic lateral springs ( $p$ - $y$ ) shall be developed. The lateral springs within the shallow portion of the piles (generally within 10 pile diameters below the ground surface) tend to dominate the inertial behavior. Geotechnical parameters for developing lateral soil springs may follow guidelines provided in “Recommended Practice for Planning, Designing, and Constructing Fixed Offshore Platforms” (Ref. 5) or other appropriate documents.

### 2.8.2 Upper and Lower Bound Soil Springs

Due to uncertainties associated with the development of lateral springs ( $p$ - $y$ ), such as uncertainties arising from rock properties, rock placement method, and sloping rock dike configuration, UB and LB  $p$ - $y$  springs shall be developed for use in the wharf structure inertial response analyses. For level-ground configuration, the UB and LB springs shall use 1.25 times and 0.8 times the load values of the lateral spring developed per Section 2.8.1. For typical marginal container wharf slope/embankment/dike system at the Port, the UB and LB springs shall use 2 times and 0.3 times the load values of the lateral spring developed per Section 2.8.1. These UB and LB multipliers are intended to be used along the maximum



slope of the dike for slopes between 1.5H:1V and 1.75H:1V. The range between UB and LB multipliers will be different with flatter and steeper slopes. For flatter slopes, the range between UB and LB multipliers is expected to be smaller. For steeper slopes, the range between UB and LB multipliers is expected to be larger. For dike slopes that are outside the range between 1.5H:1V and 1.75H:1V, slope-specific UB and LB multipliers should be developed and submitted to the Port for approval.

Upon written approval by the Port, rational analysis and/or testing may be performed to justify the use of different values. For other wharf slope/embankment/dike types, the UB and LB springs should be developed on a site-specific basis.

## **2.9 Soil-pile Interaction**

Two separate load conditions for the piles analysis shall be considered: (1) Inertial loading under OLE, CLE and DE, and (2) Kinematic loading from lateral ground spreading. Inertial loading is associated with earthquake-induced lateral loading on the wharf structure, while kinematic loading refers to the loading on wharf piles from earthquake induced lateral deformations of the slope/embankment/dike system.

For typical marginal container wharves at the Port (vertical pile wharf configurations with typical slope/embankment/dike system), the inertial loading condition induces maximum moments in the upper regions of the pile, and the kinematic loading condition induces maximum moments in the lower regions of the pile. The locations of the maximum moments from these two load conditions are sufficiently far apart so that the effects of moment superposition are normally negligible. Furthermore, maximum moments induced by the two load conditions tend to occur at different times during the earthquake. Therefore, for typical marginal container wharves at the Port, these load conditions can be uncoupled (separated) from each other during design. For other wharf types, this assumption should be verified on a project-specific basis.

### **2.9.1 Inertial Loading Under Seismic Conditions**

The evaluation of wharf structure response under inertial loading is discussed in Section 4. The lateral soil springs developed following the guidelines provided in Section 2.8 shall be used in the inertial loading response analyses. The wharf structure analysis under inertial loading can be performed by ignoring the slope/embankment/dike system deformations (i.e., one end of the lateral soil spring at a given depth is attached to the corresponding pile node and the other end is assumed fixed).

### **2.9.2 Kinematic Loading from Lateral Spreading**

Kinematic loading from permanent ground deformation in the deep seated levels of the slope/embankment/dike foundation soils shall be evaluated. The lateral deformations shall be restricted to such amounts that the structural performance of wharf piles is not compromised as defined by pile strain limits outlined in Table 4-1. The lateral deformation of the embankment or dike and associated wharf piles and foundation soils shall be determined using proven analytical methods as outlined below (Figure 2-2).

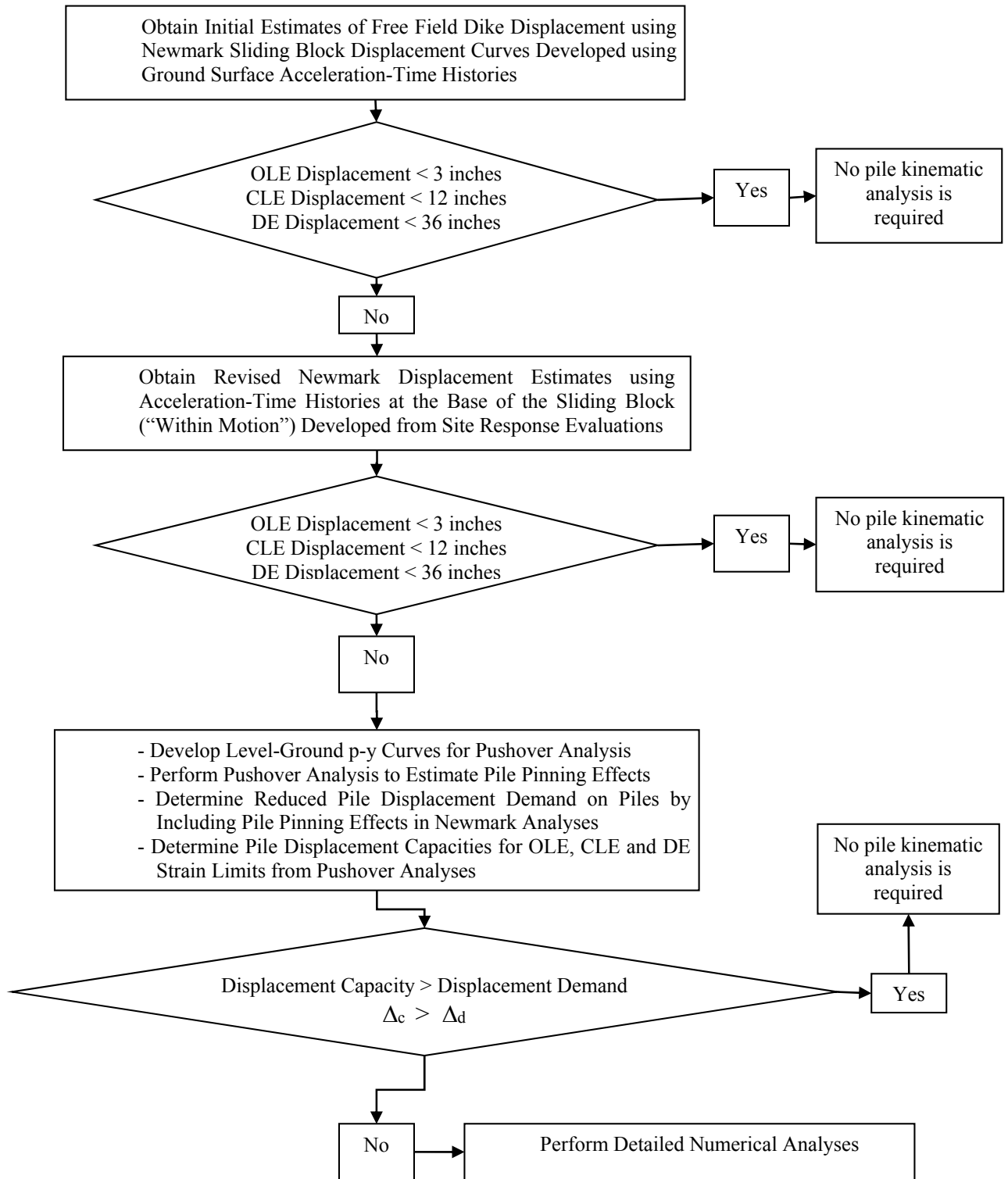
Analysis for kinematic loading may not be required if it can be shown that a previously conducted dynamic soil-structure interaction analysis of a similar wharf representing a conservative upper bound solution results in higher pile curvature demands than the wharf under consideration, and still satisfies the strain limits for the pile.

Where analysis is required, initial estimates of free-field dike deformations (in the absence of piles) may be determined using the simplified Newmark sliding block method using the curves provided in “Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 20) for the OLE and CLE, and “Final Addendum No. 3 to Port-wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 21) for DE, as discussed in Section 2.4.4. For the 24-inch octagonal, precast, prestressed concrete piles and pile configurations that are typically used for Port container wharf structures, deformations are generally considered acceptable in terms of pile strain limits and performance criteria when the permanent free-field dike deformations are less than about 3 inches for the OLE, less than about 12 inches for the CLE and less than about 36 inches for DE conditions. Additional kinematic analysis is not required if the free-field dike deformations are less than these limits.

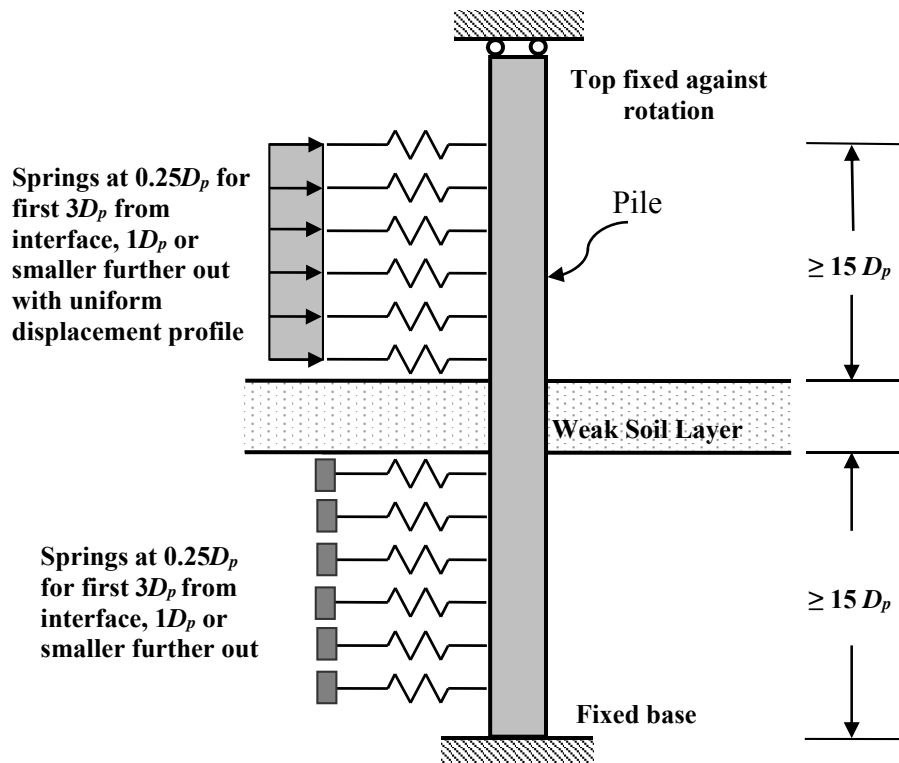
In cases where dike deformations estimated using the simplified Newmark sliding block method exceed the above displacement limits, site-response evaluations may be necessary to revise the free-field dike deformation analyses. Upon written approval by the Port, one-dimensional site response analyses may be performed to incorporate local site effects in developing site-specific acceleration time-histories at the base of the sliding block (“within motions”) for Newmark analyses. For the OLE and CLE, the firm-ground time-histories provided in “Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 20) should be used as the basis for determining input in the site-response evaluations. For the DE, the firm-ground time-histories provided in “Final Addendum No. 3 to Port-wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California” (Ref. 21) should be used. Sensitivity analyses should also be performed on factors affecting the results. The site-specific time-histories representing the “within motions” should then be used in the simplified Newmark sliding block method to revise the dike deformation estimates. If the revised dike deformations still exceed the acceptable values, more detailed numerical soil-structure interaction evaluations may be necessary.

A full soil-structure interaction numerical analysis for kinematic loading may not be required if it can be shown by structural analysis that reduced displacement demands estimated by simplified Newmark evaluations incorporating pile “pinning” effects are structurally acceptable, as discussed in the following publications: “Recommended LRFD Guidelines for the Seismic Design of Highway Bridges” (Ref. 9) and “Seismic Analysis and Design of Pile Supported Wharves” (Ref. 13). The geotechnical engineer should provide the structural engineer with level-ground p-y springs for the weak soil layer and soil layers above and below the weak layer using appropriate overburden pressures for performing a simplified pushover analysis to estimate the OLE, CLE and DE displacement capacities and corresponding pile shear within the weak soil zone. For the pushover analysis, the estimated displacements may be uniformly distributed within the thickness of the weak soil layer (i.e., zero at and below the bottom of the layer to the maximum value at and above the top of the weak layer). At some distance above the weak soil layer (at least 15 Pile Diameter, 15  $D_p$ ), the pile may be fixed against rotation and at some distance below the weak layer, the pile should be fixed against rotation and translation (Figure 2-3).

Between these two points, lateral soil springs are provided, which allow deformation of the pile relative to the deformed soil profile. The geotechnical engineer should perform pseudo-static slope stability analysis (Section 2.4.2) with the “pinning” effects of piles arising from pile shear in the weak zone incorporated and estimate the displacement demands using simplified Newmark analysis. If the estimated displacement demands are less than the displacement capacities as defined by the structural engineer, no further analysis for kinematic loading will be necessary.



**Figure 2-2: Flow Diagram for Evaluation of Kinematic Lateral Spread Loading for OLE, CLE and DE**



**Figure 2-3: Sliding Layer Model**

In cases where subsurface conditions indicate the presence of continuous, thin (less than 2 feet), liquefiable and/or soft soils beneath the dike that could result in concentrated deformations within these layers, more detailed numerical analyses may be necessary. Such analyses shall not be performed without prior written approval by the Port.

If more detailed numerical analyses are deemed necessary to provide input to the structural engineer, two-dimensional dynamic soil-structure interaction analysis of the wharf-pile-dike-soil system using numerical finite element or finite difference analyses should be performed. Sensitivity analyses should also be performed on factors affecting the results. As a minimum, deformation profiles along the length of the various pile rows should be provided to the structural engineer to estimate strains and stresses in the piles for the purpose of checking performance criteria. Such analyses should be coordinated with the structural engineer and shall not be performed without prior written approval by the Port.

## 2.10 Ground Improvement

In the event that all the requirements set forth in the above sections cannot be met for a project, ground improvement measures may be considered to meet the requirements. Prior written approval from the Port should be obtained before performing ground improvement evaluations. Ground improvement design recommendations should incorporate construction considerations including constructability, availability of contractors and equipment, schedule impact, and construction cost. Alternatives such as use of additional piles, or accepting greater damage due to larger displacements shall be considered and discussed with the Port.

## 3 Structural Loading Criteria

### 3.1 General

All container terminal wharves shall be designed for the loading requirements provided in Section 3, other structures may need to be considered differently. Where loading conditions exist that are not specifically identified, the designer should rely on accepted industry standards. However, in no case shall other standards supersede the requirements provided in this document.

### 3.2 Dead Loads (D)

#### 3.2.1 General

Dead load consists of the weight of the entire structure, including all the permanent attachments such as mooring hardware, fenders, light poles, utility booms, brows, platforms, vaults, sheds, service utility lines, and ballasted pavement. A realistic assessment of all present and future attachments should be made and included.

#### 3.2.2 Unit Weights

Actual and available construction material weights shall be used for design. The following are typical unit weights:

Steel or cast steel	490 pcf
Aluminum alloys	175 pcf
Timber (untreated or treated)	50 pcf
Concrete, reinforced (normal weight)	150 pcf
Concrete, reinforced (lightweight)	120 pcf
Compacted sand, earth, gravel, or ballast	150 pcf
Asphalt paving	150 pcf

### 3.3 Vertical Live Loads (L)

#### 3.3.1 Uniform Loads

The wharf shall be designed for a uniform live load of 1,000 psf, except for areas outboard of the waterside crane rail, which shall be designed for 500 psf. When combined with crane loading, the uniform live load in all areas should be 300 psf with no uniform loading within 5 feet of either side of the crane rails. For the design of wharf piles, the uniform live load may be reduced by 20% (800 psf). All uniform live loads shall be distributed to produce maximum forces. At predetermined locations, the outboard deck slab will also be checked for the loads imposed during loading and unloading of container cranes or other large equipment from their transport vessel. This load will be obtained from the equipment manufacturer and/or transporting company. The wharf may have a specified "Heavy Load" area to be designed for a uniform live load of 2,000 psf.

### 3.3.2 Truck Loads

Truck loads shall be in accordance with the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) Standard Specification for Highway Bridges (Ref. 1). The wharf structure shall be designed for HL-93 truck loads shown in AASHTO, increased by a factor of 1.25. Lane loads need not be considered for the deck structure. Impact will be in accordance with Section 3.4. When truck load is transferred through 2.0 feet or deeper ballast fill, the impact factor need not be considered in design.

### 3.3.3 Container Crane Loads

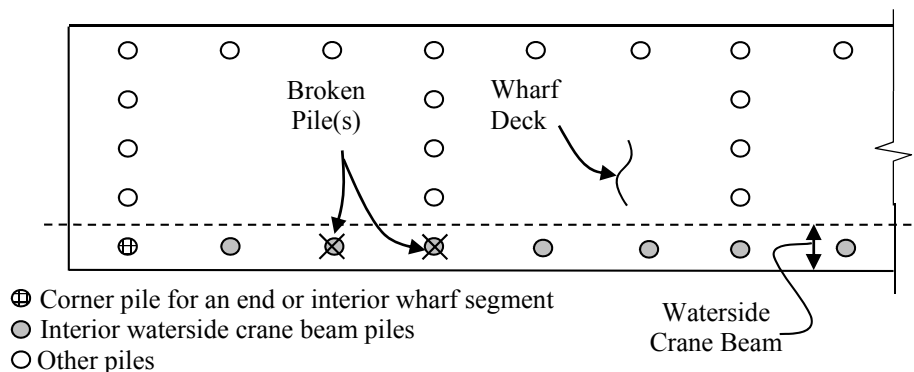
#### *Crane Rail Loads*

All crane rail beams and supporting substructures shall be designed for actual crane wheel loads. In the absence of actual crane wheel loads data, a crane wheel load analysis shall be performed. This analysis should be done to determine the design crane wheel loads due to crane dead, live, wind and earthquake loads. The crane wheel load analysis criteria including load combinations shall be submitted to the Port for approval prior to performing the analysis. The following design crane wheel loads shall be provided for the wharf design:

- Vertical uniform wheel loads.
- Lateral uniform wheel loads.
- Crane Stowage pin loads.
- Crane stop loads and point of application height.
- All wheel loads shall be provided for crane landside and waterside.
- All wheel loads shall be provided for Service Load Design (SLD) / Allowable Stress Design (ASD) and Load and Resistance Factor Design (LRFD) conditions.

#### *Waterside Crane Beam Broken Pile Criteria*

The waterside crane rail beam shall be designed to span over interior pile(s) that may be damaged or broken, refer to Figure 3-1. The design consideration associated with a crane moving over broken piles are shown in Table 3-1. The wharf shall be fully operational with one broken pile and no operational allowance for two adjacent broken piles. The crane shall be allowed to gantry without cargo load over the two adjacent broken piles.



**Figure 3-1: Waterside Crane Beam Broken Piles Layout**

**Table 3-1: Broken Pile Criteria**

Load Case	Flexural Capacity <sup>a</sup>	Pile Soil Capacity Factor of Safety <sup>b</sup>
Normal operation	$\phi M_n$	2.0
One interior pile broken <sup>c</sup>	$1.1\phi M_n$	1.5
Two adjacent interior piles broken <sup>c, d, e</sup>	$1.1\phi M_n$	1.5
<sup>a</sup> $\phi M_n$ is the reduced nominal moment capacity of the crane rail beam or supporting pile head, calculated based on ACI-318. <sup>b</sup> This factor of safety is for service load design combinations. <sup>c</sup> Use for exterior waterside crane girder only. If truck lane exists, the broken pile criteria are not applicable. <sup>d</sup> Only wharf dead load and the waterside crane dead weight rail load specified above need to be considered for the case of two adjacent interior piles broken. <sup>e</sup> Wharf design shall include the crane dead load only for moving over two adjacent broken piles. No cargo loads are permitted.		

***Crane Stowage Pin***

Crane stowage pins shall be designed for the horizontal force provided in the crane wheel load analysis with a minimum of 250 kips service load (SL) per rail at each location under stowed wind condition.

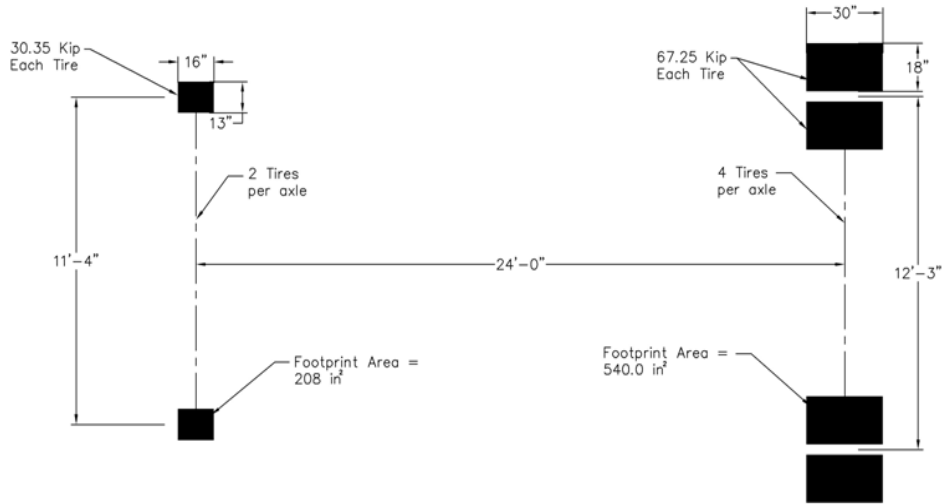
***Crane Stop Load***

Crane stops shall be designed to resist a horizontal runaway wind-blown crane impacting force provided in the crane wheel load analysis with a minimum of 350 kips service load (SL) per rail. The force will be applied at the provided height at the crane wheel load analysis above the top of the rail, and in a direction parallel to the rail.

**3.3.4 Container Handling Equipment Loads**

Wharf deck slab shall be designed for container handler wheel loads shown in Figure 3-2. Wheel loads distribution shall be determined in accordance with AASHTO (Ref. 1). For equipment with hard rubber wheels or other wheels not inflated, the wheel contact area shall be designed as a point load. If handling equipment loading needs to be higher than the load shown in Figure 3-2, load values and distribution shall be provided to the port for approval.





**Figure 3-2: Container Handling Equipment Design Wheel Load**

**3.3.5 Railroad Track Loads**

Wharves accessible by freight car shall be designed for railroad loads. Wheel loads shall correspond to Cooper E-80 designation of “American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Association (AREMA) Manual” (Ref. 6).

**3.4 Impact Factor (I)**

The impact factors shown in Table 3-2 shall be applied to uniform live loads and wheel loads for the design of deck slab, crane beams and pile caps. Impact factors should not be used for the design of piles and other types of substructures.

**Table 3-2: Impact Factors**

Load	Impact Factor (I)
Uniform Loads	0%
Truck Loads	10%
Container Handling Equipment Loads	10%
Railroad Track Loads	20%

**3.5 Buoyancy Loads (BU)**

Typically, wharf decks are not kept low enough to be subjected to buoyancy forces. However, portions of the structure, such as utility lines and vaults and bent caps, may be low enough to be subjected to buoyancy forces. These are essentially uplift forces applied at the rate of 64 pounds per square foot of plan area for every foot of submergence below water level.

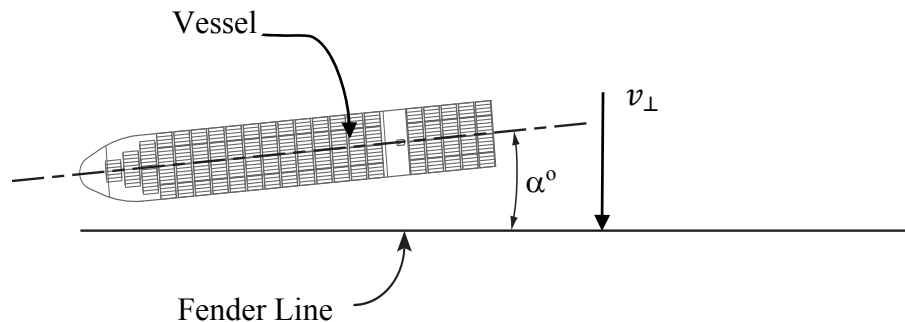
### 3.6 Berthing Loads (BE)

Berthing loads shall be based on the characteristics of design vessel as listed in Table 3-3. The berthing energy shall be determined by the deterministic approach according to “Guidelines for the Design of Fender Systems, 2002” (PIANC 2002) (Ref. 26) with “favorable” site condition.

**Table 3-3: Design Vessel Parameters**

Vessel Characteristic	Design Vessel
Length Overall (LOA)	Vessel Specific
Maximum Displacement	Vessel Specific
Beam	Vessel Specific
Draft	Vessel Specific
Allowable Hull Pressure	Per PIANC 2002 (Ref. 26)
Approach Velocity Normal to Fender Line, $v_{\perp}$	Per PIANC 2002 (Ref. 26)
Approach Angle, $\alpha$	Per PIANC 2002 (Ref. 26)

Fender shear forces may be calculated using a friction coefficient,  $\mu_f = 30\%$ , at the fender face/ship hull interface. The berthing energy of the rubber fender shall be based on a fender panel deflected angle of  $10^{\circ}$ . Vessel ship energy shall be resisted by one fender or dual fender system. If a dual fender system is used, each fender shall have the capacity for 75% of the total berthing energy.



**Figure 3-3: Vessel Berthing**

$$V_F = \mu_f \times R_F \quad (3.1)$$

where:

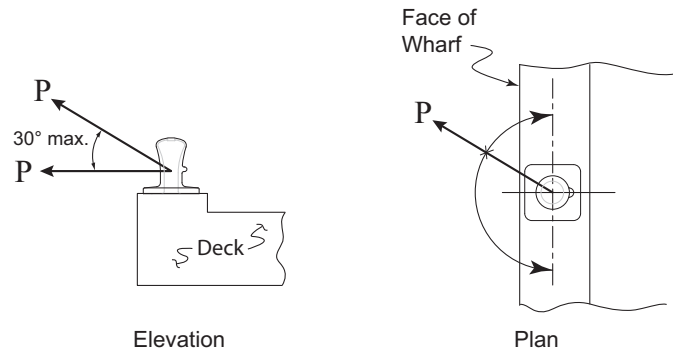
- $V_F$  = Fender shear force (Horizontal and Vertical)  
 $R_F$  = Force perpendicular to the fender panel due to berthing load

### 3.7 Mooring Loads (M)

For the design of the wharf structure, mooring line loads (P) shall be equal to the mooring hardware capacity. These line loads shall be applied at angles between horizontal and a maximum of  $30^{\circ}$  from horizontal in a vertical plane outboard of the wharf face, as shown in Figure 3-4. These load directions represent possible bow and stern breasting line loads.

In applying these loads to the wharf structure, consideration should be given to bow and stern breasting line separations as well as distances to possible adjacent vessel breasting lines. Where applicable, mooring line loads shall also be considered adjacent to expansion joints and/or the end of the structure.

Each mooring hardware for container ships shall have a minimum capacity of 200 metric tons. For other types of vessels, which may require higher mooring hardware capacities, a more detailed mooring analysis shall be performed. For mooring analysis use 75 mph design wind speed (30-second duration with 25-year return period), for more details refer to Current CBC Section 3103F.5 (Ref. 17).



**Figure 3-4: Mooring Line Force**

### 3.8 Earth Pressure Loads (E)

Detailed requirements for static and dynamic earth pressure loads are discussed in Section 2.

### 3.9 Earthquake Loads (EQ)

Wharf structure shall be designed to resist earthquake motions by considering the relationship of the site to active faults, the seismic response of the soils at the site, and the dynamic response characteristics of the total structure and its individual components in accordance with the Seismic Design Criteria described in Section 4.

To account for the effect of vertical ground acceleration on the pile and deck, upper bound and lower bound dead load combinations shall be considered with seismic load.

### 3.10 Wind Loads on Structure (W)

The wind load calculations shall be based on Current CBC (Ref. 16) with basic wind speed of 110 mph (3-second gust with 7% probability of exceedance in 50 years).

### 3.11 Creep Loads (R)

Creep is a material-specific internal load similar to shrinkage and temperature, and is critical only to prestressed concrete construction. The creep effect is also referred to as rib shortening and shall be evaluated using the PCI Design Handbook (Ref. 38).

### **3.12 Shrinkage Loads (S)**

Open wharf deck constructed from concrete components are subject to forces resulting from shrinkage of concrete due to the curing process. Shrinkage load is similar to temperature load in the sense that both are internal loads. For long continuous open wharf structures, shrinkage load is significant and should be considered. However, on pile-supported wharf structures, the effect is not as critical as it may seem at first because over the long time period in which shrinkage takes place, the soil surrounding the piles will slowly “give” and relieve the forces on the piles caused by the shrinking deck. The Prestressed Concrete Institute (PCI) Design Handbook (Ref. 38) is recommended for design of shrinkage.

### **3.13 Temperature Loads (T)**

Thermal loads in structural elements shall be determined based on a temperature difference of 25° F whether increase or decrease.

### **3.14 Current Loads on Structure (C)**

If site-specific current velocity data is not available, the current load on structure can be based on current velocity of 1.5 foot per second (Ref. 30). Loads due to tsunami-induced waves, wave heights in shallow water and particle kinematics can be determined based on current and wave heights presented in Ref. 31. Other structural considerations including uplift and debris impact shall be considered in the wharf design.

### **3.15 Loads Application**

#### *Concentrated Loads*

Wheel loads and outrigger float loads from container handling equipment may be applied at any point on a wharf deck except outboard of the waterside crane rail. The equipment may be oriented in any direction, and the orientation causing the maximum forces on the structural members shall be used in the design. Trucks are permitted to operate outboard of the waterside crane rail. Power trench covers and utility vault covers outboard of the waterside crane rail shall be designed for wheel loads of trucks only; no other concentrated loads shall be used. Loaded containers shall not be stacked on the wharf deck. However, empties may be stacked inboard of the waterside crane rail, and the resulting corner casting compression or punching shear forces due to empty containers stacked six high should be checked.

#### *Simultaneous Loads*

Uniform and concentrated live loads should be applied in a logical, practical manner. Designated uniform live loads and concentrated live loads from pneumatic-tired equipment shall not be applied simultaneously in the same area. However, a uniform live load shall be used between crane rails as described in Section 3.3.1. When railroad tracks are present between crane rails, both crane and railroad track loads shall be applied simultaneously, and no uniform load between crane rails shall be applied.

### ***Loads for Maximum Member Forces***

For determining the shear forces and bending moments in continuous members, the designated uniform and concentrated loads shall be applied to produce the maximum effect.

### ***Critical Loads***

Concentrated loads are generally critical for punching shear and for the design of short spans such as deck slabs, power trench covers and utility vault covers. Uniform load, container handling equipment load, crane loads, and railroad track loads are generally critical for the design of beams, pile caps, and supporting piles.

## **3.16 Load Combinations**

### **3.16.1 General**

Wharf structures shall be proportioned to safely resist the load combinations represented in Table 3-4. Each component of the structure and the foundation elements shall be analyzed for all applicable combinations. For earthquake load combinations refer to Section 4.

### ***Load Symbols***

D	=	Dead Loads
L	=	Live Loads
I	=	Impact Factor
BU	=	Buoyancy Loads
BE	=	Berthing Loads
M	=	Mooring Loads
E	=	Earth Pressure Loads
W	=	Wind Loads on Structure
R	=	Creep Loads
S	=	Shrinkage Loads
T	=	Temperature Loads
C	=	Current on Structure Loads

### **3.16.2 Load and Resistance Factor Design (LRFD)**

Load combinations and load factors used for load and resistance factor design are presented in Table 3-4. Concrete and steel structural members shall be designed using the load and resistance factor design method. However, concrete structural members shall also be checked for serviceability (i.e., creep, fatigue, and crack control as described in ACI-318 (Ref. 2), and temporary construction loads. Strength reduction factors shall follow ACI-318 (Ref. 2) for reinforced concrete design and AISC (Ref. 4) for structural steel design.

### 3.16.3 Service Load Design (SLD) / Allowable Stress Design (ASD)

Load combinations used for allowable stress design are presented in Table 3-4. The service load approach shall be used for designing vertical foundation capacity and long-term vertical wharf loads.

**Table 3-4: Load Combinations<sup>a</sup>**

LOAD AND RESISTANCE FACTOR DESIGN (LRFD) <sup>b</sup>									
Case	LOAD COMBINATION FACTORS								
	D	L+I <sup>c</sup>	E	W	BE	M	R+S+T	BU	C
I	1.20	1.60	1.60	1.00	—	—	1.20	1.20	1.20
II <sup>d</sup>	0.90	—	1.60	1.00	—	—	1.20	1.00	1.20
III	1.20	1.00	1.60	1.00	1.60	—	—	1.20	1.20
IV	1.20	1.60	1.60	1.00	—	1.60	—	1.20	1.20
SERVICE LOAD DESIGN (SLD) / ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN (ASD) <sup>e</sup>									
Case	LOAD COMBINATION FACTORS								
	D	L+ I <sup>c</sup>	E	W	BE	M	R+S+T	BU	C
I	1.00	1.00	1.00	0.60	—	—	1.00	1.00	1.00
II	1.00	0.75	1.00	0.45	1.00	—	—	1.00	1.00
III	1.00	1.00	1.00	0.60	—	1.00	—	1.00	1.00
<sup>a</sup> For earthquake load combinations, refer to Section 4.5.2 <sup>b</sup> The Load Resistance Factor Design require the strength reduction factors, $\phi$ as specified in ACI-318 ( Ref. 2). Strength reduction factors shall follow ACI-318 (Ref. 2) for reinforced concrete design and AISC (Ref. 4) for structural steel design. <sup>c</sup> The LRFD and SLD/ASD crane wheel loads determined according to Section 3.3.3 should be combined with other loads listed in this table without additional factor. <sup>d</sup> Reduce load factor to 0.9 for dead load (D) to check members for minimum axial load and maximum moment. <sup>e</sup> Increase in allowable stress shall not be used.									

This page intentionally left blank.

## **4 Seismic Design Criteria**

### **4.1 Introduction**

The following criteria identify the minimum requirements for seismic design of wharves. The criteria, which are performance based, require the displacement capacities of the structural members to be greater than the displacement demand imposed by the seismic loads. Where required, structural members are intentionally designed and detailed to deform inelastically for several cycles without significant degradation of strength under earthquake demand.

### **4.2 General Design Criteria**

Wharf design shall consider the following items:

#### ***Ductile Design***

The wharf structure shall be designed as a ductile system. The pile-to-deck interface forms an integral part of the wharf structure, and shall be designed for ductile behavior.

#### ***Structural System***

The structural system shall be based on the strong beam (deck), weak column (pile) frame concept. The pile-deck structural system shall be designed to develop plastic hinges in the piles and not in the deck. This concept is different from the strong column-weak beam structural system concept that is used for the design of buildings. Capacity design is required to ensure that the dependable strengths of the protected members exceed the maximum feasible demand based on high estimates of the flexural strength of piles plastic hinges.

#### ***Pile Connection***

The pile shall be connected to the deck with mild steel dowels (Grade 60). Moment-resisting connection created by extending the prestressing tendons into the wharf deck shall not be permitted.

#### ***Vertical Piles***

An all-vertical (plumb) pile system shall be used, with an appropriate connection at the pile-to-deck interface to ensure ductile performance of the structure. Battered piles shall not be used for the design of new wharves without prior written approval from the Port. Refer to Section 5.4.7 for the appropriate use of batter piles.

#### ***Crane Rails***

Beams supporting crane rails shall be supported by vertical piles only. The gage between crane rails shall be maintained by structural members or a wharf deck that spans between the two rails to prevent spreading or loss of gage due to earth movements.



***Bulkheads***

Steel or concrete bulkheads shall be designed to resist DE demands to not exceed the strain limits of OLE presented in Table 4-1

***Cut-off wall***

Cut-off wall shall be used to prevent loss of soil from the backland and shall not be designed to provide seismic lateral resistance.

***Slope Stability***

A slope stability analysis, including seismic induced movements, shall be performed as outlined in Section 2.

***Utilities & Pipelines***

Utilities shall be designed with flexible connections between the backland area and the wharf capable of sustaining expected wharf movements under CLE response. Flexible connections shall also be provided across wharf deck expansion joints.

**4.3 Performance Criteria**

The ground motions levels provided in Section 2.1 shall be used for the seismic design. The permitted level of structural damage for each ground motion is controlled by the concrete and steel strain limits in piles defined in Section 4.4. The performance criteria of the three-level ground motions are defined below:

***Operating Level Earthquake (OLE)***

Due to an OLE event, the wharf should have no interruption in operations. OLE forces and deformations, including permanent embankment deformations, shall not result in significant structural damage. All damage, if any, shall be cosmetic in nature and located where visually observable and accessible. Repairs shall not interrupt wharf operations.

***Contingency Level Earthquake (CLE)***

Due to a CLE event, there may be a temporary loss of operations that should be restorable within a few months. CLE forces and deformations, including permanent embankment deformations, may result in controlled inelastic structural behavior and limited permanent deformations. All damage shall be repairable and shall be located where visually observable and accessible for repairs.

***Code-level Design Earthquake (DE)***

Due to a DE event, forces and deformations, including permanent embankment deformations, shall not result in the collapse of the wharf and the wharf shall be able to support the design dead loads in addition to cranes dead load. Life safety shall be maintained.

## 4.4 Strain Limits

The strain limits for the OLE, CLE and DE performance levels are defined by the following material strains for concrete piles and steel pipe piles. Strain values calculated in the analysis shall be compared to the following limits:

**Table 4-1: Strain Limits**

Component Strain		Design Level		
		OLE	CLE	DE
Solid Concrete Pile <sup>a</sup>	Top of pile hinge concrete strain	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.005$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.005 + 1.1\rho_s \leq 0.025$	No limit
	In-ground hinge concrete strain	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.005$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.005 + 1.1\rho_s \leq 0.008$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.005 + 1.1\rho_s \leq 0.012$
	Deep In-ground hinge (>10D <sub>p</sub> ) concrete strain	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.008$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.012$	No limit
	Top of pile hinge reinforcing steel strain	$\varepsilon_s \leq 0.015$	$\varepsilon_s \leq 0.6\varepsilon_{smd} \leq 0.06$	$\varepsilon_s \leq 0.8\varepsilon_{smd} \leq 0.08$
	In-ground hinge prestressing steel strain	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.015$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.025$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.035$
	Deep In-ground hinge (>10D <sub>p</sub> ) prestressing steel strain	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.015$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.025$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.050$
Hollow Concrete Pile <sup>b</sup>	Top of pile hinge concrete strain	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.004$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.006$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.008$
	In-ground hinge concrete strain	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.004$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.006$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.008$
	Deep In-ground hinge (>10D <sub>p</sub> ) concrete strain	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.004$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.006$	$\varepsilon_c \leq 0.008$
	Top of pile hinge reinforcing steel strain	$\varepsilon_s \leq 0.015$	$\varepsilon_s \leq 0.4\varepsilon_{smd} \leq 0.04$	$\varepsilon_s \leq 0.6\varepsilon_{smd} \leq 0.06$
	In-ground hinge prestressing steel strain	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.015$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.020$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.025$
	Deep In-ground hinge (>10D <sub>p</sub> ) prestressing steel strain	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.015$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.025$	$\varepsilon_p \leq 0.050$

**Table 4-1: Strain Limits (Continued)**

Component Strain		Design Level		
		OLE	CLE	DE
Steel Pipe Piles <sup>c</sup>	Top of pile hinge concrete strain	$\epsilon_c \leq 0.010$	$\epsilon_c \leq 0.025$	No limit
	Top of pile hinge reinforcing steel strain	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.015$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.6\epsilon_{smd} \leq 0.06$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.8\epsilon_{smd} \leq 0.08$
	In-ground hinge hollow pipe steel strain	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.010$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.025$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.035$
	In-ground hinge pipe in-filled with concrete steel strain	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.010$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.035$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.050$
	Deep In-ground hinge (>10D <sub>p</sub> ) hollow pipe steel strain	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.010$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.035$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.050$
<sup>a</sup>	For solid round or octagonal piles.			
<sup>b</sup>	If a hollow concrete pile is in-filled with concrete, the strain limits shall be identical to a solid concrete pile.			
<sup>c</sup>	Steel pipe pile deck connection shall be accomplished by concrete plug with dowel reinforcement.			
Definitions:				
	D <sub>p</sub>	= Pile diameter		
	$\epsilon_c$	= Concrete compression strain		
	$\epsilon_s$	= Steel tensile strain		
	$\epsilon_{smd}$	= Strain at maximum stress of <u>dowel reinforcement</u> ; see Section 4.6.2		
	$\epsilon_p$	= Total prestressing steel tensile strain		
	$\rho_s$	= Effective volumetric ratio of confining steel		

## 4.5 Seismic Analysis

### 4.5.1 Analysis Methods

Analysis of wharf structures shall be performed for each performance level to determine displacement demand and capacity. The capacity shall be based on the pile strain limits defined in Table 4-1. The following analysis methods may be used:

- Nonlinear Static Pushover
- Equivalent Lateral Stiffness Method
- Elastic Stiffness Method
- Substitute Structure Method
- Modal Response Spectra Analysis
- Nonlinear Time-History Analysis

The flow diagram in Figure 4-1 shows the typical steps a designer should follow to complete the seismic analysis and design for a wharf structure. After the design for service static loads has been completed, the performance design shall be performed for OLE, CLE and DE. The seismic design may require additional pile rows or a modified pile layout. A model including the effective section properties, seismic mass, and soil springs shall be prepared. An Equivalent Lateral Stiffness method may be used for preliminary design, if desired. Nonlinear static pushover analysis is always required, and will provide the displacement capacity based on strain limits for all methods. The structural analysis shall account for wharf torsional plan eccentricity, soil structure interaction, multi-directional effects of the ground motion and the interaction between adjacent wharf segments. Displacement demand for regular wharves shall be estimated by the Elastic Stiffness method, the Substitute Structure method, or Modal Response Spectra Analysis. For wharves with irregular geometry, special cases, or when demand/capacity ratios from Modal Response Spectra Analysis are too high, Nonlinear Time-History methods may be employed for the global model to verify the analysis results. Nonlinear Time-History analyses, however, shall not be conducted without prior written approval from the Port.

The maximum pile displacement shall be determined from the demand analysis, and compared to the displacement capacity. The demand determined using the Elastic Stiffness and Substitute Structure methods shall be adjusted for torsional effects using the Dynamic Magnification Factor. If the demand is greater than the capacity, the design must be revised. If the demand is less than the capacity, the pile shear, the beam/deck pile joint and P-Δ effects shall be checked. If the simplified kinematic loading and lateral spreading analysis performed per Section 2.9.2 requirements indicate that the anticipated pile strains for the estimated deformations are likely to exceed the strain limits per Section 4.4, kinematic analysis of the deep in-ground hinge shall be performed in accordance with Section 4.12.

#### 4.5.2 Earthquake Load Combinations

The following load combinations shall be used to determine seismic moment, shear and axial demands for wharf deck and pile cap, and seismic shear and axial force demands for piles:

$$U = (1 \pm k) D + \gamma L + E + EQ \quad (4.1)$$

$$U = (1 \pm k) D + E + EQ \quad (4.2)$$

where:

- $U$  = Total design load in moments, shear forces or axial forces
- $k$  =  $(0.5 \times \text{PGA} / \text{gravity})$  where PGA is the peak ground acceleration in feet/second<sup>2</sup> and gravity is 32.2 feet/second<sup>2</sup>
- $D$  = Dead Loads
- $L$  = Live Loads
- $E$  = Earth Pressure Loads
- $EQ$  = Earthquake Loads
- $\gamma$  = *For container wharf structures use 0.1, all other structures need to be considered differently*

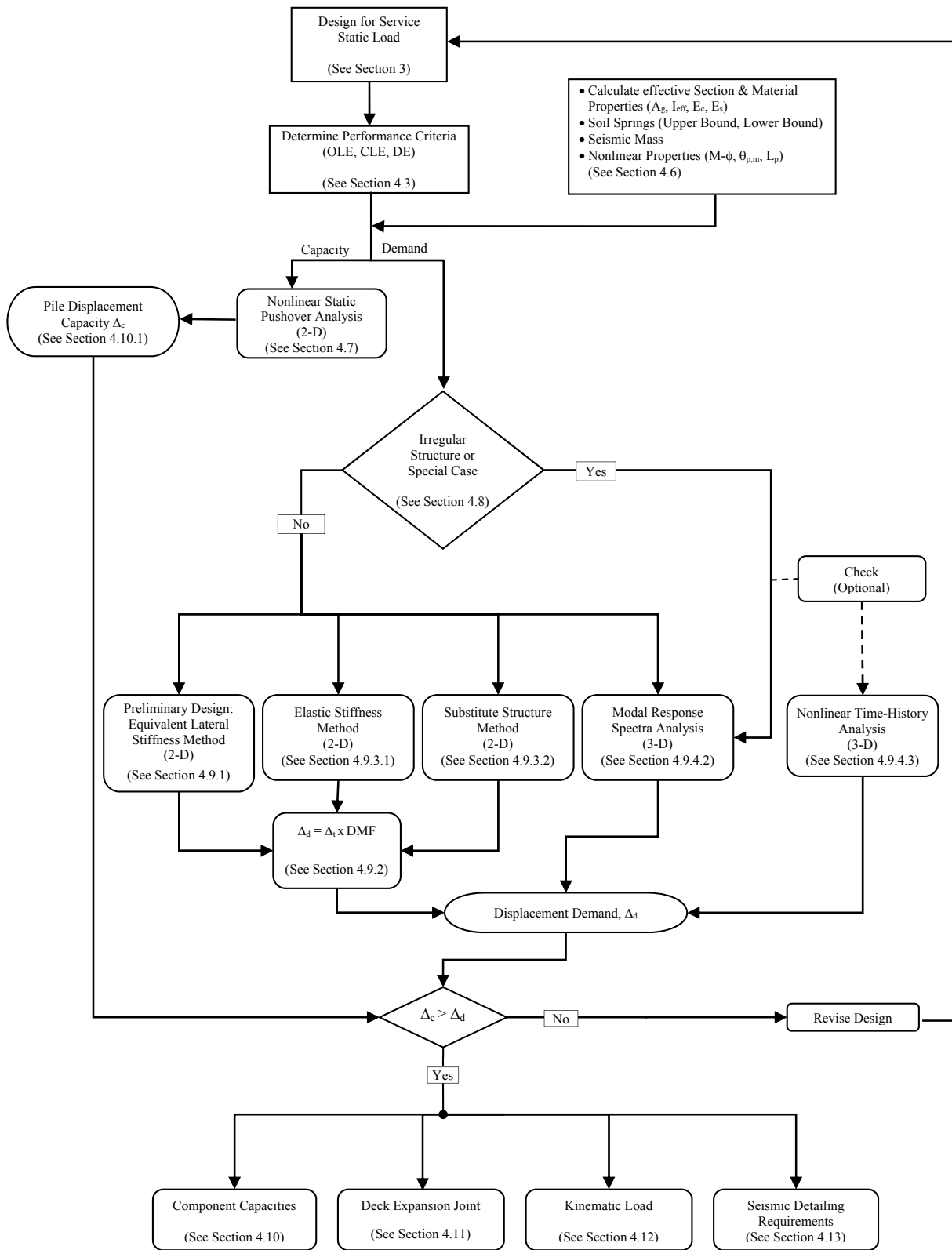
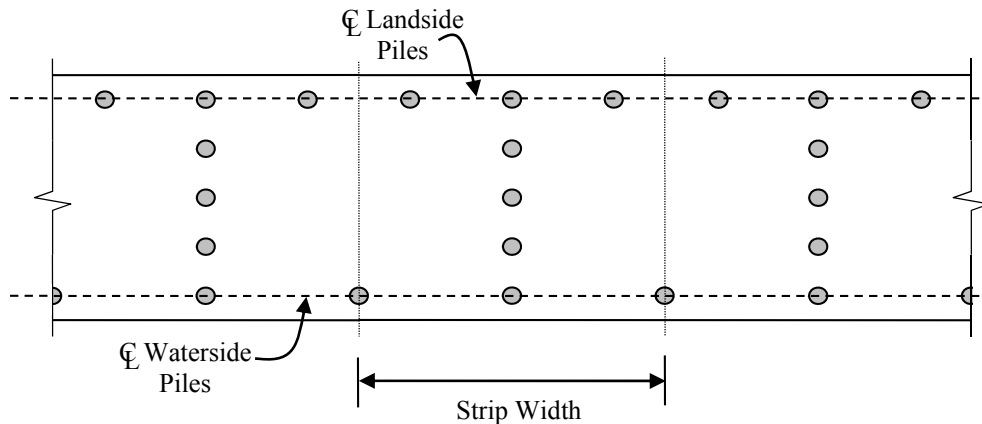


Figure 4-1:Flow Diagram for Seismic Analysis

## 4.6 Structural Model

### 4.6.1 Modeling

Due to the general uniformity and symmetry along the longitudinal axis of regular marginal wharves, the wharf may be modeled as a strip for pure transverse analyses. The number of piles considered in the strip should be modeled to reflect the pile spacing in each row, as shown in Figure 4-2.



**Figure 4-2: Pile Spacing for Modeling of Typical Wharf Strip**

The structural model shall incorporate components for the lateral resisting system. All members shall be modeled at the center of gravity of the section. A minimum of two members for the pile unsupported length from the soffit to the first soil spring shall be used in the modeling. The ratio of the stiffness between the rigid links and the surrounding elements should be no more than 100 to stabilize the stiffness matrix. Soil springs shall be used to model soil-structure interaction, and shall be spaced at each layer to accurately capture the soil behavior. Two distinct models shall be created to model upper bound and lower bound soil springs; see Section 2.7.3.

The interface between the deck and the pile should not be considered entirely rigid. The effective top of the pile should be located a distance  $l_{sp}$  into the deck to account for strain penetration. This additional length applies only to displacements. The strain penetration of the pile section into the deck shall be modeled as a member with properties equivalent to the top of the pile. The member between the strain penetration and the center of gravity (c.g.) of the deck shall be a rigid link. The length of the strain penetration member shall be equal to:

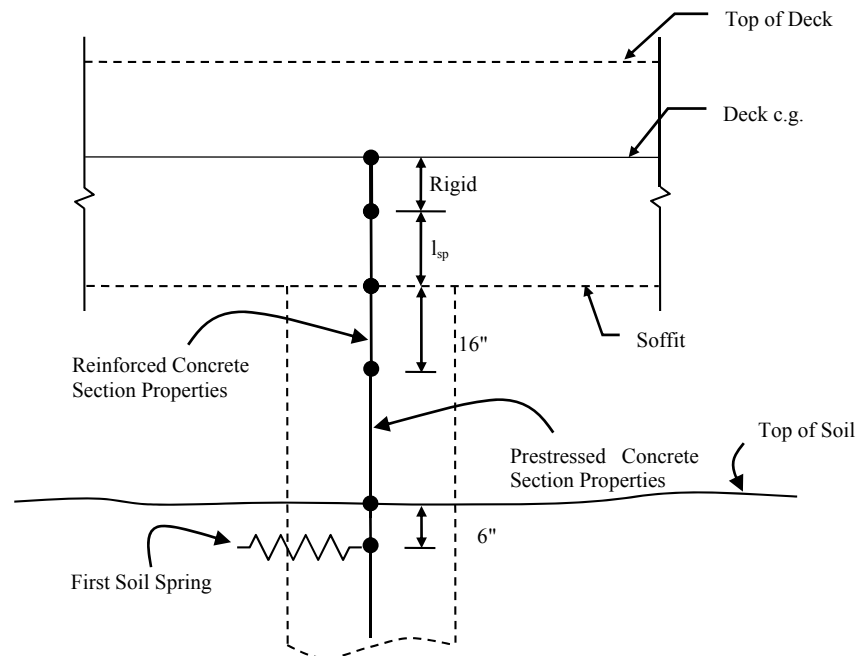
$$l_{sp} = 0.1 f_{ye} d_{bl} \quad (4.3)$$

where,

$l_{sp}$  = Strain penetration length (in.)

$d_{bl}$  = The diameter of the dowel reinforcement (in.)

$f_{ye}$  = Expected yield strength of the longitudinal reinforcement, ksi; see Section 4.6.2.



**Figure 4-3: Pile-Deck Structural Model Schematic Showing Strain Penetration Length**

For prestressed piles, the reinforced concrete effective section property per Section 4.6.3 shall be used for the first 16 inches of the pile below the soffit to account for development of the prestressing strands. Below the first 16 inches of the pile, the prestressed concrete effective section properties shall be used, see Section 4.6.3. Maximum pile moment shall be considered to develop at the soffit. Maximum in-ground moment will normally occur at between 50 and 100 inches below the dike surface for 24-inch diameter piles. This value depends on the soil stiffness and strength, and the clear height between the deck soffit and top of dike. To insure adequate precision in modeling the pile moment profile, it is important that the soil springs be closely spaced in the upper region of the pile. For typical 24-inch diameter piles it is recommended that the first soil spring be located 6 inches below the dike surface, then springs be spaced at 12 inches to a depth of about 126 inches. Below this, the spacing can be increased to 24 inches to a depth of about 246 inches, then to 48 inches to a depth of about 390 inches. It will not normally be necessary to model the soil below this depth and the pile can generally be considered fixed against displacement and rotation at a depth of about 500 inches.

#### 4.6.2 Material Properties

The capacity of concrete components to resist all seismic demands, except shear, shall be based on the most probable (expected) material properties to provide a more realistic estimate for design strength.

The expected compressive strength of concrete,  $f'_{ce}$ , recognizes the typically conservative nature of concrete batch design, and the expected strength gain with age. The expected yield strength for reinforcing steel and structural steel,  $f_{ye}$ , is a “characteristic” strength and represents a low estimate of probable strength of the material, which is higher than the specified minimum strength. Expected material properties shall be used to assess capacity and demands for earthquake loads. Seismic shear capacity shall not be based on the expected material strength, see Section 4.10.3. For determining the demand on capacity-protected members, an additional overstrength factor shall be used on the capacity of pile plastic hinges as described in Section 4.10. Except for shear, the expected seismic material strengths shall be:

$$f'_{ce} = 1.3f'_c \quad (4.4)$$

$$f_{ye} = 1.1f_y \quad (4.5)$$

$$f_{yhe} = 1.0f_{yh} \quad (4.6)$$

$$f_{pye} = 1.0f_{py} \quad (4.7)$$

$$f_{pue} = 1.05f_{pu} \quad (4.8)$$

$$E_c = 57,000\sqrt{f'_{ce}} \quad (f'_{ce} \text{ is in psi}) \quad (4.9)$$

where,

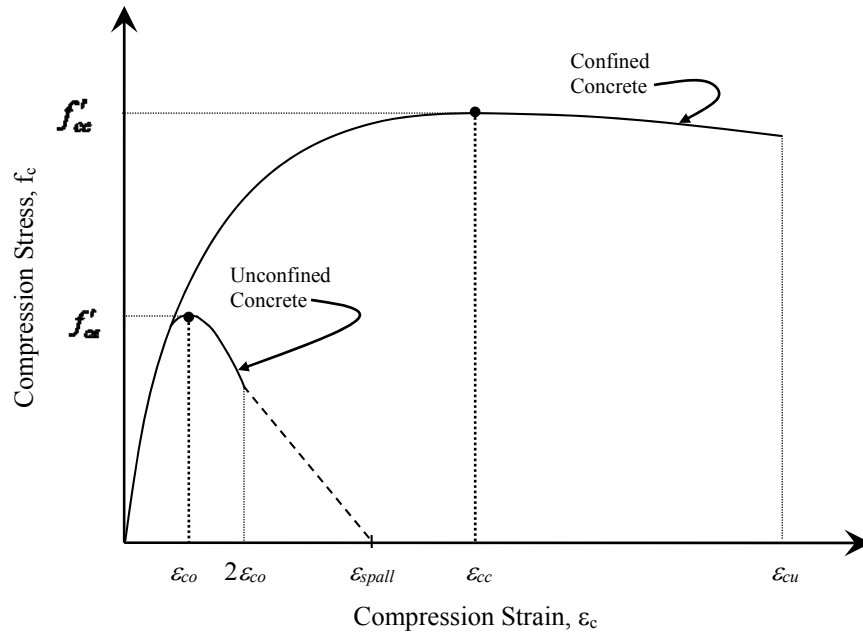
- $f'_c$  = 28-day unconfined compressive strength
- $f_y$  = Yield strength of longitudinal reinforcing steel or structural steel
- $f_{yh}$  = Yield strength of confining steel
- $f_{py}$  = Yield strength of prestressing steel
- $f_{pu}$  = Maximum tensile strength of prestressing steel
- $f'_{ce}, f_{ye}, f_{yhe}, f_{pye}, f_{pue}$  = Expected material properties
- $E_c$  = Modulus of elasticity of concrete

The following stress-strain curves may be used to determine the deformation capacity of the structural members. Alternative stress-strain models are acceptable if adequately documented and supported by test results.

### **Concrete**

The stress-strain curves for both confined and unconfined concrete are shown in Figure 4-4. This model is based on Mander’s model for confined and unconfined concrete (Ref. 28).





**Figure 4-4: Stress-Strain Relationship for Confined and Unconfined Concrete**

*Unconfined Concrete:*

Unconfined concrete either has no confinement steel or the spacing of the confinement steel exceeds 12 inches. For these cases:

$\epsilon_{spall}$  = Ultimate unconfined compression (spalling) strain, taken as 0.005

$\epsilon_{co}$  = Unconfined compression strain at the maximum compressive stress, taken as 0.002

*Confined Concrete:*

For confined concrete, the following are defined:

$$\epsilon_{cu} = 0.005 + 1.1\rho_s \leq 0.025 \quad (4.10)$$

$$\epsilon_{cc} = \epsilon_{co} \left[ 1 + 5 \left( \frac{f'_{cc}}{f'_{ce}} - 1 \right) \right] \quad (4.11)$$

$$f'_{cc} = f'_{ce} \left( -1.254 + 2.254 \sqrt{1 + \frac{7.94 f'_l}{f'_{ce}}} - 2 \frac{f'_l}{f'_{ce}} \right) \quad (4.12)$$

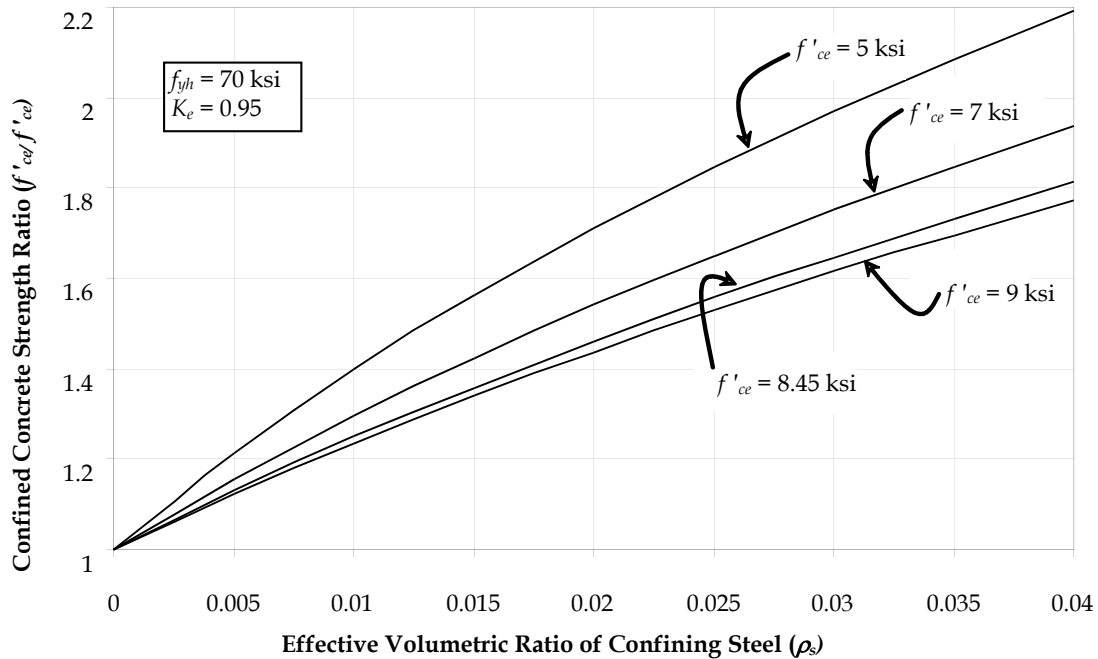
where for circular core sections,

$$f'_l = \frac{1}{2} K_e \rho_s f_{yh} \quad (4.13)$$

$$\rho_s = \frac{4A_{sp}}{D's} \quad (4.14)$$

- $\epsilon_{cu}$  = Ultimate concrete compression strain  
 $\epsilon_{cc}$  = Confined concrete compressive strain at maximum compressive stress  
 $f'_{cc}$  = Confined concrete compressive strength  
 $f'_{ce}$  = Expected compressive concrete strength of concrete  
 $f_l$  = Effective lateral confining stress  
 $K_e$  = Confinement effectiveness coefficient, equal to 0.95 for circular core  
 $\rho_s$  = Effective volumetric ratio of confining steel  
 $f_{yh}$  = Yield stress of confining steel  
 $A_{sp}$  = Cross-section area of confining steel  
 $D'$  = Diameter of confined core, measured to the centerline of the confining steel  
 $s$  = Center-to-center spacing of confining steel along pile axis

Figure 4-5 plots the ratio of confined concrete compressive strength to expected concrete compressive strength ( $f'_{cc} / f'_{ce}$ ) with varying volumetric transverse steel ratios ( $\rho_s$ ). This graph may be used to determine the confined concrete strength,  $f'_{cc}$  for circular core sections.

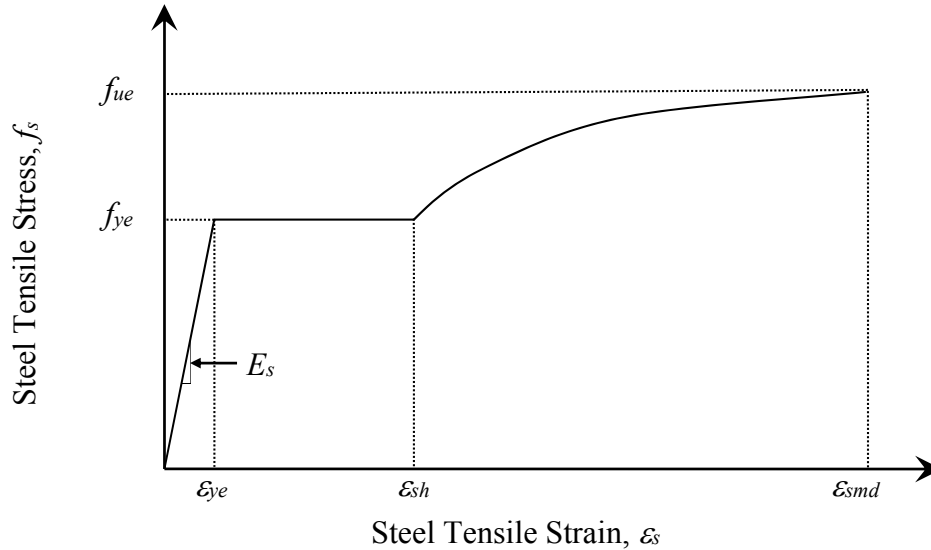


**Figure 4-5: Concrete Strength Ratio versus Confining Steel Ratio**

For pile sections with different transverse reinforcement strengths or shapes (i.e. rectangular stirrups), the confined concrete strength  $f'_{cc}$  may be approximated by  $1.5 f'_{ce}$  or calculated according to Mander's model (Ref. 28).

**Steel**

The stress-strain curve for reinforcing steel is shown in Figure 4-6. The strain-hardening equation for this curve is available in References 18, 39 and 40. To control the tensile properties, A706 reinforcing steel is preferred for pile dowels. The stress-strain curve for structural steel is similar to this curve (Ref. 18).



**Figure 4-6: Stress-Strain Relationship for Reinforcing Steel**

Where for ASTM A706 Grade 60 steel (Ref. 19):

$$\text{Steel tensile strain at the onset of strain hardening} \quad \varepsilon_{sh} = \begin{cases} 0.0150 & \#8 \text{ bars} \\ 0.0125 & \#9 \text{ bars} \\ 0.0115 & \#10 \ \& \ \#11 \text{ bars} \\ 0.0075 & \#14 \text{ bars} \\ 0.0050 & \#18 \text{ bars} \end{cases}$$

$$\text{Strain at maximum stress of dowel reinforcements} \quad \varepsilon_{smd} = \begin{cases} 0.120 & \#10 \text{ bars and smaller} \\ 0.090 & \#11 \text{ bars and larger} \end{cases}$$

$$f_{ue} = 1.4 f_{ye}$$

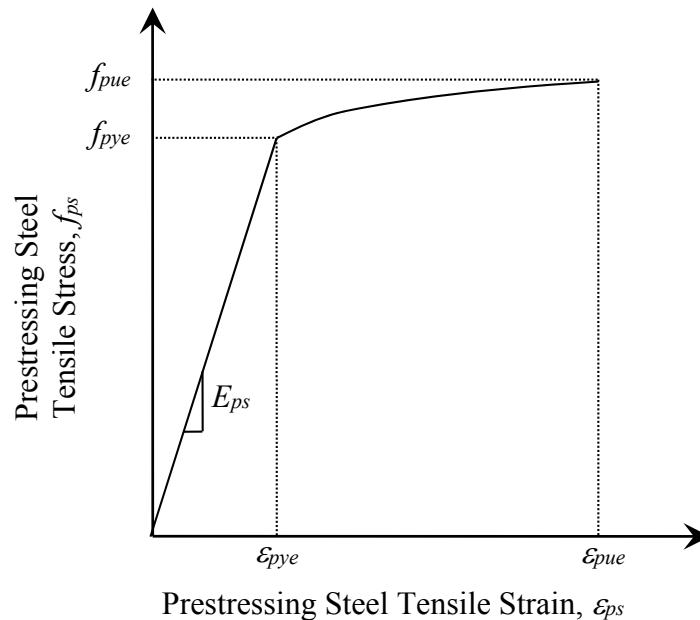
$f_{ue}$  = Expected maximum tensile strength of steel, equal to  $1.4f_{ye}$

$E_s$  = 29,000 ksi

$\varepsilon_{ye}$  = Expected yield tensile strain of steel

### ***Prestressing Steel***

The stress-strain curve for prestressing steel is shown in Figure 4-7.



**Figure 4-7: Stress-Strain Relationship for Prestressing Steel**

$E_{ps}$  = Modulus of elasticity for prestressing steel, taken as 28,500 ksi

$\epsilon_{pye}$  = Expected yield strain for prestressing steel

$\epsilon_{pue}$  = Expected ultimate strain for prestressing steel, taken as 0.060

$f_{pye}$  = Expected yield strength of prestressing steel, equal to  $0.85f_{pue}$

$f_{pue}$  = Expected maximum tensile strength of prestressing steel

#### **4.6.3 Effective Section Properties**

Elastic analysis assumes a linear relationship between stiffness and strength of structural members. Concrete members display nonlinear response before reaching their idealized yield limit state. Section properties shall reflect the cracking that occurs before the yield limit state is reached. The effective section properties shall be used to determine realistic values for the structure's elastic period and seismic demands.

The effective moment of inertia,  $I_{eff}$  shall be used for the structural model.  $I_{eff}$  can be determined based on the value of the secant slope of the moment-curvature curve between the origin and the point of first yield:

$$E_c I_{eff} = \frac{M_y}{\phi_{yi}} \quad (4.15)$$

where:

$E_c$  = Modulus of elasticity of concrete

$M_y$  = Moment at first yield; see Section 4.6.6.1 for definition

$\phi_{yi}$  = Curvature at first yield; see Section 4.6.6.1 for definition

For reinforced concrete piles and the pile/deck connection, the effective moment of inertia ranges between  $0.3-0.7I_{gross}$ , where  $I_{gross}$  is the gross moment of inertia. For prestressed concrete piles, the effective moment of inertia ranges between  $0.6-0.75I_{gross}$ . The prestressing steel at the top of the prestressed pile near the pile/deck connection is not permitted to extend into the deck, therefore, it will not be developed at the deck soffit. Thus,  $I_{eff}$  of the dowel connection should be used. For the deck section, the effective moment of inertia is about  $0.5I_{gross}$ . Sections that are expected to remain uncracked for seismic response should be represented by the gross section properties.

The polar moment of inertia of individual piles is typically an insignificant parameter for the global response of wharf structure. The effective polar moment of inertia,  $J_{eff}$ , could be assumed to be equal to  $0.2 J_{gross}$ , where  $J_{gross}$  is the gross polar moment of inertia.

#### 4.6.4 Seismic Mass

The seismic mass for the seismic analysis shall include the mass of the wharf deck, permanently attached equipment, and 10% of the design uniform live loads or 100 psf for container wharf structure. The live load percentage for other structures need to be considered differently. In addition, 1/3 of the pile mass between the deck soffit and  $5D_p$  below the dike surface shall be considered additional mass lumped at the deck. Hydrodynamic mass associated with piles, where significant, should be considered. For 24-inch diameter piles or less, hydrodynamic mass may be ignored.

The seismic mass shall also include the larger of: 1) part of the crane mass positioned within 10 feet above the wharf deck or 2) 5% of the total crane mass.

#### 4.6.5 Lateral Soil Springs

Upper and lower bound (UB and LB) lateral soil springs (p-y) shall be used to create two distinct models to determine the seismic demands and the corresponding capacities. This recognizes the inherent uncertainties associated with soil-structure interaction. The higher of the two demand-to-capacity ratios will provide a conservative estimate of compliance for displacement response. See Section 2 for further discussion on soil spring values.

#### 4.6.6 Pile Nonlinear Properties

##### 4.6.6.1 Moment-curvature Analysis

The plastic moment capacity of the piles shall be calculated by Moment-curvature ( $M-\phi$ ) analysis using expected material properties. The analysis must be modeling the core and cover concrete separately, and must model the enhanced concrete strength of the core concrete. The pile in-ground hinge section shall be analyzed as a fully confined section due to the soil confinement. Reinforcement and prestressing steel nonlinearity must also be modeled using material properties as specified in Section 4.6.2. Moment-curvature analysis provides a curve showing the moments associated with a range of curvatures for a cross-section based on the principles of strain compatibility and equilibrium of forces. The analysis shall include the pile axial load and the effective prestressing force. For most

cases, the largest axial load need to be considered to obtain the highest moment capacity for the design of the capacity-protected members. While, the smallest axial load need to be considered to obtain the pile displacement capacity for the piles design.

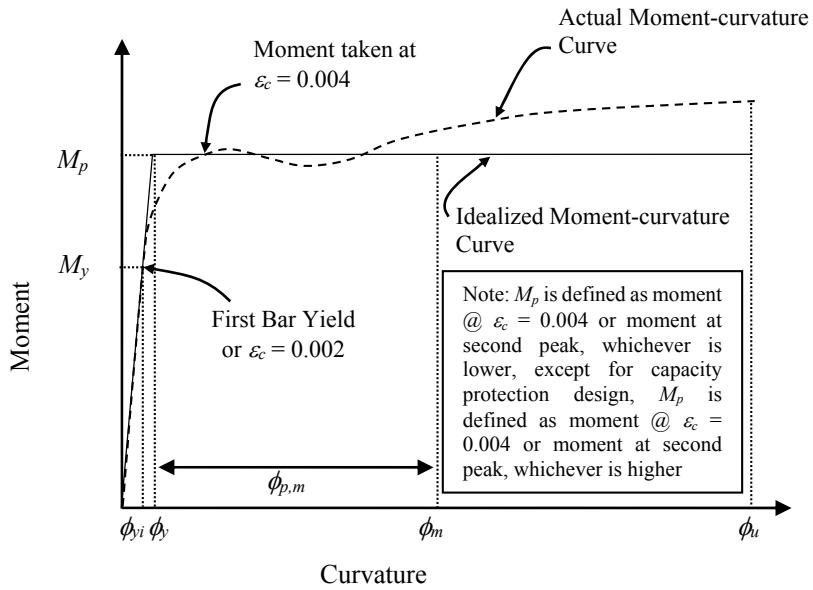
The  $M$ - $\phi$  curve may be idealized by an elastic-perfectly plastic curve as follows:

***Moment-curvature Curve Idealization - Method A:***

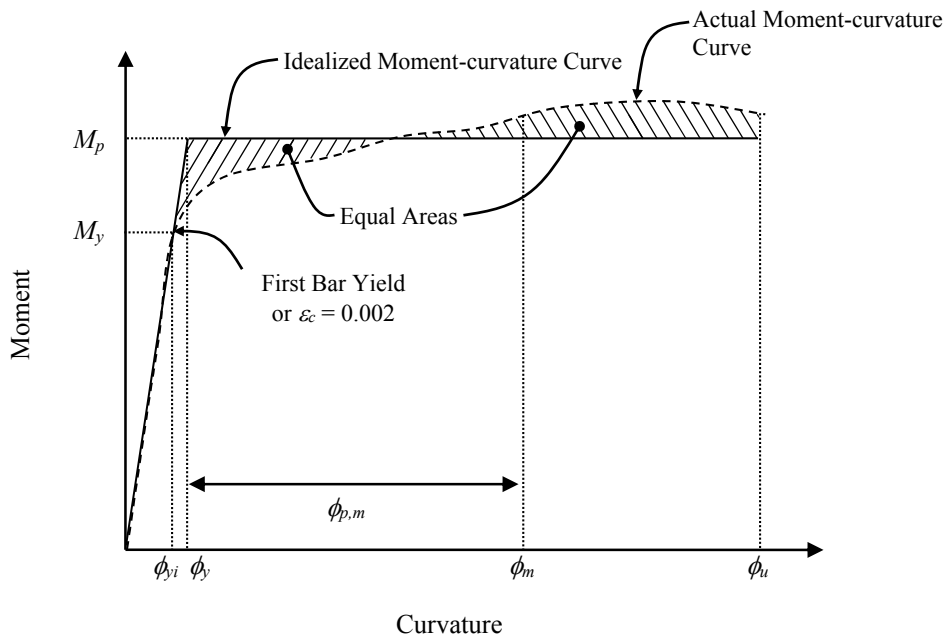
The idealized plastic moment capacity,  $M_p$ , for typical concrete pile at the POLB corresponds to the moment associated with an extreme concrete strain of 0.004, as shown in Figure 4-8. Typically, the  $M$ - $\phi$  curve peaks around an extreme concrete strain of 0.004, has a reduction in moment, and peaks again, depending on confinement, spalling of concrete cover and strain-hardening of reinforcement. If the second peak on the curve is less than the  $M_p$  value, the moment at the lower second peak should be taken as  $M_p$ . However, for capacity protection analysis, the moment at the higher peak shall be used for  $M_p$ . The elastic portion of the idealized  $M$ - $\phi$  curve passes through the curvature at first reinforcing bar yield of the section or when concrete strain equals 0.002, whichever occurs first ( $\phi_{yi}$ ,  $M_y$ ), and extends to meet  $M_p$ . The idealized yield curvature,  $\phi_y$ , is determined as the curvature corresponding to the plastic moment value.

***Moment-curvature Curve Idealization - Method B:***

For other  $M$ - $\phi$  curves of concrete piles different than the typical POLB piles, the moment-curvature relationship may not exhibit the dramatic reduction in section moment capacity near the cover spalling strain. This may occur for larger diameter concrete piles, concrete-filled steel pipe piles with concrete plug connections, and hollow steel piles. For these types, an equal area approach to determine the idealized  $M$ - $\phi$  curve is more appropriate. For this approach, the elastic portion of the idealized  $M$ - $\phi$  curve should pass through the point marking the first reinforcing bar yield or when  $\varepsilon_c = 0.002$ , whichever comes first ( $\phi_{yi}$ ,  $M_y$ ). The idealized plastic moment capacity is obtained by balancing the areas between the actual and the idealized  $M$ - $\phi$  curves beyond the first yield point (Figure 4-9).



**Figure 4-8: Moment-curvature Curve and Idealization for Method A**



**Figure 4-9: Moment-curvature Curve and Idealization for Method B**

where:

- $M_y$  = Moment at first yield (corresponding to  $\phi_{yi}$ )
- $\phi_{yi}$  = Curvature at first yield (first rebar yield or  $\epsilon_c = 0.002$ )
- $\phi_y$  = Idealized yield curvature
- $\phi_m$  = Total curvature at the OLE, CLE or DE strain limits
- $\phi_{p,m}$  = Plastic curvature at the OLE, CLE or DE strain limits
- $\phi_u$  = Ultimate curvature of the section

#### 4.6.6.2 Plastic Hinge Length

The plastic hinge length is needed to convert the moment-curvature relationship into a force-displacement or moment-rotation relationship for the nonlinear static pushover analysis. Table 4-2 cross references the equations that should be used to determine pile plastic hinge lengths for different pile sections.

**Table 4-2: Plastic Hinge Length Equations**

Section	Top	In-ground
Concrete Pile	4.16	4.18
Hollow Concrete Pile	4.16	4.18
Steel Pipe Pile (hollow with concrete plug connection)	4.17	4.18
Steel Pipe Pile (infilled with concrete)	4.17	4.18

For concrete pile dowel connections, the pile's plastic hinge length,  $L_p$  (above ground), when the plastic hinge forms against a supporting member, at deck soffits may be taken as:

$$L_p = 0.08L_c + 0.1f_{ye}d_{bl} \geq 0.2f_{ye}d_{bl} \quad (4.16)$$

where,

- $L_c$  = The distance from the center of the pile top plastic hinge to the point of contraflexure in the pile (in.)
- $d_{bl}$  = Diameter of dowel reinforcement (in.)
- $f_{ye}$  = Expected yield strength dowel reinforcement (ksi)

For steel pipe sections connected to the deck by a concrete plug with dowels, the plastic hinge length for the top of pile hinge may be taken as:

$$L_p = 0.3f_{ye}d_{bl} + d_{gap} \quad (4.17)$$

where,

- $d_{gap}$  = The distance between the top of the pile steel shell and the deck soffit

The plastic hinge length for in-ground hinges may be calculated as defined in equation 4.18 for piles with 18 to 30 inches in diameter. For piles with larger diameter, reduced plastic hinge length for in-ground hinges may be used.

$$L_p = 2D_p \quad (4.18)$$

where,

- $D_p$  = Pile diameter



### 4.6.6.3 Plastic Rotation

The pile plastic rotation can be determined as follows:

$$\theta_{p,m} = L_p \phi_{p,m} = L_p (\phi_m - \phi_y) \quad (4.19)$$

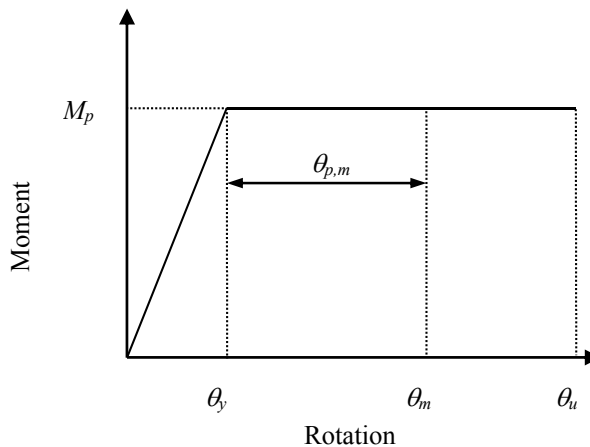
where,

$\theta_{p,m}$  = Plastic rotation at the OLE, CLE or DE strain limits

$\phi_{p,m}$  = Plastic curvature at the OLE, CLE or DE strain limits

The idealized moment-rotation ( $M-\theta$ ) curve is shown in Figure 4-10.

**Figure 4-10: Idealized Moment-rotation Curve**



$\theta_u$  = Ultimate rotation

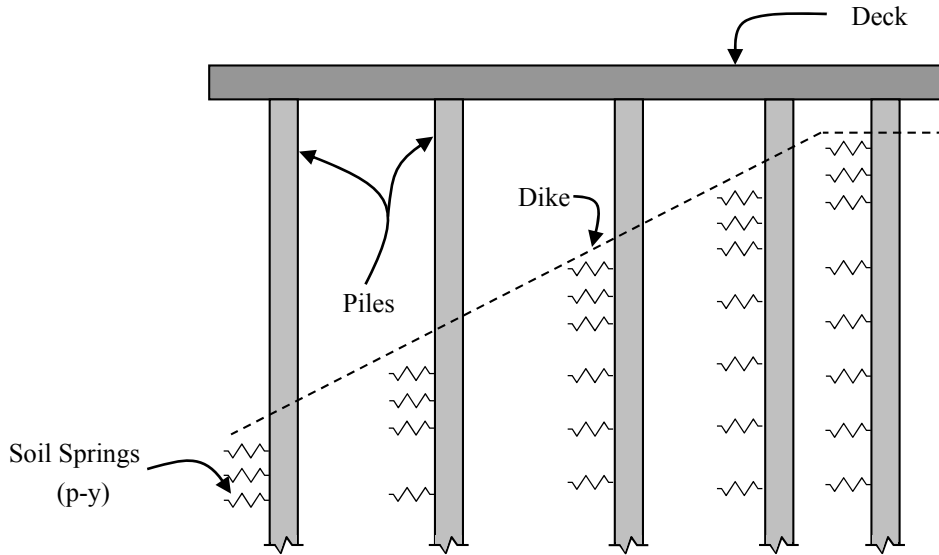
$\theta_y$  = Idealized yield rotation ( $\theta_y = \phi_y L_p$ )

$\theta_m$  = Total rotation at the OLE, CLE or DE strain limits

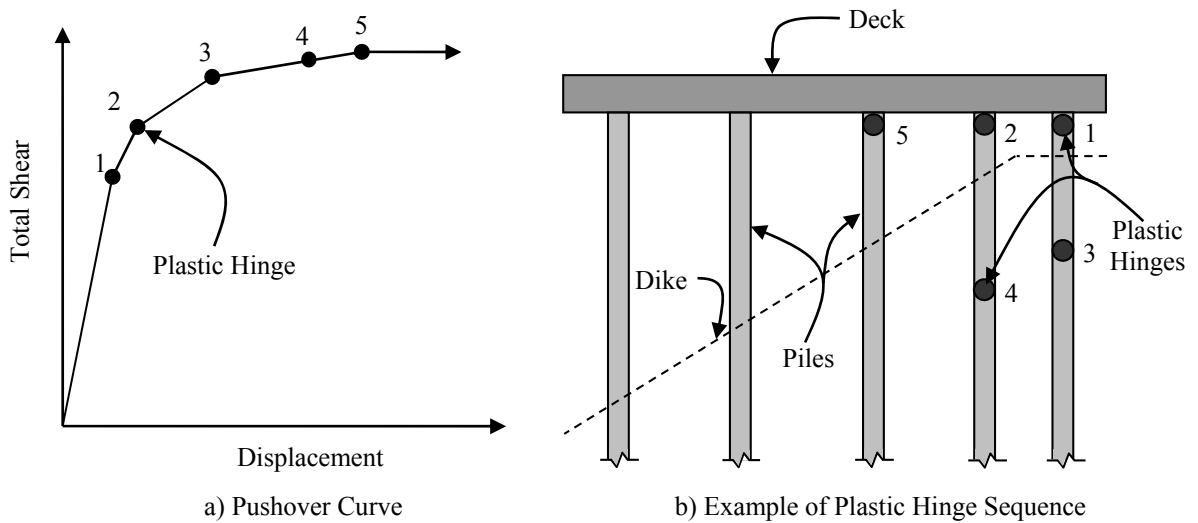
## 4.7 Nonlinear Static Pushover Analysis

Two-dimensional (2-D) nonlinear static pushover analyses (pushover analysis) shall be performed for all wharf structures. The pushover curve shall have sufficient points to encompass the system's initial elastic response and predicted seismic demand. The pushover curve shall also encompass the OLE, CLE and DE displacement capacities. The yield displacements and OLE, CLE or DE displacement capacities may be obtained directly from the pushover analyses when plastic rotation and hinge proper definitions are included in the model. This analysis method incorporates soil deformation into the total displacement capacity of the pile. Pushover model shall use effective section properties and shall incorporate soil stiffness with nonlinear upper and lower bound  $p$ - $y$  springs, see Figure 4-11. The results from the pushover analysis will provide the displacement capacities for OLE, CLE or DE, as well as the parameters needed for the Elastic Stiffness and Substitute Structure methods, see Figure 4-12. The pushover curve shall not experience a significant drop (greater than 20%) in total shear at the target-strain limits for OLE, CLE or DE.

Three dimensional (3-D) nonlinear static pushover analysis requires the proper modeling of the structure hinges' definitions and soil springs to reflect the varying conditions of the soil in all directions. This makes 3-D pushover analysis complex. Prior written approval by the Port is required before conducting 3-D pushover analysis.



**Figure 4-11: Pushover Model with p-y Springs**

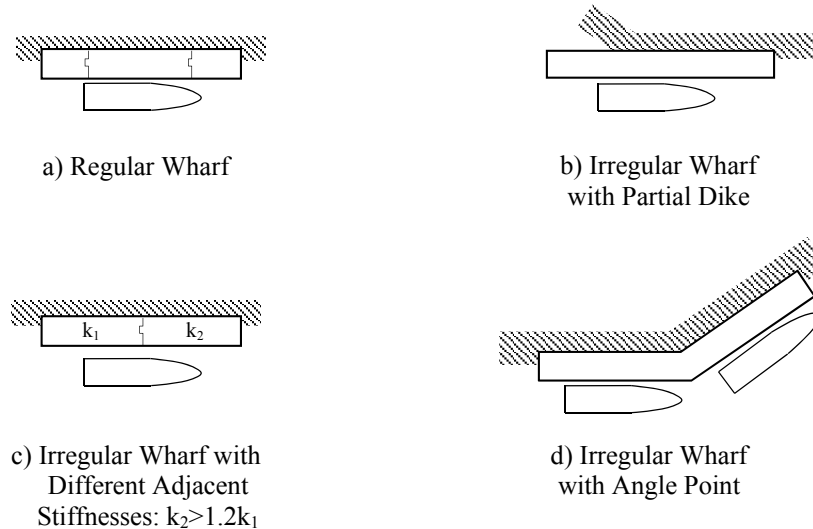


**Figure 4-12: Example of Pushover Curve and Plastic Hinge Sequence**

## 4.8 Irregular Structures and Special Cases

### 4.8.1 Irregular Structures

Horizontal irregularity occurs when wharves have unsymmetrical pile and/or dike layouts, and when wharves have an angle point; see Figure 4-13. Figure 4-13 a) shows a regular marginal wharf structure. The wharf in Figure 4-13 b) shows an irregular marginal wharf constructed with a partial dike. Figure 4-13 c) shows two adjacent wharves with large differences in stiffness, which may occur between two adjacent wharves with different pile or soil stiffnesses. Figure 4-13 d) shows an irregular wharf with an angle point.



**Figure 4-13: Horizontal Marginal Wharf Configurations**

Vertical irregularity occurs when soil profiles below the wharf have sharp variations in lateral soil deformation over short vertical distances under seismic response.

### 4.8.2 Special Cases

#### 4.8.2.1 Crane-wharf Interaction Analysis

A special case for crane-wharf interaction analysis shall be considered if the crane mass impacts the wharf behavior as follows:

$$T_{crane} < 2T_w \quad (4.20)$$

where:

- $T_{crane}$  = Translational elastic period of the crane mode with the maximum participating mass
- $T_w$  = Effective elastic period of the wharf structure based on cracked section properties

For crane-wharf interaction analysis, the displacement demand,  $\Delta_d$  of the wharf shall be determined using Nonlinear Time-history Analysis per Section 4.9.4.3. This analysis requires prior written approval by the Port.

### 4.8.2.2 Linked-wharf Interaction Analysis

A special case for linked-wharf interaction analysis shall be considered for wharf structures if one of the following requirements is met:

1.  $L_L < 400$  feet or  $L_L > 800$  feet
2.  $B < 100$  feet or  $B > 120$  feet
3. More than 20% variation in the initial elastic stiffness of the wharf structure along the wharf length

where:

$L_L$  = length of the shortest exterior wharf unit

$B$  = width of a wharf unit

For linked-wharf interaction analysis, the displacement demand,  $\Delta_d$  of the wharf shall be determined using Nonlinear Time-history Analysis per Section 4.9.4.3. This analysis requires prior written approval by the Port.

## 4.9 Demand Analysis

### 4.9.1 Equivalent Lateral Stiffness Method

The Equivalent Lateral Stiffness method uses a wharf model with piles fixed at the bottom without p-y lateral springs. In this method, the equivalent depth to point of fixity,  $L_s$ , is determined as the depth that produces the same top of pile displacement as that given by an individual lateral analysis for a given lateral load applied at top of pile. The equivalent pile length has all soil and associated lateral stiffness removed above its supported base, as shown in Figure 4-14. For different assumed displacements, different pile head conditions, free-head or fixed-head, and different subsurface conditions,  $L_s$  is expected to vary from approximately two times pile diameter to approximately twelve times pile diameter for typical container wharf piles.

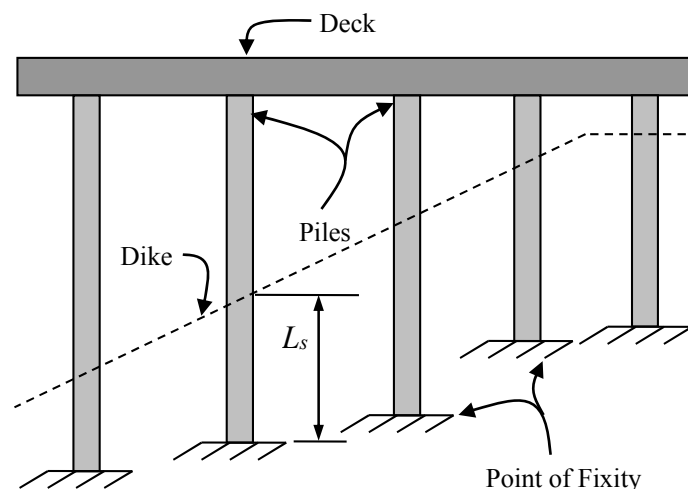


Figure 4-14: Depth to Point of Fixity

This method may not accurately predict pile top and in-ground hinge forces; therefore this method should only be used for preliminary design.

#### 4.9.2 Dynamic Magnification Factor (DMF)

Most of the seismic lateral resistance of marginal wharves is provided by landward piles due to long embedment in soil. The seaward piles are mainly used for gravity loads and might provide about 10% of the overall seismic lateral resistance. This configuration creates eccentricity between the center of mass and the effective center of rigidity for the wharf, which will induce torsional response in the structure under longitudinal excitation. Displacement demand of the critical piles at the end of a segment can be determined by multiplying the displacement demand calculated under pure transverse excitation by Dynamic Magnification Factor, which accounts for torsional response and simultaneous longitudinal and transverse excitations, and interaction across expansion joints. An analytical study utilizing nonlinear time-history analysis was performed to calculate the DMF (Ref 13) using OLE and CLE ground motions with lower and upper bound soil springs conditions. The study was performed on 110-ft wide wharf with single segment, two linked segments and three linked segments. Segment lengths varied between 400 feet, 600 feet, and 800 feet. The study results show that DMF for CLE is always lower than DMF for OLE. Therefore, DMF for DE may conservatively be assumed to be equal to DMF for CLE.

For the single-mode transverse analysis, the displacement demand shall be multiplied by DMF values shown in equations 4.21 – 4.27 for straight wharf units only if all the following conditions are met, otherwise refer to Section 4.8.2.2 for the requirements of special case analysis:

1. 400 feet <  $L_L$  < 800 feet
2. 100 feet < B < 120 feet
3. Less than 20% variation in the initial elastic stiffness of the wharf structure along the wharf length
4. Crane-wharf interaction analysis is not required per Section 4.8.2.1

##### Single Wharf Unit:

$$\text{DMF} = 1.80 - 0.05 L_L / B \geq 1.10 \text{ for OLE} \quad (4.21)$$

$$\text{DMF} = 1.65 - 0.05 L_L / B \geq 1.10 \text{ for CLE/DE, UB soil springs} \quad (4.22)$$

$$\text{DMF} = 1.50 - 0.05 L_L / B \geq 1.10 \text{ for CLE/DE, LB soil springs} \quad (4.23)$$

##### Linked Wharf Exterior Unit:

$$\text{DMF} = 1.55 - 0.04 L_L / B \geq 1.10 \text{ for OLE} \quad (4.24)$$

$$\text{DMF} = 1.35 - 0.02 L_L / B \geq 1.10 \text{ CLE/DE, UB soil springs} \quad (4.25)$$

$$\text{DMF} = 1.16 - 0.02 L_L / B \geq 1.10 \text{ for CLE/DE, LB soil springs} \quad (4.26)$$

##### Linked Wharf Interior Unit:

$$\text{DMF} = 1.10 \quad (4.27)$$

where:

$L_L$  = length of the shortest exterior wharf unit

B = width of a wharf unit

LB = lower bound

UB = upper bound

Wharf Exterior Unit = a wharf structure with an expansion joint at one end

Wharf Interior Unit = a wharf structure with expansion joints at both ends

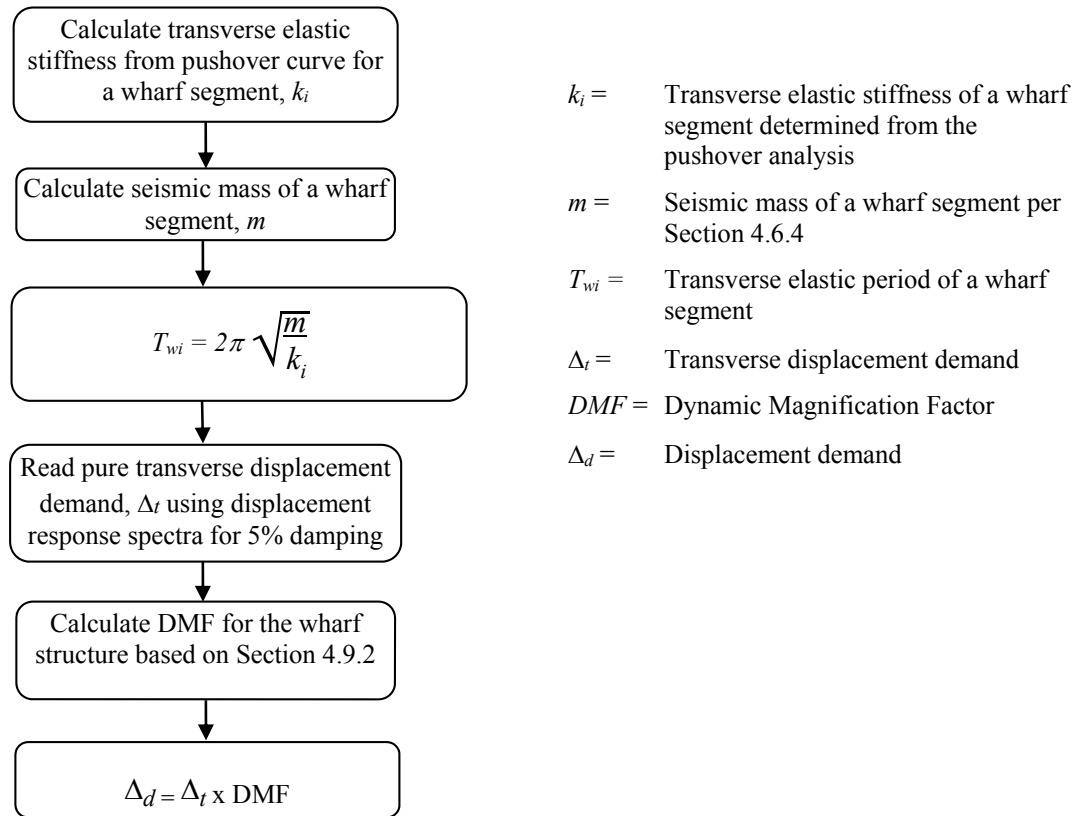
### 4.9.3 Transverse Single Mode Analysis

Reasonable estimates of displacement demand could be obtained from the Elastic Stiffness Method using cracked-section elastic stiffness of piles. However, improved representation of displacement demand could be obtained using the Substitute Structure Method. If the Elastic Stiffness Method described in Section 4.9.3.1 is used for the wharf design, the displacement demand-to-capacity ratio (DCR) shall be less than or equal to 0.85. If the DCR is larger than 0.85, the Substitute Structure Method described in Section 4.9.3.2 shall be used for verification.

#### 4.9.3.1 Elastic Stiffness Method

The Elastic Stiffness Method is a single-mode pure transverse analysis of a typical wharf strip, refer to Figure 4-2. This method uses the transverse elastic stiffness,  $k_i$ , of wharf segment determined from the pushover curve to calculate the pure transverse displacement demand. For this method, the damping ratio shall be 5%.

The pure transverse displacement demand shall then be modified with the DMF to include the influence of simultaneous longitudinal response, interaction across expansion joints, and torsional effects, to calculate the displacement demand  $\Delta_d$ . The flow chart shown in Figure 4-15 demonstrates the analysis steps for the Elastic Stiffness Method.



**Figure 4-15: Flow Diagram for the Elastic Stiffness Method**

#### 4.9.3.2 Substitute Structure Method

The Substitute Structure Method is a single-mode pure transverse analysis, modified for simultaneous transverse and longitudinal response interaction across expansion joints and torsional effects by the DMF to calculate the displacement demand. Figure 4-16 demonstrates the analysis steps to calculate the displacement demand using the Substitute Structure Method.

This method is an iterative process that uses the effective secant stiffness,  $k_e$ , of a wharf segment at the demand displacement determined from the pushover curve, and an equivalent elastic damping representing the combined effects of elastic and hysteretic damping to determine the pure transverse displacement demand for each iteration, see Figure 4-17.

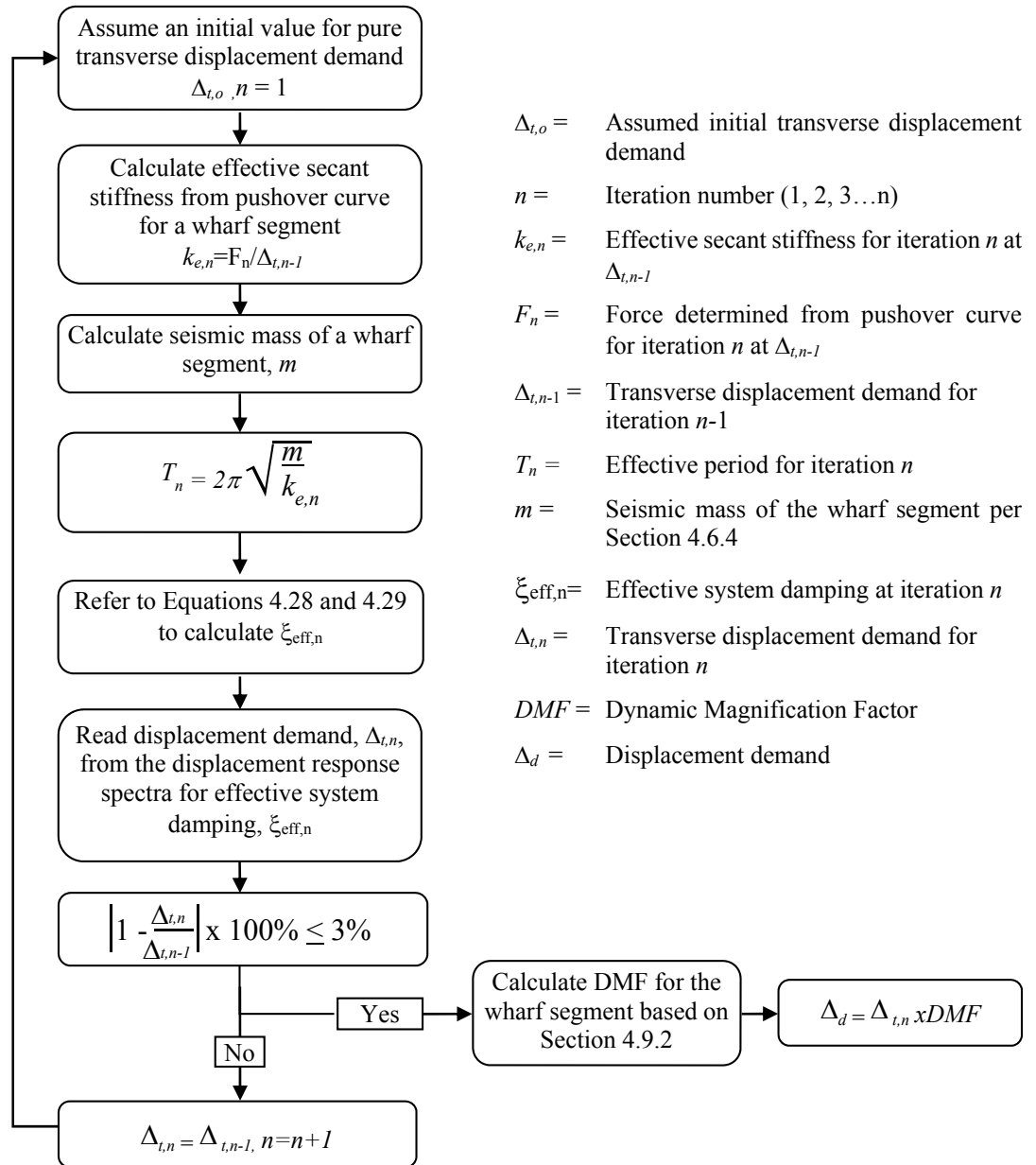
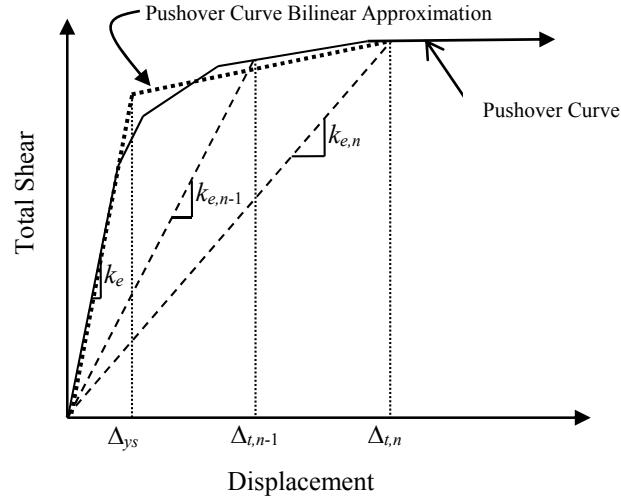


Figure 4-16: Flow Diagram for Substitute Structure Method





**Figure 4-17: Effective System Stiffness for a Wharf Segment**

The effective secant stiffness,  $k_e$  is the slope of the line that starts from the pushover curve origin point to the point of the first plastic hinge formed in a pile, refer to Figure 4-17. The system yield displacement,  $\Delta_{ys}$ , is determined from the intersection of the elastic and post-yield branches of the bilinear approximation. The “Equal Energy” approach should be used to estimate the bilinear approximation of the system pushover curve. The bilinear curve should be determined at an estimated displacement demand,  $\Delta_{t,n-1}$ , for CLE. The system yield displacement will always be larger than the displacement at first yield of piles. The system displacement ductility demand at iteration  $n$ ,  $\mu_n$ , is determined as follows:

$$\mu_n = \frac{\Delta_{t,n}}{\Delta_{ys}} \quad (4.28)$$

The effective system damping at iteration  $n$  is then found as follows (Ref. 27):

$$\xi_{eff,n} = 0.10 + 0.565 \left( \frac{\mu_n - 1}{\mu_n \pi} \right) \quad (4.29)$$

The wharf transverse displacement demand based on pure transverse excitation may be considered to have converged when  $\left| 1 - \frac{\Delta_{t,n}}{\Delta_{t,n-1}} \right| \times 100\% \leq 3\%$ . Once the transverse displacement demand converges, the result shall be modified using the DMF.

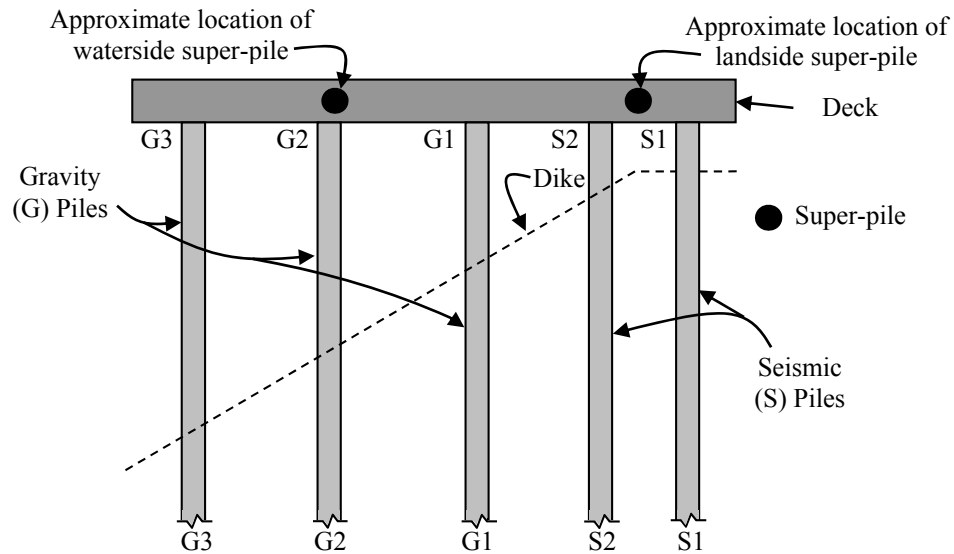
#### 4.9.4 Three-Dimensional (3-D) Analysis

Three-dimensional (3-D) demand analyses include Modal Response Spectra Analysis and Nonlinear Time-History Analysis. A typical wharf segment between expansion joints has a large number of piles, which may result in unacceptable matrix sizes for analysis. As an alternative, the structural characteristics of a wharf segment may be modeled by using the “Super-Pile” concept, as explained below.

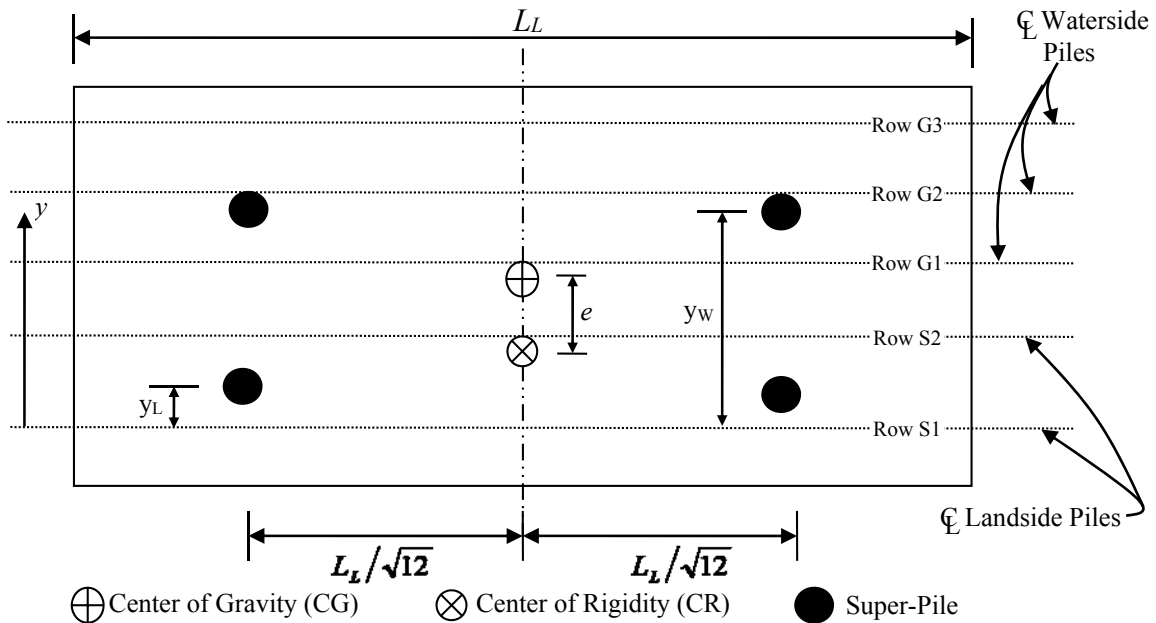
**4.9.4.1 Super-Pile Model**

Four super-piles may be used to represent the combined properties and stiffness of piles in the model for a regular wharf segment between expansion joints. For the analysis of an irregular wharf, the super-pile concept should be used with special consideration of the irregular elements.

The super-pile locations are determined based on the locations of the gravity piles and the seismic piles, as shown in Figure 4-18. The gravity piles mainly carry vertical loads, usually carrying less than 10% of the total lateral seismic load, and have less stringent detailing requirements. Seismic piles also carry vertical loads and provide most of the lateral seismic resistance with stringent detailing requirements.



**Figure 4-18: Elevation View of Transverse Wharf Segment**



**Figure 4-19: Super-pile Locations for a Wharf Segment**

The super-piles shown in Figure 4-19 are located at distances  $y_L$  and  $y_W$  from the center line of landside pile row S1:

$$y_L = \frac{\sum_{i=S1}^{S2} n_i F_i y_i}{\sum_{i=S1}^{S2} n_i F_i} \quad \text{and} \quad y_W = \frac{\sum_{i=G1}^{G3} n_i F_i y_i}{\sum_{i=G1}^{G3} n_i F_i} \quad (4.30)$$

where:

- $y_L$  = Distance of landside super-pile from centerline of landside pile row S1
- $i$  = Pile row (i.e. S1, S2, G1-G3 as shown in Figure 4-19 and Figure 4-18)
- $n_i$  = Total number of piles in row  $i$  for length  $L_L$
- $F_i$  = Lateral force per pile in row  $i$  from pushover analysis when seismic pile yield reach displacement
- $y_i$  = Distance of row  $i$  from the landside pile row S1
- $y_W$  = Distance of waterside super-pile from centerline of waterside pile row S1

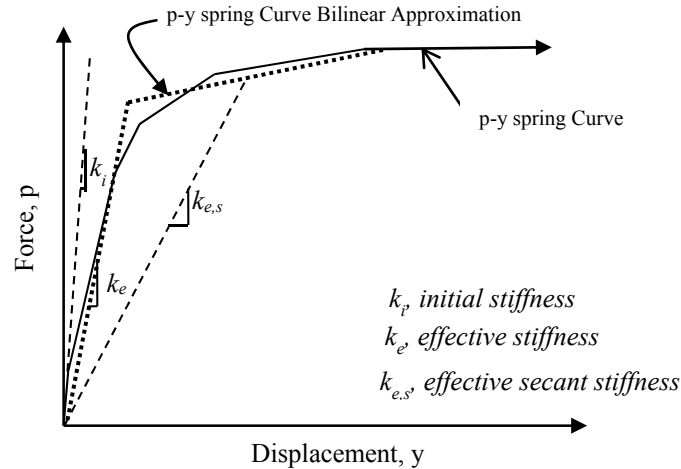
The super-pile stiffness is calculated from the pushover curve for the piles represented. The location of the super-pile should be determined based on the elastic response when the seismic piles reach yield displacement. For compatibility reasons, the gravity piles should have their stiffness determined at the same displacement. The landside super-pile stiffness is equal to the stiffness of all piles on the landside of the dike. The remainder of the total pile stiffness goes to the waterside super-piles. For a regular structure, the two landside super-piles should have equal stiffness, and the two waterside super-piles should have equal stiffness. In order to ensure the correct torsional stiffness under longitudinal response, the super-piles must be located at the center of gyration of the wharf segment. For a regular wharf segment the super-piles must be located at a distance of  $L_L / \sqrt{12}$  from the segment centroid, as shown in Figure 4-19.

The simplified model described above is suitable for both Modal Response Spectral Analysis and Nonlinear Time-History Analysis.

#### 4.9.4.2 Modal Response Spectral Analysis

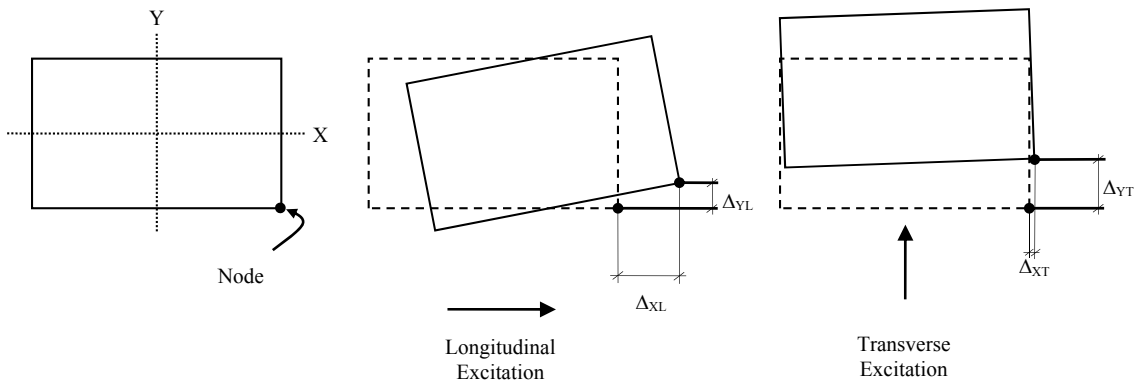
This method is essentially a linear response spectrum analysis for a stand-alone wharf segment. When wharf segments are linked by shear keys at movement joints, Modal Response Spectral Analysis will not provide adequate representation of shear key forces or displacement of the movement joint. A three-dimensional (3-D) linear elastic modal response analysis shall be used with effective section properties to determine lateral displacement demands.

Super-pile model is recommended to perform 3-D modal response spectrum analysis. If the 3-D super-pile model is not used and a full 3-D model is utilized, the soil springs (p-y) need to be modeled as linear springs with effective stiffness, see Figure 4-20. The soil springs with effective secant stiffness based on iterative procedure shall not be used to determine demands.



**Figure 4-20: P-y Soil Springs**

Sufficient modes shall be included in the analysis such that 90% of the participating mass is captured in each of the structure's principal horizontal directions. For modal combinations, the Complete Quadratic Combination (CQC) rule shall be used. A damping ratio of 5% for spectral analysis shall be used unless a higher ratio can be justified.



**Figure 4-21: Wharf Response due to Longitudinal and Transverse Excitations**

Input response spectra shall be applied separately along two orthogonal global axes (longitudinal and transverse), see Figure 4-21. Spectral displacement demand shall be obtained by the maximum of the following two load cases:

- Case 1: Combine the displacement demand resulting from 100% of the longitudinal load with the corresponding displacement demand from 30% of the transverse load:

$$\Delta_{X1} = \Delta_{XL} + 0.3\Delta_{XT}$$

$$\Delta_{Y1} = \Delta_{YL} + 0.3\Delta_{YT}$$

Case 2: Combine the displacement demand resulting from 100% of the transverse load with the corresponding displacement demand from 30% of the longitudinal load:

$$\Delta_{X2} = 0.3\Delta_{XL} + \Delta_{XT}$$

$$\Delta_{Y2} = 0.3\Delta_{YL} + \Delta_{YT}$$

where,

$\Delta_{XL}$  = X-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the longitudinal direction

$\Delta_{XT}$  = X-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the transverse direction

$\Delta_{YL}$  = Y-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the longitudinal direction

$\Delta_{YT}$  = Y-axis displacement demand due to structure excitation in the transverse direction

$\Delta_{X1}, \Delta_{X2}$  = Combined X-axis displacement demands from motions in the transverse and longitudinal directions

$\Delta_{Y1}, \Delta_{Y2}$  = Combined Y-axis displacement demands from motions in the transverse and longitudinal directions

Pile seismic demand,  $\Delta_d$ , is defined as follows:

$$\Delta_d = \max\left(\sqrt{\Delta_{X1}^2 + \Delta_{Y1}^2} \text{ or } \sqrt{\Delta_{X2}^2 + \Delta_{Y2}^2}\right) \quad (4.31)$$

Nonlinear time-history analysis has shown that the 100% + 30% spectral combination rule to be non-conservative for wharf structures (Ref. 13). If Modal Response Spectra Analysis method is used for the wharf design with soil initial lateral stiffness, the displacement demand to capacity ratio (DCR) shall be less than or equal to 0.85. If the DCR is larger than 0.85 other analysis methods shall be used.

#### 4.9.4.3 Nonlinear Time-History Analysis

Nonlinear Time-History Analysis (NTHA) is the most accurate method for determining displacement demand. Since the inelastic characteristics of the piles can be directly incorporated in the response, the longitudinal and transverse excitation can be simultaneously applied, and the complexities of the movement joints can be directly modeled. NTHA must always be used in conjunction with another simplified analysis approach to verify results. The NTHA results should be within 20% of the results obtained from another simplified approach such as response spectral analysis. When modeling reinforced or prestressed concrete piles or steel piles with concrete plugs, degrading stiffness models such as the Modified Takeda rule (Ref. 41) should be adopted with  $\alpha=0.3$  and  $\beta=0.5$ . Elastic damping should be represented by tangent stiffness damping equivalent to 10% critical damping.

Displacement demands from NTHA shall be based on simultaneous orthogonal horizontal input motions, as defined in Section 2.1. Multiple time-history records will be required to achieve a representative displacement demand for the global model.

When three sets of spectrum-compatible time-history records are used, the envelope value of each response parameter shall be used in the design. When seven sets or more of spectrum-compatible time-history records are used, the average value of each response parameter shall be used.

When NTHA methods are used, a peer review shall be conducted per Section 4.14.

## 4.10 Structural Capacities

For the evaluation of capacity-protected members and actions, such as shear in piles, and shear and moment in deck beams, and deck slabs, the demand forces shall be determined from using an amplified strength (overstrength) of pile plastic hinges:

$$M_o = 1.25M_p \text{ and } V_o = 1.25V_p \quad (4.32)$$

where

$M_o$  = Pile overstrength moment capacity

$M_p$  = Pile idealized plastic moment capacity, which can be calculated by  $M$ - $\phi$  analysis

$V_o$  = Pile overstrength shear demand

$V_p$  = Pile plastic shear, which can be calculated based on pile plastic moments or as the maximum shear in the pile from both Upper Bound and Lower Bound pushover analyses

Deck beam and deck slab design moment and shear forces shall be in equilibrium with pile overstrength moment and shear demands.

The wharf structural elements shall be designed for the induced forces due to the lateral seismic deformations. For wharf deck, beam and deck slab, and pile beam/deck joint, the moment, shear and axial demands shall be determined using the load combinations per Section 4.5.2. Any moment demand caused by dead load and 10% live load need to be distributed to the entire frame. The pile earthquake moment represents the amount of moment induced by an earthquake, when coupled with the existing pile dead load moment and pile 10% live load moment, will equal the pile's overstrength moment capacity.

### 4.10.1 Pile Displacement Capacity

Pile displacement capacity,  $\Delta_c$ , shall be determined at OLE, CLE and DE using strain limits provided in Table 4-1 for upper bound and lower bound soil conditions. The displacement capacity shall be the lesser of displacement capacity at pile top plastic hinge or at in-ground hinge, determined as follows:

$$\Delta_c = \Delta_y + \Delta_{p,m} \quad (4.33)$$

$$\Delta_{p,m} = \theta_{p,m} \times H \quad (4.34)$$

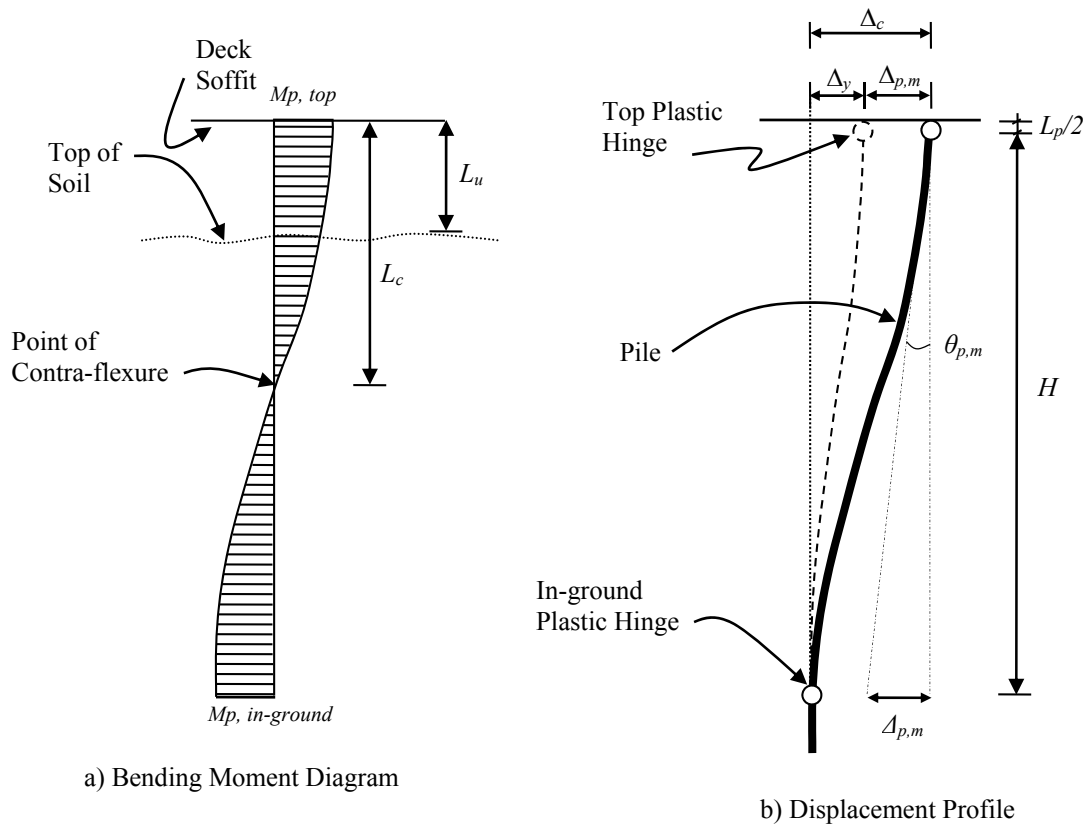
where:

$\Delta_c$  = Displacement capacity

- $\Delta_y$  = Pile yield displacement, determined from pile initial position to the formation of the plastic hinge being considered (i.e. top hinge or in-ground hinge)  
 $\Delta_{p,m}$  = Pile plastic displacement capacity due to rotation of the plastic hinge at the OLE, CLE or DE strain limits  
 $\theta_{p,m}$  = Plastic rotation at LE, CLE, or DE strain limits, determined per equation 4.19  
 $H$  = The distance between the center of pile top plastic hinge and the center of pile in-ground plastic hinge

The pile yield displacements,  $\Delta_y$ , of the top and in-ground hinges are obtained from the pushover analysis. Figure 4-22 shows a graphical representation of the displacement capacity calculation for a top plastic hinge. The concept is similar for an in-ground plastic hinge.

For piles with a large unsupported length,  $L_u$  and in-ground and top plastic hinges with a ratio  $M_{p, in-ground}/M_{p, top} > 1.25$ , the distance from the top and in-ground plastic hinges to the point of contraflexure becomes uneven. Therefore, the displacement capacity calculation becomes more complex, and the procedure used above will not provide accurate results. Thus, a detailed pushover analysis with proper definition of plastic curvature or rotation limits should be used to determine the displacement capacity.



**Figure 4-22: Pile Displacement Capacity**

### 4.10.2 Pile Beam/Deck Joint

As previously stated, wharves are designed with weak column (pile), strong beam (deck beam or deck slab) concept. In this capacity, weak column (pile) is required to form plastic hinges and experience permanent deformation due to seismic load. The nominal strength capacity of the beam or deck shall be sufficient to ensure the piles have reached their plastic limit prior to the beam or deck reaching its expected nominal strength. The beam or deck shear and flexural capacities shall be determined based on ACI-318 using strength reduction factors. The superstructure flexural capacity shall be greater than the largest combination of deck dead load moment, deck moment due to 10% of live load, and pile overstrength moment distributed on each side of the pile beam/deck joint (joint). Any distribution factors shall be based on cracked section properties.

For the pile beam/deck joint details shown in Figure 4-28, joint shear requirements are satisfied by providing adequate confinement. The required effective volumetric ratio of confining steel,  $\rho_s$ , around the pile dowels anchored in the joint shall be:

$$\rho_s = \max \text{ of } \left[ \frac{0.46 A_{sc}}{D' l_a} \left[ \frac{f_{ye}}{0.0015 E_{sh}} \right] \text{ or } 0.016 \right] \quad (4.35)$$

where:

- $A_{sc}$  = Total cross-section area of dowels in the joint
- $D'$  = Diameter of the confined core measured to the centerline of the confining steel
- $l_a$  = Actual embedment length of dowels anchored in the joint
- $f_{ye}$  = Expected yield strength of dowels
- $E_{sh}$  = Confining steel modulus of elasticity

Less conservative mechanisms for joint shear transfer are suggested in Ref. 39. If an alternate detail is proposed, joint shear principal stresses shall be checked according to ACI-318.

### 4.10.3 Pile Shear

Pile overstrength shear demand,  $V_o$  shall be determined by nonlinear pushover analyses using an overstrength factor of 1.25 including the effect of the axial load on piles due to crane dead load. In lieu of pushover analysis,  $V_o$  may be calculated as follows:

$$V_o = 1.25 (M_{p, top} + M_{p, in-ground})/H \quad (4.36)$$

where

- $M_{p, top}$  = Pile plastic moment capacity at the top plastic hinge including the effect of axial load due to crane dead load
- $M_{p, in-ground}$  = Pile plastic moment capacity at the in-ground plastic hinge including the effect of axial load due to crane dead load
- $H$  = The distance between the center of pile top plastic hinge and the center of pile in-ground plastic hinge



***Steel Piles Shear Capacity***

The shear capacity of steel piles shall be determined according to AISC-LRFD or API provisions, where applicable.

***Concrete Piles Shear Capacity***

The following applies to concrete piles and steel pipe piles with concrete plug and dowels connections to the deck. The shear capacity,  $\Phi V_n$ , shall be calculated using the method described below.

This method is based on the modified UCSD three-parameter model (Ref. 40) with separate contributions to shear strength from concrete, transverse reinforcement and axial load:

$$\Phi V_n = \Phi(V_c + V_s + V_a) \quad (4.37)$$

where,

- $\Phi$  = Strength reduction factor for shear, equal to 0.85 for OLE and CLE and equal to 1.0 for DE
- $V_n$  = Nominal shear strength
- $V_c$  = Concrete shear strength
- $V_s$  = Transverse reinforcement shear strength
- $V_a$  = Shear strength due to axial load

***Concrete Shear Strength,  $V_c$ :***

$$V_c = k\sqrt{f'_c}A_e \quad (4.38)$$

where:

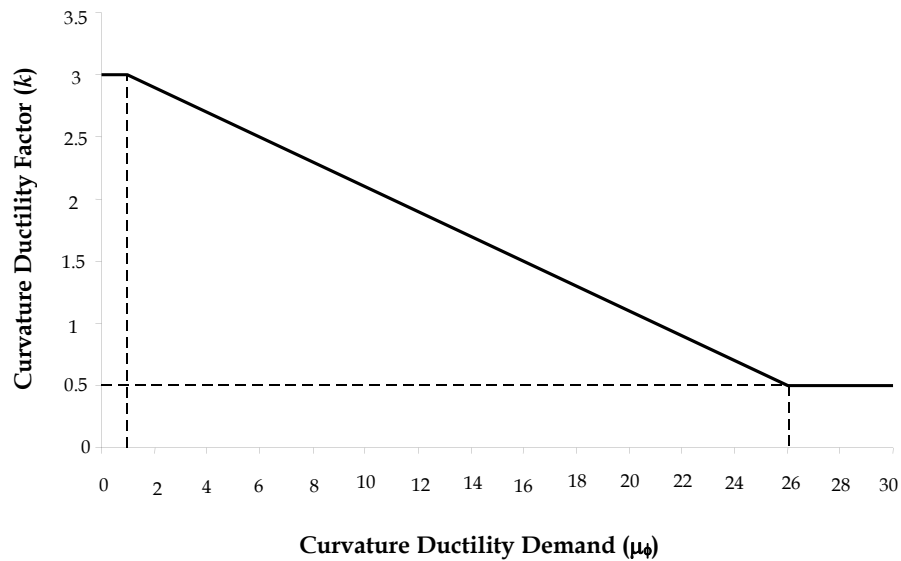
- $k$  = Curvature ductility factor, determined as a function of  $\mu_\phi$ , refer to Figure 4-23
- $f'_c$  = 28-day of unconfined concrete compressive strength (psi)
- $A_e$  = Effective shear area, equal to 80% of gross cross-sectional area for solid circular and octagonal piles
- $\mu_\phi$  = Curvature ductility demand

The curvature ductility demand,  $\mu_\phi$  shall be calculated at the demand displacement, and can be found using the formula below:

$$\mu_\phi = 1 + \frac{\phi_{P,dem}}{\phi_y} = 1 + \frac{\theta_{P,dem}}{L_p\phi_y} \quad (4.39)$$

where:

- $\phi_{P,dem}$  = Plastic curvature at displacement demand
- $\phi_y$  = Idealized yield curvature
- $\theta_{P,dem}$  = Plastic rotation at displacement demand
- $L_p$  = Plastic hinge length



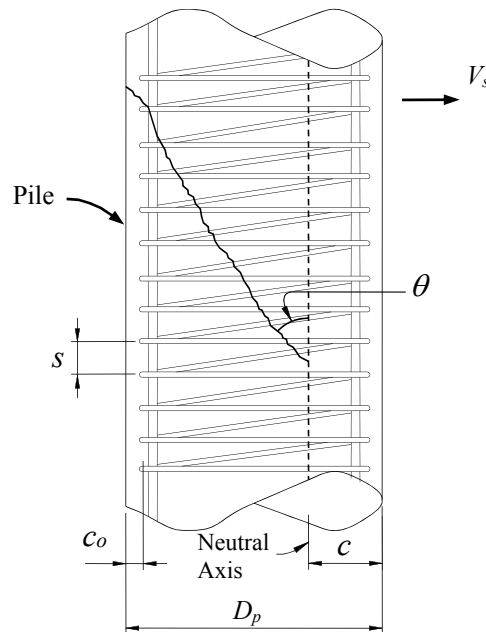
**Figure 4-23: Curvature Ductility Factor versus Curvature Ductility Demand**

**Transverse Reinforcement Shear Strength,  $V_s$ :**

$$V_s = \frac{\pi A_{sp} f_{yh} (D_p - c - c_o) \cot(\theta)}{2s} < 0.2 f'_c A_{sp} \quad (4.40)$$

where:

- $A_{sp}$  = Cross-section area of transverse reinforcement
- $f_{yh}$  = Yield strength of transverse reinforcement
- $D_p$  = Pile diameter
- $c$  = Depth from the extreme compression fiber to the neutral axis at flexural strength, see Figure 4-24
- $c_o$  = Clear concrete cover plus half the diameter of the transverse reinforcement, see Figure 4-24
- $\theta$  = Angle of critical shear with respect to the longitudinal axis of the pile, taken as  $30^\circ$  for existing structures and  $35^\circ$  for new design, see Figure 4-24
- $s$  = Center-to-center spacing of transverse reinforcement along pile axis



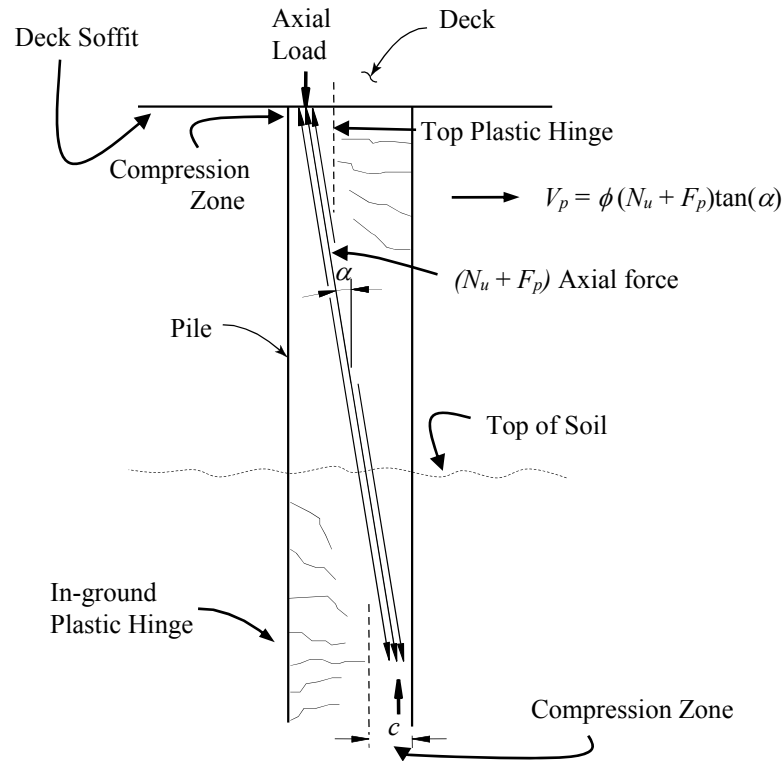
**Figure 4-24: Transverse Shear Reinforcement Shear Strength Components**

**Shear Strength due to Axial Load,  $V_a$ :**

$$V_a = \beta(N_u + F_p) \tan(\alpha) \quad (4.41)$$

where:

- $N_u$  = External axial compression on pile including seismic load; compression is taken as positive, and tension as negative
- $F_p$  = Prestress compressive force in pile, taken as zero for top plastic hinge
- $\alpha$  = Angle between the line joining centers of flexural compression zones at top and in-ground plastic hinges and the pile axis, see Figure 4-25
- $\beta$  = Axial load shear strength factor, taken as 1.0 for existing structures, and 0.85 for new design



**Figure 4-25: Axial Load Shear Strength Components**

Alternatively, for piles with curvature ductility,  $\mu_\phi < 2$ , the pile shear strength may be calculated according to ACI-318 provisions.

#### 4.10.4 P- $\Delta$ Effects

Additional secondary forces due to the effect of dead load and lateral seismic displacement demand (P- $\Delta$ ) shall be included in the analysis for OLE, CLE and DE. The P- $\Delta$  effects may be ignored when:

$$\frac{F}{W_{DL}} \geq 4 \frac{\Delta_d}{H'} \quad (4.42)$$

where:

- $F$  = Total lateral seismic force of the wharf strip considered at displacement demand, determined from pushover curve
- $W_{DL}$  = Effective dead load of the wharf strip considered
- $\Delta_d$  = Displacement demand
- $H'$  = The distance from the maximum in-ground moment to the center of gravity of the deck

#### 4.11 Deck Expansion Joint

Modal Response Spectral Analysis does not directly predict shear key forces between wharf segments at expansion joints. A series of time-history analyses were conducted as

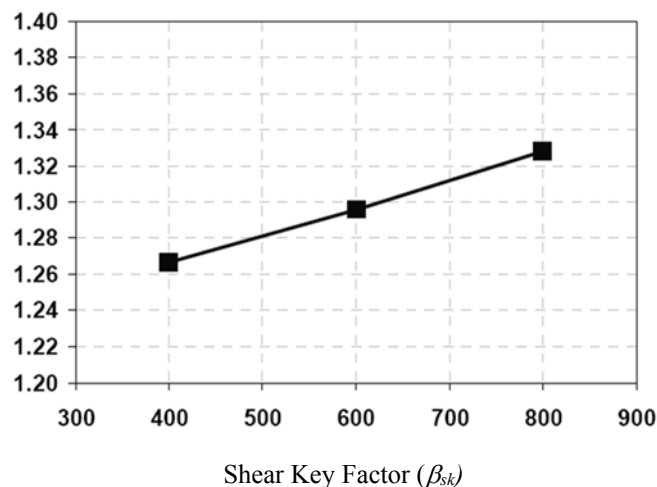
part of a research study (Ref. 13) to obtain shear key forces for different wharf configurations, soil properties and ground motion intensities. The results of the study are based on a 110-ft wide wharf section with wharf segment length combinations that varied from 400 feet, 600 feet, and 800 feet. The analysis was conducted using both lower and upper bound soil conditions and OLE and CLE ground motions.

The study results show that for two linked wharf units, the shear key should be designed for a seismic shear key force demand,  $V_{sk}$ , as shown below:

$$V_{sk} = \beta_{sk} \left( \frac{F_{\Delta} e}{L_L} \right) \quad (4.43)$$

where,

- $F_{\Delta}$  = Total lateral seismic force of a wharf segment at displacement demand, determined from the pushover curve of an entire wharf segment when the shear key joins two segments of different lengths,  $F_{\Delta}$  refers to the shorter segment
- $e$  = Eccentricity between the wharf center of mass and center of rigidity
- $L_L$  = Length of the shorter exterior wharf unit
- $\beta_{sk}$  = Shear key factor, determined as a function of wharf segment length, refer to Figure 4-26



**Figure 4-26: Share Key Factor versus Wharf Segment Length**

For wharf section with configurations different than the wharf configurations used in the research study (Ref. 13), special case analysis per Section 4.8.2.2 needs to be performed with prior written approval by the port.

The wharf expansion joint shall be designed for the combined effect of seismic deformation, seismic forces and thermal expansion. For calculating expansion joint shear capacity according to ACI-318, a reduction factor of 0.85 should be used.

## 4.12 Kinematic Loads

Kinematic loads occurs in piles when the dike begins sliding on a weak soil layer during an earthquake, inducing bending moments in piles beneath the soil surface. Deep in-ground plastic hinges may form due to the dike movement, see Figure 4-27.

Section 2 provides screening criteria for kinematic analysis (nonlinear dynamic soil-structure interaction analysis) of the dike. If a kinematic analysis is required, the geotechnical engineer shall provide displacement profiles for the piles under kinematic load. The structural engineer shall analyze the piles for the given displacement profiles, and the material strains in the piles shall not exceed the strain limits provided in Table 4-1. In addition, the shear demand in piles shall not exceed shear capacity determined according to Section 4.10.3.

For the 24-inch octagonal, precast, prestressed concrete piles and dike configurations that are typically used at POLB and having an embedment length of at least 20 feet into the dike, kinematic load should not be considered when the permanent free field embankment or dike deformation determined per Section 2 are less than 3 inches for OLE, less than 12 inches for CLE and less than 36 inches for DE.

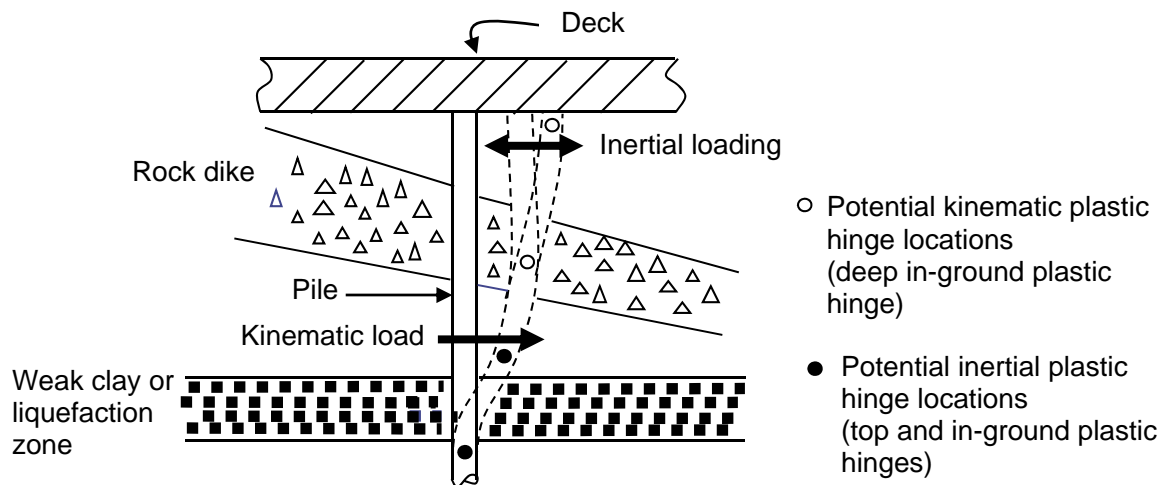
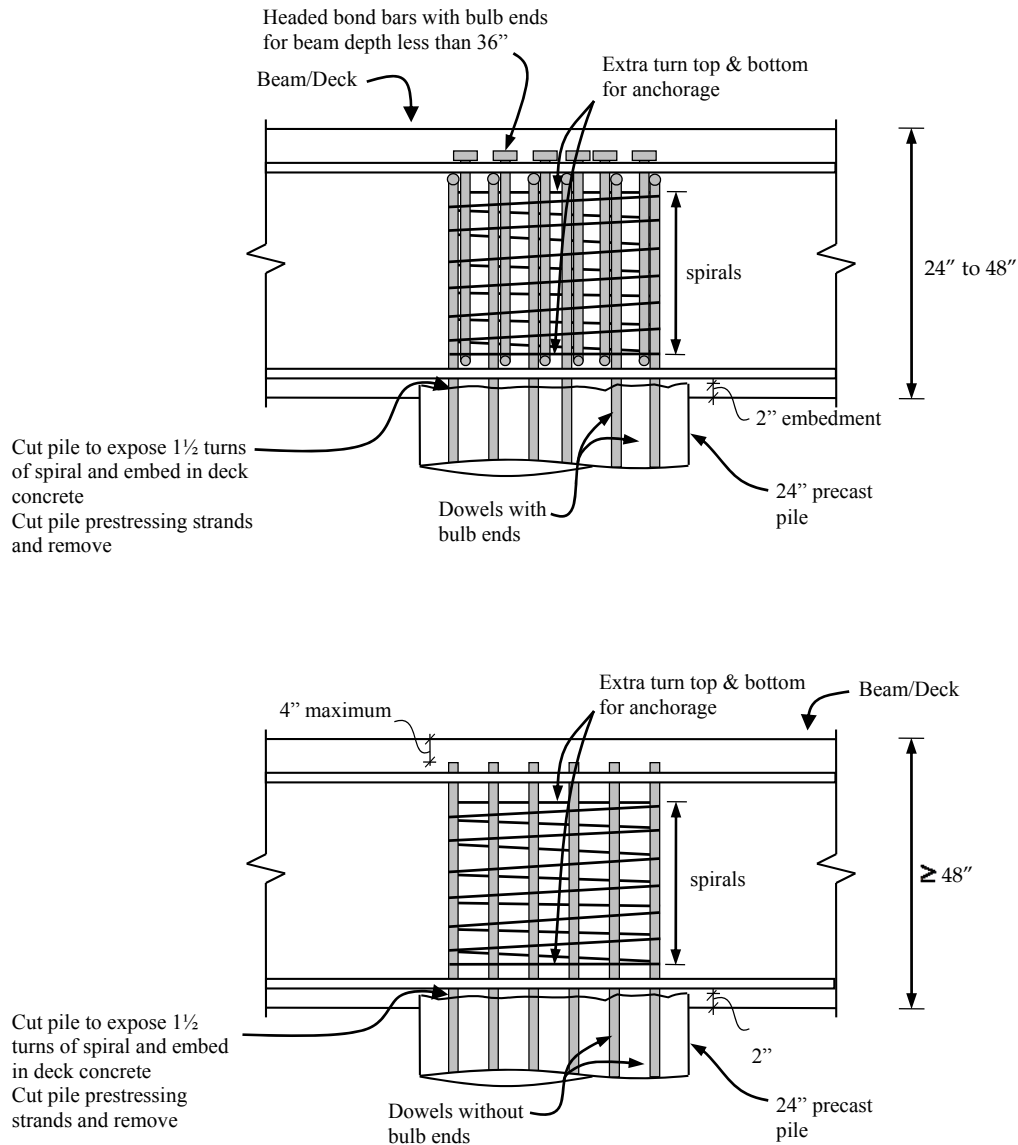


Figure 4-27: Plastic Hinge Formation due to Kinematic Loads

## 4.13 Seismic Detailing

The details shown in Figure 4-28 are acceptable confinement details for the pile beam/deck connection. The volumetric ratio of longitudinal reinforcing steel (dowels),  $\rho$  shall be between 1% and 4%. The maximum dowel bar size should be No. 11. The dowels shall be developed into the pile according to ACI-318 requirements. The effective volumetric ratio of confining steel,  $\rho_s$  shall be provided according to Section 4.10.2. The pile prestressing steel shall be cut-off and removed at the top of the pile.



**Figure 4-28: Anchorage Details for Pile Dowels**

#### 4.14 Peer Review

A peer review of the analysis and design shall be performed by an engineering team selected by the Port for:

1. Presence of new faults at the project site
2. Detailed numerical analysis for liquefaction potential
3. Irregular wharf structures
4. Nonlinear time-history analysis
5. Kinematic analysis (nonlinear dynamic soil-structure interaction analysis)

## 5 Structural Considerations

### 5.1 Design Standards

Wharf analysis and design shall comply with the provisions of POLB Wharf Design Criteria and the following codes and standards as applicable. The provisions of POLB Wharf Design Criteria shall supersede the requirements of all other documents if there are disagreements.

1. American Concrete Institute (ACI), “Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary,” ACI-318, (Ref. 2).
2. American Forest and Paper Association (AF&PA), “National Design Specifications for Wood Construction and Supplement LRFD/ASD,” (Ref. 3).
3. American Institute of Steel Constructions (AISC), “Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges,” (Ref. 4).
4. American Petroleum Institute (API), “Recommended Practice for Planning, Designing and Constructing Fixed Offshore Platforms – Working Stress Design,” (Ref. 5).
5. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE/COPRI 61-14), “Seismic Design of Piers and Wharves,” 2014. (Ref. 11).
6. ANSI/AWS D1.1, “Structural Welding Code – Steel,” (Ref. 7).
7. ASCE 7, Standard, “Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures,” (Ref. 10).
8. California Building Code (CBC), “California Code of Regulations, Title 24,” (Ref. 15).
9. California Building Code “Chapter 31F [For SLC], Marine Oil Terminals,” also known as “Marine Oil Terminal Engineering Standards (MOTEMS),” (Ref. 17).

### 5.2 Wharf Geometrics

#### *Controls*

The wharf controls shall refer to the “Control” Section of the “Design Criteria and Standard Plans” under “General Criteria,” (Ref. 36) for specific instructions as to survey controls.

#### *Vertical Datum*

The vertical datum for the POLB is based on NGVD 29 (National Geodetic vertical Datum of 1929), with MLLW elevation = 0.0 feet. The City of Long Beach uses NGVD 29 with MSL elevation = 0.0 feet. As a reference, tidal elevations are provided in Table 5-1 for NAVD 88 (North American Vertical Datum of 1988) and NGVD 29.



### ***Monuments***

The Project Plans shall show the location and type for installation of baseline monuments. The Port survey section shall provide the required locations and type of monuments.

**Table 5-1: Tidal Elevations**

Abbreviation	Description	Elevation (ft)	
		NGVD 29	NAVD 88
---	Highest Observed Water Level <sup>a</sup>	+7.54	+7.16
MHHW	Mean Higher-High Water	+5.43	+5.05
MHW	Mean High Water	+4.71	+4.33
MSL	Mean Sea Level	+2.80	+2.42
MLW	Mean Low Water	+0.95	+0.57
MLLW	Mean Lower-Low Water	0.00	-0.38
---	Lowest Observed Water Level	-2.56	-2.94
<sup>a</sup> The extreme elevations should be used with caution. Irregularities in the predicted tide (seiches) have been known to cause variations of up to 1.0 feet			

### ***Wharf Elevations***

Wharf elevations shall be determined to maintain facility operations under all tidal conditions and the sea level rise (SLR) predicted by The National Resources Council (NRC 2012) report (Ref. 32). The NRC 2012 report predicts a 0.9 foot increase in SLR by 2050 and a 3.1 foot increase by 2100 for the Los Angeles area. Where applicable, the wharf elevation shall also match that of adjacent facilities, unless directed otherwise by project-specific criteria. Wharf elevations for RO-RO, barge loading and unloading, and special purpose docks are to be determined by project-specific criteria.

### ***Crane Rail Elevations***

The top of crane rails (except for wheel flange notches) shall be level with the adjacent deck surface. The top of rail elevation is dictated by drainage conditions for the wharf. This normally results in a relative elevation difference between the waterside and landside crane rails, due to deck transverse cross-slope. If cross-section elevations differ, crane design shall accommodate elevations differential by specifying crane legs to match. The longitudinal elevation of a crane rail shall be constant.

Typical rail elevations are at +15.0 feet for the waterside crane rail. The landside crane rail elevation is based on minimum grade requirements, typically 0.75%.

The allowable tolerances for the top of crane rail elevation shall be 1/8 inch, and 1/16 inch for any 10 feet along the rail length.

## 5.3 Construction Materials

### *Cement*

Portland cement type II modified shall be used.

### *Reinforcing Steel*

Grade 60 reinforcing steel shall be used. Epoxy coating is not permitted without prior written approval by the Port.

### *Prestressing Steel*

270 ksi strands shall be used for piles prestressing steel.

### *Cast-in-place Concrete*

Cast-in-place concrete strength ( $f'_c$ ) shall be a minimum of 5,000 psi at 28 days. Minimum concrete cover over reinforcing steel shall be 2 inches for the top of wharf face, and 3 inches for all other faces.

### *Non-prestressed Precast Concrete*

Precast non-prestressed concrete strength ( $f'_c$ ) shall be a minimum of 5,000 psi at 28 days. Minimum concrete cover over reinforcing steel shall be 2 inches for the top face, and 3 inches for all other faces.

### *Prestressed Concrete Piles*

Precast prestressed concrete piles strength ( $f'_c$ ) shall be a minimum of 6,500 psi at time of driving, and 4,500 psi at time of prestressing steel stress transfer. Minimum concrete cover over transverse reinforcing steel shall be 2½ inches.

### *Prestressed Precast Concrete (other than piles)*

Precast prestressed concrete strength ( $f'_c$ ) shall be a minimum of 6,000 psi at 28 days. Minimum concrete cover over reinforcing steel shall be 2 inches for the top face, and 3 inches for all other faces.

## 5.4 Wharf Components

### 5.4.1 Wharf Deck

#### *Beam/Slab*

This system consists of a cast-in-place concrete slab supported by cast-in-place beams (pile caps) that are supported by piles. When beams (pile caps) exist both longitudinally and transversely, this system is also called a “waffle slab”.

#### *Flat Slab*

The flat slab system consists of a cast-in-place concrete deck supported by piles. The thickness of the deck slab is normally controlled by slab punching shear capacity to resist pile reactions. The slab depth in this case can be reduced by the use of capitals or shear caps under the deck at pile locations.

Flat slab system may have larger seismic mass when compared to a beam/slab system.

#### *Precast Slab Panels*

This system consists of precast deck slab panels placed on top of cast-in-place bent caps supported by piles. The entire system can also be covered with a reinforced cast-in-place topping slab for continuity. Precast deck slabs have the advantage of reducing the amount of required falsework, which lowers both the construction cost and construction duration. However, the bent cap beams reduce the construction tolerance of the pile placement (i.e. misalignment). This can be an important factor in locations of construction nearby or replacing existing structures, where submerged obstacles can be expected during pile driving. Additionally, the depth of the bent cap beams with this type of deck can become relatively large as the pile spacing is increased. This can place portions of the beam in the tidal zone, potentially increasing the corrosion potential of the superstructure.

#### *Ballasted Decks*

Ballasted decks are normally not a preferred system due to their high seismic mass and associated higher seismic demands. However, this type of system works well when deck accessories such as railroad tracks are necessary, and a large number of utilities and pipelines are required. A dropped deck or ballasted section is necessary in utility corridors, and can be combined with any of the above systems. Ballasted decks are also useful for non-container and general cargo (break-bulk) wharves where point loads from odd shaped equipment and freight are operated.

### 5.4.2 Expansion Joints

Expansion joints are joints between two wharf units with a shear key that allows relative longitudinal movement (movement parallel to shore) but restricts relative transverse movement (movement perpendicular to shore). Expansion joints locations are determined by thermal forces, and are typically placed at a maximum of approximately 800 feet along the wharf.

The wharf expansion joints shall be designed for the combined effect of seismic deformation, seismic forces and thermal expansion.

### **5.4.3 Cut-off Wall**

A cut-off wall is a vertical subsurface barrier designed to prevent erosion of backland materials under the wharf. It is normally constructed along the back edge of the wharf with a sufficient depth to maintain kick-out stability, while still providing erosion protection. It can be of either precast or cast-in-place construction. Cut-off wall shall not be relied on for seismic resistance of the wharf structure.

### **5.4.4 Crane Rails**

#### *Support System*

Crane rails shall be supported by a continuous weight distributing sole plate with attached rail clips, a continuous flexible impact pad, and the appropriate crane rail. The assembly shall be galvanized and installed in a recessed pocket with an epoxy fill under the sole plate and asphalt concrete (AC) fill around the rail assembly to match the finished grade of the wharf deck, with block-outs for wheel flanges. Crane rails shall be continuously welded at expansion joint.

#### *Crane Stops*

Crane stops are provided at the ends of the wharf to restrict crane motion beyond their intended travel limits. The crane stop bumpers shall be positioned per crane manufacturer's recommendation. See Section 3.3.3 for further discussion on crane stops.

#### *Crane stowage pins*

The number of crane stowage pins and their location shall be based on operational considerations. They are typically placed at ends of wharf, and at intermediate points for long wharves. Consideration should be given to the number of cranes, length of wharf, location of power source, and distance between stowage pins.

### **5.4.5 Fenders and Mooring Hardware**

Fenders and mooring hardware spacing shall be determined based on operational requirements and design vessels characteristics. Also, mooring hardware shall be located to not cause line interference with fenders. Due to the likelihood of bulbous bow vessels, a minimum distance of 8.5 feet shall be provided between the supporting structure piling and the face of a compressed fender. This requirement is not applicable to fender piling, if used.

To minimize additional crane boom reach, the maximum allowable stand off for fenders shall be considered per crane and vessel configurations. Fenders shall be located along the wharf face at a distance that will minimize the chance the vessel will contact the concrete face of the wharf. Vessel dimensions and allowable hull pressure shall also be considered in positioning and sizing fenders.

Mooring bollards shall be placed at intervals based on multiples of bent spacing, but no more than 60 feet to avoid hull/wharf strikes. Refer to Section 3.7 for mooring loads.

#### **5.4.6 Safety Ladder**

Safety ladders shall be provided at a maximum spacing of 400 feet along the face of the wharf.

#### **5.4.7 Piling**

##### *Clearance*

An approximate minimum of 4 feet clearance shall be used between the deck/ beam soffit and top of dike to allow for adequate post-earthquake inspection and repairs.

##### *Concrete Piles*

The Port's standard pile is a 24-inch octagonal precast prestressed concrete pile. Larger size solid or hollow piles may be proposed for situations where the 24-inch octagonal pile is not a cost effective solution. The Port prefers to use only one size pile for the entire structure, varying only the length and prestress level, unless project conditions and/or cost savings prove otherwise. The use of piles other than the standard 24-inch octagonal precast prestressed piles is not permitted without a prior written approval by the Port.

##### *Steel Piles*

The use of steel piles is strongly discouraged due to the corrosion potential and associated higher maintenance cost. Additionally, corrosion barrier coating systems and encasements impede routine visual pile inspections. Steel piles should only be used when project-specific criteria and site circumstances dictate.

##### *Battered Piles*

The use of battered piles is not permitted without a prior written approval by the Port. However, battered piles may be used for isolated structures with low seismic mass, such as landside anchors, mooring and breasting dolphins.

#### **5.4.8 Guard Timber**

On the waterside edges of the wharf deck, a curb or chemically treated guard timber 10-inch high by 12-inch wide shall be used. Notches shall be provided on the underside of the guard timber to permit drainage. The guard timber shall be anchored to the deck slab using recessed bolts or pins, and should include vessel's net anchor rings.

#### **5.4.9 Trench Cover Plates**

Galvanized steel checker plate shall be used for trench covers. Special consideration should be given to the hinge design due to the weight of the plates. The preferred location of the power trench is on the waterside of the waterside crane rail. The trench cover plates shall be designed using the applicable load specified in Section 3.

#### **5.4.10 Cable Trench**

Trench for crane power cables shall be covered with a continuous flexible material, fabricated from rubber with inlaid steel reinforcement. The trench shall be a minimum width and depth to accommodate the crane power cables anticipated at the facility.

#### **5.4.11 Inclinometer Tubes/ Motion Instrumentation**

The decision to install inclinometer tubes/ strong motion instrumentation in the wharf structure should be made during design, and should be coordinated with other instrumentations functioning within the Port.

#### **5.4.12 Dike Scour**

Submerged slopes shall be protected to withstand the effects of ocean waves, tidal currents, propeller wash, and vessels wakes. At a minimum, the slope protection shall consist of an under layer of quarry run rock and an armor layer consisting of nominal 500 pounds armor stone. The submerged slope protection shall at a minimum extend above all expected water levels and wave run-up elevations. Other approaches to slope protection shall require prior written approval by the Port.

Design current speed, wave height and other coastal hydrodynamic processes shall be defined and approved by the Port. Armor design and analysis shall consider the design water level including sea level rise, design wave conditions, design current speeds, design currents from propeller and bow thruster wash, design ship wake and any other potential sources of currents and waves such as tsunami (Ref. 43). The design vessel, for vessel related factors, is provided in Section 3.6. An approach for addressing sea level rise is given in Ref. 44.

### **5.5 Structural Analysis Considerations**

#### ***Materials Properties***

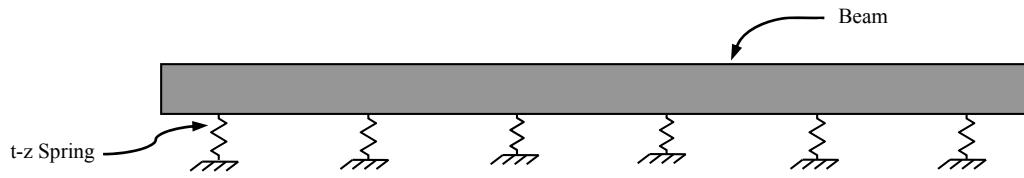
For service load analysis such as dead loads, live loads, and wind loads, the material properties shall be based on the relevant design code, see Section 5.1.

#### ***Section Properties***

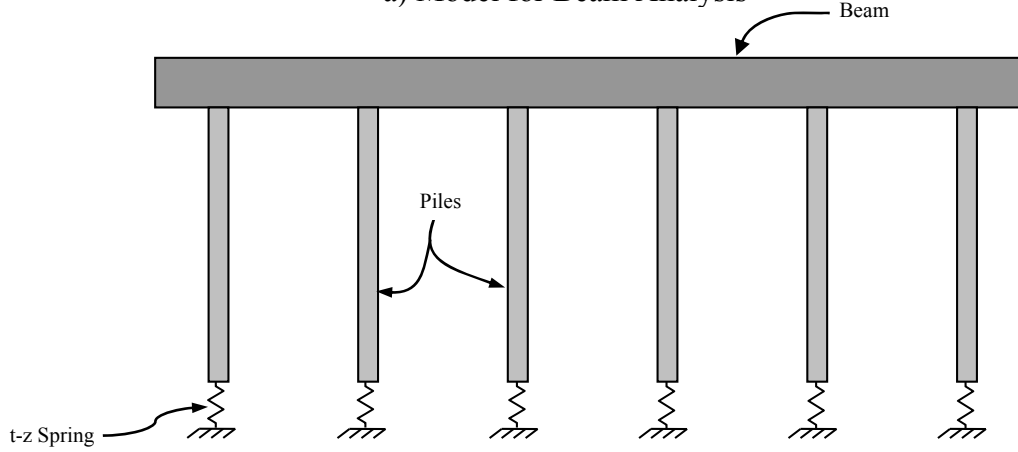
For temperature or creep loads, the effective moment of inertia ( $I_{eff}$ ) should be used for piles, see Section 4.6.3. For all other service loads, gross moment of inertia ( $I_{gross}$ ) shall be used.

#### ***Beam on Elastic Foundation Model***

For modeling the wharf structure frame as beams on elastic foundation, UB and LB t-z springs shall be used for the analysis including the pile elastic shortening, see Section 2. To calculate moments in the beam and axial force in the piles, the t-z springs may replace modeling the piles, as shown in Figure 5-1-a). The piles should be included in the model to determine moments and shear in the piles, as in Figure 5-1-b).



a) Model for Beam Analysis



b) Model for Beam and Pile Analysis

**Figure 5-1: Beam on Elastic Foundation**

This page intentionally left blank.



## 6 References

1. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO), "LRFD Bridge Design Specifications," 2012.
2. American Concrete Institute (ACI), "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary," ACI 318, 2011.
3. American Forest and Paper Association (AF&PA), "National Design Specifications for Wood Construction and Supplement LRFD/ASD," ANSI/AF&PA NDS 2012, AF&PA, Washington DC, 2012.
4. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC), "Manual of Steel Construction," 14<sup>th</sup> Edition, 2011.
5. American Petroleum Institute, "Recommended Practice for Planning, Designing and Constructing Fixed Offshore Platforms – Working Stress Design," API Recommended Practice 2A-WSD (RP2-WSD), 22nd Edition, November 2014.
6. American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Association (AREMA), "Manual for Railway Engineering," 2014.
7. Andrews, D. C. and Martin, G. R., "Criteria for Liquefaction of Silty Soils," Proceedings of the 12<sup>th</sup> World Conference on Earthquake Engineering, Auckland, New Zealand, 2000.
8. ANSI/AWS, D1.1, "Structural Welding Code, Steel" – 2008 Edition.
9. Applied Technology Council/Multidisciplinary Center for Earthquake Engineering Research, "Recommended LRFD Guidelines for the Seismic Design of Highway Bridges," MCEER/ATC-49, Based on NCHRP 12-49, 2003.
10. ASCE 7, "Standard, Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures," 2010.
11. ASCE/COPRI 61-14, "Seismic Design of Piers and Wharves," 2014.
12. Blake, T. F., R. A. Hollingsworth, and J. P. Stewart, J. P. (eds.), "Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Landslide Hazards in California," Southern California Earthquake Center, University of Southern California, February 2002.
13. Blandon, C. A., "Seismic Analysis and Design of Pile Supported Wharves," Ph. D. Dissertation, Rose School, Pavia, Italy, October 2007.
14. Boulanger, R. W. and I. M. Idriss, "Liquefaction Susceptibility Criteria for Silts and Clays," ASCE: Journal of Geotechnical and Geoenvironmental Engineering Vol. 132, No. 11, November 2006.
15. Bray, J. D. and Sancio, R. B., "Assessment of the Liquefaction Susceptibility of Fine-Grained Soils," ASCE: Journal of Geotechnical and Geoenvironmental Engineering Vol. 132, No. 9, September 2006.
16. California Building Code (CBC) (2013), "California Code of Regulations, Title 24," January 2014.

17. California Building Code (CBC) (2013) "Chapter 31F [For SLC], Marine Oil Terminals," January 2014.
18. California Department of Transportation, "Guide Specifications for Seismic Design of Steel Bridges," First Edition, December 2001.
19. California Department of Transportation, "Seismic Design Criteria," Version 1.7, April 2013.
20. Earth Mechanics, Inc., "Port-Wide Ground Motion Study, Port of Long Beach, California," Prepared for the Port of Long Beach, August 7, 2006.
21. Earth Mechanics, Inc., "Final Addendum No. 3 to Port-Wide Ground Motion Study Report, Port of Long Beach, California," Prepared for the Port of Long Beach, May 13, 2015.
22. FHWA, "Design and Construction of Driven Pile Foundations," US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration, Publication No. FHWA/NHI-05-042, April 2006.
23. Canadian Geotechnical Society, "Canadian Foundation Engineering Manual," 4<sup>th</sup> Edition, 2006.
24. Hart, E. W. and Bryant, W. A., "Fault Rupture Hazard Zones in California," California Geological Survey Special Publication SP-042, 1992. Revised 1997 (Supplements 1 and 2 Added 1999).
25. Idriss, I. M. and Boulanger, R. W., "SPT- and CPT-Based Relationships for the Residual Strength Shear Strength of Liquefied Soils," Earthquake Geotechnical Engineering, 4<sup>th</sup> International Conference on Earthquake Engineering – Invited Lectures, K. D. Pitilakis, Ed., Springer, The Netherlands, 1-22, 2007.
26. International Navigation Association [PIANC], "Guidelines for the Design of Fender Systems: 2002," Working Group No. 33 of the Maritime Navigation Commission, 2002.
27. Jaradat, O. and Priestley, M.J.N., "Displacement-Based Procedures for Seismic Design of Pile-Supported Wharves at the Port of Los Angeles and the Port of Long Beach," AC ISP-291-3, 2013.
28. Mander, J.P., Priestley, M.J.N, and Park, R., "Theoretical Stress-Strain Model for Confined Concrete," ASCE: Journal of Structural Engineering, Vol. 114, No. 8, August 1988.
29. Martin, G.R., and Lew, M. (eds.), "Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Liquefaction Hazards in California," Southern California Earthquake Center, University of Southern California, March 1999.
30. Moffatt & Nichol et al., "Alameda Corridor Currents and Tracer Study Revised Final Report," Prepared for Alameda Corridor Transportation Authority, May 31, 2001.

31. Moffatt & Nichol, "Tsunami Hazard Assessment for the Ports of Long Beach and Los Angeles," Final Report, Prepared for the Port of Long Beach and the Port of Los Angeles, April, 2007.
32. National Research Council, Committee on Sea Level Rise in California, Oregon, and Washington, "Sea-Level Rise for the Coasts of California, Oregon, and Washington: Past, Present, and Future" Report 2012.
33. NAVFAC, "Foundation and Earth Structures," Design Manual 7.02, Department of the Navy, Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Alexandria, VA, September 1986.
34. NAVFAC, "Soil Mechanics," Design Manual 7.01, Department of the Navy, Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Alexandria, VA, September 1986.
35. Olson, S. M. and Stark, T. D., "Liquefied Strength Ratio for Liquefaction Flow Failure Case Histories," Canadian Geotechnical Journal, 39, 629-647, 2002.
36. Port of Long Beach, "Design Criteria Manual," January 2014.
37. Port of Los Angeles, "Commentary on the Port of Los Angeles Code for Seismic Design, Upgrade, and Repair of Container Wharves," December 2011.
38. Prestressed Concrete Institute, "PCI Design Handbook, Precast and Prestressed Concrete," 6<sup>th</sup> Edition, January 2004.
39. Priestley, M.J.N., Seible, F., and Calvi, G.M., "Seismic Design and Retrofit of Bridges," John Wiley & Sons, 1996.
40. Priestley, M.J.N., Calvi G.M., and Kowalski M.J., "Displacement-Based Seismic Design of Structures," IUSS Press, Pavia, ITALY, 2007.
41. Takeda, T., Sozen, M., and Nielsen, N., "Reinforced Concrete Response to Simulated Earthquakes," Journal of the Structural Division, Proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers, Vol. 96, No. 12, December 1970.
42. Transportation Research Board, National Cooperative Highway Research Program, "Seismic Analysis and Design of Retaining Walls, Buried Structures, Slopes, and Embankments," NCHRP Report 611, 2008.
43. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, "Coastal Engineering Manual," USACE EM- 1110-2-1100 (6 volumes), Washington, D.C., 2008.
44. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, "Water Resource Policies and Authorities Incorporating Sea-Level Change Considerations in Civil Works Programs," USACE Guidance EC 1165-2-211, Washington, D.C., 2009.
45. Youd, T.L. et al., "Liquefaction Resistance of Soils: Summary Report from the 1996 NCEER and 1998 NCEER/NSF Workshops on Evaluation of Liquefaction Resistance of Soils," ASCE, Journal of Geotechnical and Geoenvironmental Engineering, Vol. 127, No. 10, October 2001.

## Bibliography

American Concrete Institute, "Guide for the Design and Construction of Fixed Offshore Concrete Structures," ACI- 357R-84, Reapproved 1997.

American Concrete Institute, "Design, Manufacture, and Installation of Concrete Piles," ACI 543R-00, 2000.

American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC 303-10), "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," 2010.

American Society for Testing and Materials, "American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Standards in Building Codes," 2007.

American Petroleum Institute (API), "Recommended Practices 2A RP 2A-LRFD", 1997.

ANSI/AWS, D1.4, "Structural Welding Code, Reinforcing Steel" – 2005 Edition.

Bell J., C. Blandon, and J. Restrepo, "Seismic Testing of Existing Full-Scale Pile to Deck Connections: Precast Prestressed and Steel Pile," Structural Systems Research Project, UCSD, January 2008.

Blake, T. F., R. A. Hollingsworth, and J. P. Stewart, J. P. (eds.), "Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Landslide Hazards in California," Southern California Earthquake Center, University of Southern California, February 2002.

Blakely, J.P. and R. Park, "Prestressed Concrete Sections with Cyclic Flexure," Journal of the Structural Division, ASCE, 1973.

California Department of Transportation (CALTRANS), "Seismic Design Criteria (SDC)," Version 1.6", 2010.

Department of Defense, "Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC), Design: Piers and Wharves," UFC 4-152-01, July 2005.

FEMA 4500-1, National Earthquake Hazards Reduction Program, "NEHRP Recommended Provisions for Seismic Regulations for New Buildings and Other Structures," 2003.

Ferritto, J., Dickenson, S., Priestley N., Werner, S., Taylor, C., Burke D., Seelig W., and Kelly, S., "Seismic Criteria for California Marine Oil Terminals," Vol.1 and Vol.2, Technical Report TR-2103-SHR, Naval Facilities Engineering Service Center, Port Hueneme, CA, July 1999.

Gaythwaite, John, W., "Design of Marine Facilities for the Berthing, Mooring, and Repair of Vessels (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition)," ASCE Publishers, 2004.

International Navigation Association [PIANC], "Seismic Design Guidelines for Port Structures," Working Group No. 34 of the Maritime Navigation Commission, A. A. Balkema Publishers, 2001.

Joen, P. and Park, R., "Flexural Strength and Ductility Analysis of Spirally Reinforced Prestressed Concrete Piles," PCI Journal, July-August 1990.

Kawamata Y., C. Blandon, S. Ashford, and J. Restrepo, "Seismic Performance of Container Wharf Piles: Test Results," Structural Systems Research Project, UCSD, June 2008.

Krier C., J. Restrepo, and C. Blandon, "Seismic Testing of Precast Prestressed Pile to Deck Connections," Structural Systems Research Project, UCSD, January 2008.

Priestley, M.J.N., "Seismic Criteria for California Marine Oil Terminals, Vol.3: Design Example," Technical Report TR-2103-SHR, Naval Facilities Engineering Service Center, Port Hueneme, CA, May 2000.

Priestley, M.J.N., Calvi, G.M., and Kowalsky, M.J., "Displacement-Based Seismic Design of Structures," Fondazione Eucentre Publishers, 2007.

Youd, T.L. and Idriss, I.M. (eds.), "Proceedings of the NCEER Workshop on Evaluation of Liquefaction Resistance of Soils," Salt Lake City, UT, NCEER Technical Report NCEER-97-0022, Buffalo, NY, 1997.

End of POLB WDC Version 4.0

## Gutierrez, Maria@SLC

---

**From:** Varma, Ravi@SLC  
**Sent:** Wednesday, June 27, 2018 4:50 PM  
**To:** Oliver, Kendra@SLC  
**Cc:** Nafday, Avinash@SLC; MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC; Gutierrez, Maria@SLC; Flowers, Maxwell@SLC; Joeseeph.Fabel@slc.ca.gov  
**Subject:** Re: Voicemail Message from Luis Palacios Regarding Title 24, Chapter 31F Comments

Thanks, Kendra

---

**From:** Oliver, Kendra@SLC  
**Sent:** Wednesday, June 27, 2018 4:30 PM  
**To:** Varma, Ravi@SLC  
**Cc:** Nafday, Avinash@SLC; MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC  
**Subject:** Voicemail Message from Luis Palacios Regarding Title 24, Chapter 31F Comments

Ravi,

Please note that I received a voicemail message this afternoon (06/27/2018) from Luis Palacios, Simpson Gumpertz & Heger, regarding the proposed 2019 MOTEMS regulations, and I returned Luis' call. He had questions on how to provide comments on existing MOTEMS language for which no changes are proposed in the 2019 MOTEMS rulemaking (vs. proposed 2019 MOTEMS language). I told Luis that he can submit all of his comments in his written response, and we will address them as appropriate (i.e., in accordance with APA). Therefore, we should anticipate receiving Luis' formal comments in written form shortly.

Kendra



**Kendra C. Oliver, P.E.**

Senior Engineer, Petroleum Structures

California State Lands Commission  
Marine Environmental Protection Division  
750 Alfred Nobel Dr., Ste. 201  
Hercules, CA 94547  
(510) 741-4950  
[kendra.oliver@slc.ca.gov](mailto:kendra.oliver@slc.ca.gov)

## Gutierrez, Maria@SLC

---

**From:** Arul Arulmoli <Arulmoli@earthmech.com>  
**Sent:** Tuesday, July 03, 2018 4:59 AM  
**To:** MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC  
**Subject:** TITLE 24, CHAPTER 31F Comments  
**Attachments:** Title 24, Chapter 31F Comments (Arulmoli).pdf

I have one comment on Division 6, Section 3106F, Article 3106F.10.2 that is provided in the attached PDF file named "Title 24, Chapter 31F Comments (Arulmoli)". This comment is to further clarify the proposed change to Paragraph 2 of the above article.

Thank you.

Sincerely,

Arul K. Arulmoli, Ph. D., P.E., G.E.  
Principal  
Earth Mechanics, Inc.  
17800 Newhope Street, Suite B  
Fountain Valley, CA 92708  
Te: (714) 751-3826 Fax: (714)751-3928

---

**From:** MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC [mailto:CSLC.MEPDRegulations@slc.ca.gov]  
**Sent:** Friday, May 18, 2018 9:57 AM  
**Cc:** Varma, Ravi@SLC <Ravi.Varma@slc.ca.gov>; Flowers, Maxwell@SLC <Maxwell.Flowers@slc.ca.gov>; Fabel, Joseph@SLC <Joseph.Fabel@slc.ca.gov>; Nafday, Avinash@SLC <Avinash.Nafday@slc.ca.gov>; Beckwith, Chris@SLC <Chris.Beckwith@slc.ca.gov>; Dobroski, Nicole@SLC <Nicole.Dobroski@slc.ca.gov>; Vogel, Dennis@SLC <Dennis.Vogel@slc.ca.gov>  
**Subject:** NOTICE OF 45-DAY PUBLIC COMMENT PERIOD FOR TITLE 24, PART 2, CHAPTER 31F – MARINE OIL TERMINALS AND CHAPTER 35 – REFERENCED STANDARDS

Dear Interested Parties:

The California State Lands Commission, Marine Environmental Protection Division (Commission) is proposing to adopt, approve, codify and publish changes to the building standards contained in the California Code of Regulation, Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 31F-Marine Oil Terminals and Chapter 35 – Referenced Standards.

The **Notice of Proposed Regulatory Action** and **Express Terms** are attached to this electronic mail. All rulemaking documents; Initial Statement of Reasons, Express Terms, and the Studies Relied Upon on this regulatory action are posted on the Commission's website for review and comment at: <http://www.slc.ca.gov/Laws-Regs/New-Proposed.html>. If you would like to receive a hard copy of these documents, please contact Commission staff at (562) 499-6400.

In accordance with the Administrative Procedure Act, the Commission is required to hold a minimum 45-day period for receiving comments and testimonies from interested parties and the public. Any interested person, or authorized representative, may submit written comments relevant to the proposed regulatory action. These comments must be submitted to the Commission prior to the close of the comment period at 5:00 p.m. on Tuesday, July 3, 2018. Written comments may be submitted by one of the three methods shown below:



**U.S. Mail:**

California State Lands Commission  
Marine Environmental Protection Division  
200 OceanGate, Suite 900  
Long Beach, CA 90802-4335  
Attention: Ravindra Varma

**FAX:** (562) 499-6444

**E-Mail:** [CSLC.MEPDRegulations@slc.ca.gov](mailto:CSLC.MEPDRegulations@slc.ca.gov)

Please include "**Title 24, Chapter 31F Comments**" in the subject line of the email.

NOTE: This electronic mail may contain privileged, confidential, and/or proprietary information which is the property of Earth Mechanics, Inc. If you are not the intended recipient or an authorized agent of the intended recipient, please delete this message and any attachments and notify the sender that you have received it in error. Thank you.

**DIVISION 6**  
**SECTION 3106F**  
**GEOTECHNICAL HAZARDS AND FOUNDATIONS**

**6.1. 3106F.10.2 Kinematic loading from lateral spreading.** *Kinematic pile loading from permanent lateral spread ground deformation in deep seated levels of slope/embankment/dike foundation soils shall be evaluated. The lateral deformations shall be restricted such that the structural performance of foundation piles is not compromised.*

*The lateral deformation of the embankment or dike and associated piles and foundation soils shall be determined using analytical methods as follows:*

1. ...
2. *For the pushover analysis, the estimated displacements may be uniformly distributed within the thickness of the weak soil layer (i.e., zero at and below the bottom of the layer to the maximum value at and above the top of the weak layer), ~~or as appropriate.~~ The thickness of the weak soil layer shall not be more than five times the pile diameter*
3. *... or 10 feet, whichever is smaller.*

used in the analysis (failure zone)

---

**Notation**

**Authority:** Sections 8750 through 8760, Public Resources Code.

**References:** Sections 8750, 8751, 8755 and 8757, Public Resources Code.

## Gutierrez, Maria@SLC

---

**From:** Jim Kearney <jwk@cowi.com>  
**Sent:** Tuesday, July 03, 2018 12:11 PM  
**To:** MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC  
**Subject:** Title 24, Chapter 31F Proposed Change Comments  
**Attachments:** COWI 7-3-18 Response to Notice of Proposed Regulatory Action - MOTEMS 2019.docx

COWI North America thanks the California State Lands Commission for the opportunity to comment on the proposed changes to MOTEMS for 2019 and has compiled the attached comments for your review and consideration.

Please feel free to contact me with any questions you may have, or to clarify any of our comments. I will direct them to the original commenter if I was not the generator of the comment.

Best regards,

**Jim Kearney, P.E.**  
Project Manager and Group Lead  
COWI Marine

### COWI

COWI North America, Inc.  
1300 Clay Street, 7th Floor  
Oakland, CA 94612  
United States

Office: 510.839.8972  
Direct: 510.267.7170  
Email: [jwk@cowi.com](mailto:jwk@cowi.com)  
Sip: [jwk@cowi.com](mailto:jwk@cowi.com)  
Website: [www.cowi-na.com](http://www.cowi-na.com) - [www.cowi.com](http://www.cowi.com)

[LinkedIn](#) [Facebook](#) [Twitter](#)

Print only if necessary

This email including attachments, if any, may contain confidential information and is intended solely for the recipient(s) stated above. If you are not the intended recipient please contact the sender by a reply email and delete this email without producing, distributing or retaining copies hereof.

The following are COWI North America, Inc. comments on the

**INITIAL EXPRESS TERMS  
FOR  
PROPOSED BUILDING STANDARDS  
OF THE  
CALIFORNIA STATE LANDS COMMISSION**

**REGARDING PROPOSED CHANGES TO  
THE 2019 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE,  
CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS, TITLE 24, PART 2**

**CHAPTER 31F – MARINE OIL TERMINALS  
CHAPTER 35 – REFERENCED STANDARDS**

These comments have been compiled from COWI North America, INC. engineers:

Jim Kearney, P.E.

Bernardo Waisman, P.E.

Wen Ho Lin, PhD, P.E.

Andres Espinoza PhD, P.E.

Submitted by Jim Kearney, P.E.

Contact at:

1300 Clay Street, 7th Floor

Oakland, CA 94612

[jwk@cowi.com](mailto:jwk@cowi.com)

(510)267-7170

CSLC Item Number and MOTEMS Section	Comments	Commenter
	<p>General Comment/Question.</p> <p>Some comments refer to requirements that themselves have not been modified but are contained within paragraphs or subsections that have been.</p> <p>This is to bring the issue to the attention of SLC for future revisions if not addressable in this round.</p>	
<p><b>2.8</b></p> <p><b>Section 3102F3.6.1</b></p>	<p>CSLC has added an operational condition – "Disconnect Product Lines" – to the TOL diagram as a separate and precursor action to departing the berth from the previous version, which had one action: "Disconnect Product Lines and Depart Berth." In doing so, CLSC moved the condition – "Terminate Product Transfer" to the empty legend box adjacent to it. This represents the unshaded portion of the wind rose. This in effect states that at that terminal, no product transfer is allowed from 0 knots wind from any direction to the next step – Disconnect Product Lines."</p> <p>Adding a new box and hatch between "Operational Condition" (no hatch) and "Terminate Product Transfer" and placing that same hatching into an approximate ring just below the threshold for "Disconnect Product Lines" would address this problem.</p> <p>Also, see "<b>Section 3102F3.6.1 2. Directionality</b>"  "True" or "Magnetic" should be labeled on the Wind Restriction Diagram</p>	<p><b>JWK</b></p>

<p><b>3.10</b> <b>3103F.5.1</b></p>	<p>This comment could have applied to earlier versions of MOTEMS as well.</p> <p>This statement cannot be true as is: "The vessel's moorings shall be strong enough to hold during all expected <u>environmental and passing vessel conditions of surge, current and weather and long enough to adequately accommodate allow adjustment</u> for changes in draft, <u>surge, sway, yaw drift</u> and tide (2 CCR 2340) [3.4]."</p> <p>We would "expect" that at some point a 40 (or 50 or 100) year combination of environmental and/or passing vessel conditions could occur. However, the vessels should have departed or provided tug assistance by then (see Section 3103F.5.2.2.3 Departure Condition) and the moorings' capacities are moot.</p> <p>Suggest rewording to: "The vessel's moorings shall be strong enough to hold during all <del>expected combinations of</del> <b>environmental loading</b> and <u>passing vessel conditions as represented on the Terminal Operating Limits Diagram, Figure 31F-2-1, through 'Survival Condition'</u> of surge, current and weather and long enough <del>to and adequately accommodate allow adjustment for</del> changes in draft, <u>surge, sway, yaw drift</u> and tide for the <b>vessel generating the highest mooring loads.</b> (2 CCR 2340) [3.4]."</p> <p>Or something similar.</p> <p><b>Bold</b> text represents suggested amendments.</p>	<p><b>JWK</b></p>
<p><b>3.12</b> <b>3013F.5.2.1</b></p>	<p><b>3.12. 3103F.5.2.1 Design wind speed.</b> <u>For new MOTs, the 25-year return period shall be used to establish the design wind speed for each direction. The design wind speed is the maximum wind speed of 30-second duration used in the mooring analysis (see Section 3105F). The 30-second duration wind speed shall be determined from the annual maximum wind data. Average annual summaries cannot be used. Maximum wind speed data for a minimum of eight directions (45-degree increments) shall be obtained. If other duration wind data is available, it shall be adjusted to a 30-second duration, in accordance with Equation (3-12).</u></p> <p>"Design wind speed" "For new MOTs" Should mean it is the design wind speed used for the design of new MOT's. It isn't. It isn't used anywhere in the design of the terminal. Section 3105F.8.1 takes a decidedly different approach. One that we question. See remarks to that section.</p> <p>While it should be inferred, CLSC may want to make it implicit that the 25-year return period waves should be applied to mooring analyses, if applicable based on wave period.</p>	<p><b>JWK</b> <b>BFW</b></p>

<p>3.14 3103F5.2.2.1</p>	<p><del>3.14. 3103F.5.2.2.1 <b>Operational</b> condition. The <del>operational</del> <del>operating</del> condition is defined as the wind envelope in which a vessel may conduct transfer operations. It is, as determined from the mooring analysis (Section 3105F). Transfer operations shall cease, at an existing MOT, when the wind exceeds the maximum velocity of the envelope.</del></p> <p>Nowhere is there a definition of what triggers the "maximum velocity of the envelope." E.g., a defined maximum allowable percent of line load, percent of mooring hardware capacity, surge, sway, wind speed below Survival condition (e.g. 5 knots below), or other condition present to correspond to the maximum allowable wind speed within this envelope.</p> <p>Also, the "maximum velocity of the envelope" should be clarified to refer to the maximum velocity from a given direction. The "maximum velocity" for the "operational" envelope in example Figure 31F-2-1 is 50 knots. But the restriction is only 45 knots from other directions.</p>	<p>JWK BFW</p>
<p>3.15 3103F.5.2.2.2</p>	<p><del>3.15. 3103F.5.2.2.2 <b>Survival condition.</b> The survival condition is defined as the state wherein a vessel can remain safely moored at the berth during severe winds; <u>however, loading arms and hoses shall be disconnected (see Sections 3110F.2 and 3110F.3 regarding movement limits of loading arms and hoses, respectfully).</u> The survival condition is the wind zone between the operational condition and the departure condition (defined in Section 3103F.5.1.3). In this wind zone, the vessel must prepare to depart the berth.</del></p> <p>Nowhere is there a definition for maximum percent of line load, percent of mooring hardware (or support) capacity, surge, sway, wind speed below departure condition (again, e.g., say 5 knots), or other condition present to correspond to the maximum allowable wind speed within this envelope.</p> <p>See also: 3110F.3 Oil transfer hoses</p> <p><i>The minimum hose length shall safely accommodate the vessel's size and maximum movements during transfer operations and mooring (see Section 3105F.2).</i></p> <p>Since we are now defining when hoses must be disconnected (a point below which it is safe to remain moored at the berth) should "and mooring" remain in this paragraph? Or, perhaps change, "during transfer operations and mooring," to "<b><u>while hoses can remain connected.</u></b>"</p>	<p>JWK BFW</p>

<p>3.16</p> <p>3103F5.2.2.3</p>	<p><b>3.16. 3103F.5.2.2.3 Departure condition.</b> <del>The departure condition is defined as the wind state above which a vessel can no longer remain safely moored at the berth during severe winds, as determined from the mooring analysis (Section 3105F). For a new MOTs, the departure-survival condition threshold is the maximum wind velocity, for a 30-second gust and a 25-year return period, obtained from historical data. For an existing MOT, a reduced survival condition threshold is acceptable (see Figure 31F-2-1). If the wind rises above these levels, the vessel must depart the berth; it shall be able to depart within 30 minutes (see 2 CCR 2340) [3.4].</del></p> <p><del>The 30 second duration wind speed shall be determined from the annual maximum wind data. Average annual summaries cannot be used. Maximum wind speed data for eight directions (45-degree increments) shall be obtained. If other duration wind data is available, it shall be adjusted to a 30 second duration, in accordance with Equation (3-21). The 25 year return period shall be used to establish the design wind speed for each direction. In order to simplify the analysis for barges (or other small vessels), they may be considered to be solid free standing walls (Chapter 20 of ASCE/SEI 7 [3.5]). This will eliminate the need to perform a computer assisted mooring analysis.</del></p> <p>The statement, "for a new MOT the departure condition threshold is the maximum wind velocity for a 30-second gust and 25-year return period, obtained from historical data. If the wind rises above these levels, the vessel must depart the birth," is not an accurate reflection of berth capacity.</p> <p>That might be true only for the governing design vessel. Or, that vessel, its lines, and the berth may actually have excess capacity beyond that required by the 25-year return wind. It may have more lines available than used in the mooring analysis (to accommodate vessels with fewer in the class.)</p> <p>Smaller vessels or vessels with more efficient line layouts may be able to remain safely at the berth at significantly higher wind speeds than the 25-year return period wind. Also, mooring hardware is sold in particular increments (typically 25 tons.) The usable capacity of the hardware and support may be more than the 25-year return wind will develop in loads on smaller vessels or vessels with more efficient line layouts. The mooring hardware selected may be capable of supporting stronger lines than were available at the time the initial design calculations were performed.</p> <p>If more hooks are available than the governing vessel of a particular class utilized in the initial design, additional lines can be put out to vacant hooks.</p> <p>...Continued...</p>	<p>JWK</p> <p>BFW</p>
---------------------------------	--	-----------------------



**3.16 cont**

**3013F5.2.2.3**

...

Also, if initial analysis, per 3105F.8.1 used the "strongest line," as required to determine mooring hook capacity, every vessel in the governing class with lower line strength than that used in that analysis for the governing class vessel will probably *NOT* meet the 25-year return period wind requirement for safe berthing. The lesser line strength will produce a different Wind Restriction Diagram with Departure Condition wind speeds lower than the "strongest" line analysis would dictate.

Section 3105F.2 accurately defines the terminal TOL considerations for each class of vessel. (Here, "weakest" line strength allowed is specified, not "strongest."):

"8. Minimum mooring line properties (such as MBL of the weakest line permitted for vessel size range)"

On a separate note regarding the requirement that vessels depart the berth, the terminal operator does not have the authority to order the ship away from the berth. Even if the vessel Captain and the Bar Pilots agree they would like to depart the berth, environmental conditions and specific tug boat assistance requirements based on vessel orientation and state of current and the availability of those tugs may make departure unattainable for some time.

Alternative actions can be employed. Tug boats not meeting departure requirement capacities might be used to help hold the vessel onto the berth. Vessels can lay out more lines if mooring points are available, or begin to take on ballast water if high in the water and high winds are driving the decision, etc.

The 25 year return period wind is based on the worst case combination of wind, current direction and velocity, tidal condition, vessel draft condition, and passing vessel conditions.

The probability of all occurring simultaneously, though not impossible, is remote. And it is at this rare and unusual condition we would reach either the "Safe Working (allowable) Load" without beginning to encroach on factors of safety, or the "factored (LRFD) loads" where the load factor actually only = "1.0."

The "Departure Condition" threshold should trigger a request by the terminal (probably best to initiate communication, for "if needed" case, at Survival Condition) to the vessel Master/Pilots to "prepare" to depart if possible, and undertake other methods of mitigating the environmental loads if not.

<p><b>3.17</b> <b>3103F.5.2.3</b></p>	<p>We know that this is just a reference number change, but just realized that there is no need to convert "over-land" wind data speeds to "over-water" conditions. The "over-land" data is almost always for the wind condition that is most directly pushing the tanker off of the berth. Why would we convert that to an "over-water" speed if it were coming from over-land to push it off the berth?</p> <p>Food for thought. Next round of revisions maybe.</p>	<p><b>JWK</b></p>
<p><b>4.6</b> <b>3104F2.3.2.1</b></p>	<p>It should be clarified that the target displacement calculation is an iterative process.</p>	<p><b>JWK</b> <b>WHL</b></p>
<p><b>4.7</b> <b>3104F2.3.2.2</b></p>	<p>Same as 4.6. Effective yield displacement is calculated by iterative process.</p>	<p><b>JWK</b> <b>WHL</b></p>
<p><b>4.20</b> <b>3104F.5.1</b></p>	<p><u><i>Nonbuilding structures are self-supporting structures that carry gravity loads and that may be required to resist the effects of earthquake (with the exception of building structures, such as control rooms), including but not limited to, gangways, hose towers and racks.</i></u></p> <p>Would it be clearer to move the parenthetical "(with the exception of building structures, such as control rooms)" to immediately after "self-supporting structures"?</p> <p>In any event, the third paragraph references building structures, which are not otherwise defined in the section beyond their parenthetical exemption.</p> <p>Third paragraph, suggested: "Critical systems are nonstructural components, nonbuilding structures, or building structures that shall remain operational, or <b>those</b> whose failure could impair emergency operations <del>following an earthquake</del> to prevent major oils spills and to protect the public health, safety, and the environment <b>following an earthquake.</b>"</p>	<p><b>JWK</b> <b>AESP</b></p>

<p><b>4.31</b> <b>Table 31F-4-4</b></p>	<p>The Importance Factor for critical structures is 1.5 on top of the level 2 requirement of Section 3104F.5.1, to remain "Operational?" This, remaining operational, is already a more stringent requirement than non-critical systems.</p>	<p><b>JWK</b> <b>WHL</b></p>
<p><b>4.32</b> <b>Table 31F-4-5</b></p>	<p>" 'Critical' component or structure R<sub>p</sub> value of 1.0" R<sub>p</sub> values are related to ductility, not the importance of the structure. "Critical" components are already expected remain operational through a Level 2 event.</p> <p>The entire table should be re-evaluated. Mooring hardware and cranes have the same response modification factor? Conduits and cable trays could be very rigidly attached but have an R<sub>p</sub> of 6 for all conditions? Engineering discretion may be required for specific cases, and at a minimum, should be explicitly allowed.</p>	<p><b>JWK</b> <b>WHL</b></p>
<p><b>5.2</b> <b>3105F.1.4</b></p>	<p>If this is true, and the support for the hooks is also, therefore, designed per MBL, then what is being sized according to the "Design Wind" of 3103F.5.2.1?</p>	
<p><b>5.4</b> <b>3105F.2</b></p>	<p>First paragraph. Suggest: "upper bound of each size range defined <b>by Dead Weight Tonnage.</b>" Or, Some other criteria could be used, but, DWT, as opposed to "Displacement on Arrival," for example would better capture larger windage areas for larger vessels more lightly loaded where limited allowable draft at the berth is a factor.</p> <p>Also, with regard to the final paragraph, bullet No. "4. Maximum allowable capacities for mooring lines."</p> <p>These values have to be determined prior to the mooring analysis, not "upon completion of the mooring analysis." The mooring lines' allowable capacities are what dictate the envelope for the various operational conditions.</p>	<p><b>JWK</b></p>
<p><b>5.11</b> <b>3105F.7</b></p>	<p>Suggest " If <del>nylon</del> tails are used in combination with <del>steel wire ropes</del> <b>vessel mooring lines</b>, the <del>safety factor</del> line capacity shall be based on <b>the strength</b> of the weaker of the <del>two ropes</del> <b>safety-factor-adjusted</b> line capacities." There is no sense in applying a higher factor of safety based on a tail that may be rated 1.25, 1.5, or more, times the strength of the mooring line to the mooring line itself.</p> <p>Should we be basing the effective "mooring line" capacity on the weaker (factored) link?</p>	<p><b>JWK</b></p>

<p><b>5.12</b> <b>Table 31F-5-3</b></p>	<p>The preceding paragraph refers to "nylon" and the table refers to "polyamide." If the suggested language above, or similar, is not adopted, should "nylon" and "polyamide" be identified as meaning the same thing? There are natural, non-synthetic polyamides. Alternatively, should "polyamide" simply be used in the previous paragraph or "nylon" in the table?</p>	<p><b>JWK</b> <b>BFW</b></p>

<p><b>5.14</b> <b>3105F.8.1</b></p>	<p>Here we address the "strongest line" issue that has been previously raised.</p> <p>"Strongest line" is not clearly defined. If the interpretation is the "strongest line" in use at the time of the analysis, within the group of vessels examined, (by no means exhaustive) then that is potentially an arbitrary purchasing decision by a vessel outfitter. It may also have been a decision based on the worst port of call the vessel operator wished to include in the vessel's travels. (e.g. Alaska, 6 knot currents, 25+ foot tides, and ice loading.)</p> <p>It has no bearing on the loads that are expected (or required) to be imparted as part of the design of the MOT in question, which in California are generally more sheltered and do not include ice loads.</p> <p>MOTEMS clearly defines the "Design" wind speed in Section 3103F.5.2.1. This wind speed, applied from a minimum of 8 directions to all vessels considered for the terminal (or individual berth), in all vessel orientations, draft conditions, tide conditions, current conditions, and if applicable, subjected to passing vessel forces will determine the required design MBL of the "design" line. The analysis will further define the maximum design load to any particular mooring point. (Note here, that these are not the minimum MBL requirements for the vessels themselves. Vessels will have their own TOLS developed based on the actual MBL of lines employed.)</p> <p>That some vessel may have a higher line capacity than the 25-year return period wind requires should be irrelevant to the "design" parameters for the MOT.</p> <p>The controlling "design" line, if using the loads required per 3103, may not belong to the largest vessel, or vessel with the strongest line. It may be that a shorter vessel with less efficient line layout controls. The line determined to have the highest "analysis derived" load (to a mooring point) for the entire fleet of vessels analyzed should define the design hook load for all hooks on that mooring point.</p> <p>Should not this calculated load be used to compare to hook Safe Working Load capacity?</p> <p>The 1.2 factor could be applied here, as the fact that the vessels winch brakes should release and render line when the calculated design load x 1.2 is reached. (Allowable load = ~ 50% MBL (varies by type). Brakes set to render at 60% MBL.)</p> <p>Continued...</p>	<p><b>JWK</b></p> <p><b>BFW</b></p>
---	---	-------------------------------------

...  
3107F.6 says: "The maximum mooring line forces (demand) shall be established per Section 3105F." So again, what is the "Design Wind" of 3103F used for?

3105F, as noted previously, should define those forces based on analysis, per 3103F, not the mooring line rated MBL.

This also contradicts equation (5-4) unless we are allowing that the capacity of the supporting structures could be less than the capacity of their "tie-down."

We can require that "All hooks and supporting structures shall withstand the minimum **Design Line Load (DLL) ~~breaking load (MBL) of the strongest line~~** with a safety factor of 1.2 or greater. Only one mooring line shall be placed on each quick release hook (N/E)."

Then: Using the Safe Working Load (SWL) of the hooks selected (= > maximum Design Line Load, each)

"For multiple quick release hooks, the minimum horizontal load for the design of the tie-down shall be:"

$$\mathbf{F_d = SWL \times n \text{ (5-4)}}$$

Then,  $F_d$  could equal the actual rated SWL of the hooks specified  $\times n$  (number of hooks.)

See below for caveat\*\*

Requiring 1.2x MBL (which is already approximately 2x load) is an effective 2.4 safety factor applied to a piece of mooring hardware with a safety factor of its own. That is particularly onerous considering the loads are determined for the 25-year return period wind (with all other worst-case conditions concurrent\*).

\*The probabilities here, as previously mentioned, get remote.

\*\*We would much rather design the hooks (which have an allowable load rating for unfactored SWL) based on calculated forces to the hooks from the "design wind", then design the anchorage and supporting structure based on the rated capacity of the hooks (likely larger than necessary due to 25 ton increments). Either ASD or LRFD could be used for that supporting structure design.

Engineers, if performing an inspection of an existing facility in the future, absent original calculations or geotechnical reports, seeing 4-75 ton hooks on a fixture, would reasonably assume that the original designers designed the supporting structure and Soil Structure Interaction for 300 tons.

<p><b>5.17</b> <b>3105F.8.3</b></p>	<p>There should be a reference to the Force <math>F_d</math> in this section.</p> <p>But, <math>F_d</math> based on what loads?</p> <p>1. The SWL of the hooks through their range of motion? All of them at 100% SWL capacity? (This is the best answer, by the way, because that's what the bolts and bolt holes in the bases are designed by the manufacturers for.)</p> <p>2. The loads generated by the design wind? (This is a better but not the best answer, as at least it is based on the site requirements. But, hooks, even if selected based on the design wind speed are generally going to be sized greater than required by the design wind speed because they come in set increments, typically ~ 25 ton jumps, and the anchor bolts should be as well. And they will be because the hook suppliers provide the bolts. See option 1.)</p> <p>3. Or loads based on the MBL of the mooring lines selected on criteria that may have nothing to do with the site being designed, as used in 3105F.8.1., <math>F_d</math>, Eqn 5-4. And then, 120% of one of those lines and 90% (1.2x75%) of the remaining lines., which, for a quad hook is less than the sum of the hook capacities. (Again, this load has no bearing on the local environmental conditions or the parameters presumably intended by the definition of a "Design Wind Speed.")</p> <p>If we just design the hooks based on the forces generated by the design wind speed, their anchor bolts will also support the same design wind speed generated loads, rounded up to the next 25 tons for each of x number of hooks. Even if the anchorages and bolts have to be calculated for the odd case here or there, they should be based on the load capacity and movement range of the hooks. Which, load capacity should be sized based on the Design Wind Speed.</p> <p>Additionally, for future revisions, the final paragraph in this section, "For existing MOTs, the deteriorated condition of the base bolts and supporting members..." might be moved to the end of the previous section, below Table 31F-5-4.</p>	<p>JWK</p>
<p><b>5.18</b> <b>3105F.9</b></p>	<p><b><u>DLL = Design Line Load</u></b></p> <p>(<math>F_d</math> should be the total of the SWL of the hooks x number of hooks.)</p>	

<p><b>6.1</b> <b>3106F.10.2</b></p>	<p>"The thickness of the weak soil layer shall not be more than five times the pile diameter or 10 feet, whichever is smaller."</p> <p>It is confusing in that the "weak soil layer" "shall not be" the thickness that the geotechnical borings actually show it to be.</p> <p>Should the wording be "shall not be <b>considered to be</b> more than five..." to clarify that the displacement should be restricted to a defined length of the pile, and not actually corresponding to the geotechnical conditions?</p> <p>A plan reviewer not familiar with the intent of this section, from a city building department for example, might require pile sizes be increased until the pile diameter is no less than 20% of the depth of the weak soil layer in the geotechnical report.</p>	<p><b>JWK</b> <b>BFW</b></p>
<p><b>9.2</b> <b>3109F.3</b></p>	<p>You might want to consider using either "seismically isolated portions of a structure," "structures," or "segments" (or both) in place of the word "section" in the following paragraph. Those are the terms used in the referenced section, 3104F.1.3. "Sections" worked OK when this requirement was placed immediately after the first paragraph in the referenced section, but "sections" aren't defined. Could be interpreted as other "sections" of pipeline instead of sections of structure.</p> <p><u><i>For pipelines spanning between seismically isolated sections (Section 3104F.1.3) and/or varying geotechnical conditions, evaluation of the relative movement of pipelines and supports and varying seismic accelerations shall be considered, including phase differences.</i></u></p>	<p><b>JWK</b> <b>BFW</b></p>



11.5  
3111F.8.1

JWK

11.5. 3111F.8.1 Illumination Locations. At a minimum, MOTs shall have fixed lighting (or luminaires) that illuminate the following areas:

1. Transfer connection points on the MOT
2. Transfer connection points for any barge that may transfer oil at the MOT
3. Transfer operations work areas on the MOT
4. Transfer operations work areas for any barge that may transfer oil at the MOT
5. Areas defined in Sections 17.4 and 24.6.4 of ISGOTT [11.7], as applicable

Lighting shall be located or shielded so as not to mislead or otherwise interfere with off-site areas as governed by federal, state and local agency requirements.

Items 2 and 4 appear to contradict the first three underlined words in the Proposed Section 3101F.2 amendments, assuming item 2 refers to the connection points on the barge.

**DIVISION 1  
SECTION 3101F [SLC]  
INTRODUCTION**

1.1. **3101F.2 Purpose.** *The purpose of this code is to establish minimum engineering, inspection and maintenance criteria for MOTs in order to prevent oil spills and to protect public health, safety and the environment. This code does not specifically address terminal siting, systems onboard vessels, processing facilities, or operational requirements. Relevant provisions from existing codes, industry standards, recommended practices, regulations and guidelines have been incorporated directly or through reference, as part of this code.*

Moreover, removing the new words from this paragraph should not be the way to address the contradiction.

**STATEMENT OF SPECIFIC PURPOSE, PROBLEM, RATIONALE and BENEFITS:**

In general, Section 3101F.2 is modified for clarity and consistency purposes to better articulate the purpose of this code. These proposed amendments do not change the purpose of the existing regulations.

1<sup>st</sup> paragraph: "systems onboard vessels, processing facilities" are added to clarify the list of items not addressed by or in this code, as this is beyond the scope of applicability of building code provisions and/or the Commission's statutory authority.

Continued...

...

Furthermore, since the limits of MOTEMS scope, here, seem to be expanded beyond those described in "3101F.2 Purpose" (for example onto a vessel re its connection system) by these two items, where are Audit leads and designers to draw the line on the lighting requirements of ISGOTT "as applicable?"

## **17.4 LIGHTING**

Terminals should have a level of lighting sufficient to ensure that all ship/shore interface activities can be safely conducted during periods of darkness.

Lighting levels should meet national or international engineering standards as a minimum. Particular consideration should be given to the following areas:

- Jetty head working areas.
- Access routes.
- Jetty perimeters.
- Boat landings.
- Mooring dolphins and walkways.
- Stairways to elevated gantries.
- Emergency escape routes.
- Lighting of water around dock to detect spillage and possibly unauthorised craft.

## **24.6.4 LIGHTING**

During darkness, adequate lighting should be arranged to cover the area of the ship to shore cargo connection and any hose handling equipment, so that the need for any adjustment can be seen in good time and any leakage or spillage of oil can be quickly detected.

How far back along access and emergency escape routes, for example? How far out is the lighting expected to extend to detect unauthorized craft? And then, to which engineering standards? National or International? Which of those?

Also, ISGOTT 24.6.4 is unclear if it is referring to the vessel or shore "ship to shore cargo connection." The hose handling equipment referenced is usually shore based, but this may refer to small cranes on the barge (a "system" on board the vessel). This also seems to conflict with 3101F.2.

## Gutierrez, Maria@SLC

---

**From:** Luis H. Palacios <lhpalacios@sgh.com>  
**Sent:** Tuesday, July 03, 2018 2:06 PM  
**To:** MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC  
**Subject:** Title 24, Chapter 31F Comments  
**Attachments:** 2018 MOTEMS Express Terms Feedback.docx

Greetings,

Attached are my comments on the proposed changes to Title 24, Chapter 31F.

Best Regards,

Luis

**Luis H. Palacios, P.E. (CA)**

Senior Staff II - Structures

**SIMPSON GUMPERTZ & HEGER**

| Engineering of Structures and Building Enclosures

500 12th Street, Suite 270  
Oakland, CA 94607

510.457.4600 main  
510.457.4458 direct  
408.230.9915 mobile  
510.457.4599 fax  
[www.sgh.com](http://www.sgh.com)

[Send Files](#)

**Express Term 8.4: (MOTEMS Section 3108F.7):** is the intent that all fire systems have a seismic assessment, or only the items identified as critical as part of the "Nonstructural Critical Systems Assessment"?

Recommend modifying the language to only include systems that are identified as critical during the Critical Systems Assessment.

**Express Term 10.7 (MOTEMS Section 3110F.11):** is the intent that all mechanical and electrical equipment be included in the seismic assessment, or only the items identified as critical as part of the "Nonstructural Critical Systems Assessment"

Recommend modifying the language to only include systems that are identified as critical during the Critical Systems Assessment.

**Express Term 11.5 (MOTEMS Section 3111F.8.1):**

- 1) Illumination levels on board barges are not within MOTEMS jurisdiction. It is inappropriate to enforce minimum illumination levels on transfer work areas and transfer connection points on a barge where MOTEMS has no authority.
- 2) As written, effectiveness of the terminal lighting over barge manifolds would have to be checked against every barge that calls on the terminal and conducts transfer operations at night. Is the intention that operators take illumination measurements prior to every transfer?
- 3) There are also practical matters of coordinating MOTEMS audits when a barge is present to take illumination measurements. This will present significant logistical problems, especially for terminals with infrequent transfers, especially since vessel schedules are notoriously hard to predict and subject to last-minute changes. There are also logistical problems in granting the auditor access to the vessel in order to take required measurements.
- 4) With a barge present (as required by this section) it will be impossible to assess the fixed lighting at the MOT without disabling barge lights, likely in violation of USCG regulations and common sense.

Suggest removing barges from the scope of the MOTEMS audit and illumination requirements.

**Express Term 11.6 (MOTEMS 3111F.8.2):**

As written, and in combination with ISGOTT 17.4 referenced by Term 11.5 above, this section will require measuring lighting levels in the water surrounding the terminal. It is not clear how the auditors are to accomplish this, especially since Express Term 11.5 also requires that a barge be present during the audit.

Recommend modifying language to exclude illumination levels of the water surrounding the terminal.

## **Suggestions Not Related to Proposed Changes**

Although I understand that State Lands is only accepting feedback on proposed changes to MOTEMS outlined in the Express Items documents, I wanted to point out the following errors for your consideration:

### **Section 3109F.5**

Section 3109 F.5.1.2 References Section 8 ("Tanks") of API 2610, 2nd Edition. However, the reference should point to Section 10 ("Pipe, Valves, Pumps & Piping Systems") instead. The 2010 edition of MOTEMS correctly pointed to Section 8 of API 2610 **1st Edition**. However, when MOTEMS was updated to reference the 2nd edition of API 2610 instead, the update did not take into account the fact that the contents in Section 8 were moved to Section 10 in in the newer edition of API 2610.

### **Section 3109F.7**

Section 3109F.7.6 Points to MOTEMS Section 3102F.3.5.5, however no such section exists within MOTEMS. Intended reference is 3102F.3.5.3

## Gutierrez, Maria@SLC

---

**From:** Gayle S. Johnson <gsjohnson@sgh.com>  
**Sent:** Tuesday, July 03, 2018 2:11 PM  
**To:** MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC  
**Cc:** William M. Bruin; Luis H. Palacios; Rune Iversen; Gayle S. Johnson  
**Subject:** Title 24, Chapter 31F Comments  
**Attachments:** G Johnson Comments to 2018 MOTEMS Upgrades - submitted 7-3-2018.docx

Attached please find my comments on the proposed changes to MOTEMS.

Feel free to contact me with any questions. Please let Chris and Dennis know that I am extremely grateful that they care so much about my opinions!!!

Regards,

Gayle

**Gayle S. Johnson, P.E. (CA, AK, MA, OR, WA)**

Senior Principal

### SIMPSON GUMPERTZ & HEGER

| Engineering of Structures and Building Enclosures

500 12th Street, Suite 270  
Oakland, CA 94607

510.457.4600 main  
510.457.4448 direct  
415.269.5668 mobile  
510.457.4599 fax  
[www.sgh.com](http://www.sgh.com)

[Send Files](#)

Initial Express Terms  
For  
Proposed Building Standards  
of the California State Lands Commission

Regarding Proposed Changes to  
The 2019 California Building Code,  
California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 2,

Chapter 31F – Marine Oil Terminals  
Chapter 35 – Referenced Standards

Comments Submitted by:

Gayle S. Johnson, P.E.  
Senior Principal  
Simpson Gumpertz & Heger Inc.  
500 12<sup>th</sup> Street, Suite 270  
Oakland, CA 94607

e-mail: [GSJohnson@SGH.com](mailto:GSJohnson@SGH.com)  
phone: 510.457.4448

Item	Description	Comment						
2.1	<p>2.1. 3102F.1.5 Baseline assessment. ...</p> <p>All fire, piping, mechanical and electrical systems shall be documented as to location, capacity, operating limits and physical conditions in the equipment layout diagram(s).</p>	<p>Facilities maintain the type of information listed in various formats, such as P&amp;IDs, one line diagrams, condition assessment reports, etc. These are <u>not</u> the same as equipment layout diagram(s). The suggested change really serves no useful purpose and is overly specific and inappropriate. I suggest the addition be rejected entirely.</p>						
4.32	<p>4.32. Add new Table 31F-4-5:</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>TABLE 31F-4-5</b> <b>RESPONSE MODIFICATION FACTORS FOR</b> <b>NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS AND NONBUILDING STRUCTURES</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><u>COMPONENT OR STRUCTURE</u></th> <th><u>R<sub>p</sub></u></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><u>Critical<sup>1</sup></u></td> <td><u>1.0</u></td> </tr> <tr> <td><u>Loading arms</u></td> <td><u>3.0</u></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<u>COMPONENT OR STRUCTURE</u>	<u>R<sub>p</sub></u>	<u>Critical<sup>1</sup></u>	<u>1.0</u>	<u>Loading arms</u>	<u>3.0</u>	<p>There is no justification for using a value of R<sub>p</sub> = 1.0 for Critical Systems, when you are already using I<sub>p</sub> = 1.5. This is ridiculously overconservative, and a total misuse of the R<sub>p</sub> term. For example, if Loading Arms are deemed to be Critical, you would multiply the forces by 1.5 and then effectively multiply design forces by another factor of 3 by applying R<sub>p</sub>=1.0 instead of 3.0.</p> <p>ASCE 7-10, currently the basis for the seismic provisions in the California Building Code, describes the purpose of the R<sub>p</sub> term in the Commentary Section C13.3.1 It states explicitly that the R<sub>p</sub> values are used to “represent the energy absorption capability of a component and its attachments”. The energy absorption capability is not related in any way to whether it is critical. That should only be addressed by the I<sub>p</sub> factor, and not by additional conservatism here.</p> <p>Recommend you remove the line with “Critical” from Table 31F-4-5 entirely.</p>
<u>COMPONENT OR STRUCTURE</u>	<u>R<sub>p</sub></u>							
<u>Critical<sup>1</sup></u>	<u>1.0</u>							
<u>Loading arms</u>	<u>3.0</u>							



Item	Description	Comment
8.4	<p><b>3108F.7 <del>Fire-Critical systems seismic assessment (N/E).</del></b> <i>Fire detection and protection systems, and emergency shutdown systems shall have a seismic assessment per Section 3104F.56. <del>For strength evaluation of supports and attachments, see Section 3107F.7.</del></i></p> <p><i>For firewater piping and pipeline systems, see Section 3109F.7. <del>For anchors and supports, see Section 3109F.4.</del></i></p> <p><i><del>For equipment anchorages and supports, see Section 3110F.8.</del></i></p>	<p>The proposed change makes the seismic assessment applicable to <u>all</u> fire systems, not just critical systems.</p> <p>The ISOR claims this is simply a consolidation of provisions and the changes are non-substantive. I disagree with this contention.</p> <p>Terminals may have fire systems, or portions of fire systems that are not relevant to the marine oil terminal that is under MOTEMS jurisdiction, or to a relatively unimportant part of the terminal with no oil spill or life safety concerns. Those should not be added to the scope due to this “catch-all” change.</p> <p>I suggest you remove the proposed change of the first word from “Critical” to “Fire”.</p>
10.7	<p><b>3110F.121 <del>Mechanical and electrical equipment-Critical systems seismic assessment (N/E).</del></b> <i><del>Critical-m Mechanical and electrical equipment-related to personnel safety, oil spill prevention or response, shall have a seismic assessment per Section 3104F.5-3. For strength evaluation of equipment anchorages and supports and attachments, see Section 3107F.7-3110F.8.</del></i></p>	<p>As proposed, the changes to this provision now make it a requirement to perform a seismic assessment of <u>all</u> mechanical and electrical equipment, not just critical systems. This is a huge change, not necessary, and is probably not the intent. I suggest you remove the strikethrough of “related to personnel safety, oil spill prevention or response”. Alternatively, add words such as “Where applicable” before the first sentence.</p>

Item	Description	Comment
11.5	<p><b>11.5. 3111F.8.1 Illumination Locations.</b> <i>At a minimum, MOTs shall have fixed lighting (or luminaires) that illuminate the following areas:</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><u>1. Transfer connection points on the MOT</u></li> <li><u>2. Transfer connection points for any barge that may transfer oil at the MOT</u></li> <li><u>3. Transfer operations work areas on the MOT</u></li> <li><u>4. Transfer operations work areas for any barge that may transfer oil at the MOT</u></li> <li><u>5. Areas defined in Sections 17.4 and 24.6.4 of ISGOTT [11.7], as applicable</u></li> </ol> <p><u>Lighting shall be located or shielded so as not to mislead or otherwise interfere with off-site areas as governed by federal, state and local agency requirements.</u></p>	<p>For the terminal, Items 2 and 4 are subsets of Items 1 and 3, so those bullets should be eliminated. However, Items 2 and 4 could also be read to mean that we are required to check illumination on the deck of the barges themselves. This is beyond the scope of MOTEMS and the control of the terminal. When taken to an extreme, it would require an illumination survey of every individual barge that calls on a terminal, which makes no sense.</p> <p>Regarding the addition of Item 5, Section 17.4 of ISGOTT brings in areas of the terminal such as lighting of water around dock. This doesn't seem appropriate or practical or very useful. In addition, at some Port locations, additional lighting is considered detrimental to the neighbors and is generally avoided where possible.</p> <p>I suggest that the existing requirements are adequate, and this is overkill and not necessary.</p>

11.6	<p><u>3111F.8.2 Illumination Levels. After subtraction of the ambient lighting level, the minimum illumination levels at the locations defined in Section 3111F.8.1 shall be as follows:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><u>1. 5.0 footcandles (54 lux) at transfer connection points</u></li> <li><u>2. 1.0 footcandle (11 lux) in transfer operations work and other areas</u></li> </ol> <p><u>The illumination levels shall be verified by measurement at the locations defined in Section 3111F.8.1. All measurements shall be taken on a horizontal plane, 3 feet above the MOT and barge deck or walking surface (33 CFR 154.570 (b) [11.8]). Background measurement of ambient lighting (e.g., moonlight, sky glow) shall be recorded in an area shielded from site lighting.</u></p>	<p>The requirement to subtract ambient lighting makes no sense, is unjustified, and ignores reality. It appears to be solving some problem that doesn't exist.</p> <p>The ISOR states that industry practice is to utilize 33 CFR 154.570 and that the proposed amendments are consistent with these standards and equivalently prescriptive. That statement is not correct. 33 CFR 154.570 does <u>not</u> require subtracting ambient lighting (see below). Thus they are not consistent or equivalently prescriptive. Suggest you remove the added language referring to ambient lighting.</p> <p>Also, since you claim in the ISOR to be consistent with 33 CFR 154.570, I suggest you be consistent with the <u>entire section</u> of that CFR and include a version of (c), which would allow the Division to authorize operations with an adequate level of illumination provided by the vessel or by portable means. (from the CFR, copied below)</p> <p><b>§ 154.570 Lighting.</b></p> <p>(a) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, for operations between sunset and sunrise, a facility must have fixed lighting that adequately illuminates:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Each transfer connection point on the talent;</li> </ol>
------	--	---

		<p>(2) Each transfer connection point in use on any barge moored at the facility to or from which oil or hazardous material is being transferred;</p> <p>(3) Each transfer operations work area on the facility; and</p> <p>(4) Each transfer operation work area on any barge moored at the facility to or from which oil or hazardous material is being transferred.</p> <p>(b) Where the illumination is apparently inadequate, the COTP may require verification by instrument of the levels of illumination. On a horizontal plane 3 feet above the barge deck or walking surface, illumination must measure at least:</p> <p>(1) 5.0 foot candles at transfer connection points; and</p> <p>(2) 1.0 foot candle in transfer operations work areas.</p> <p>(c) For small or remote facilities, the COTP may authorize operations with an adequate level of illumination provided by the vessel or by portable means.</p> <p>(d) Lighting must be located or shielded so as not to mislead or otherwise interfere with navigation on the adjacent waterways.</p> <p>[CGD 75-124, 45 FR 7172, Jan. 31, 1980, as amended by CGD 86-034, 55 FR 36253, Sept. 4, 1990]</p>
--	--	---

Item	Description	Comment

## Gutierrez, Maria@SLC

---

**From:** Rune Iversen <riversen@sgh.com>  
**Sent:** Tuesday, July 03, 2018 4:18 PM  
**To:** MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC  
**Cc:** William M. Bruin; Luis H. Palacios; Gayle S. Johnson  
**Subject:** Title 24, Chapter 31F Comments  
**Attachments:** R Iversen Comments to 2018 MOTEMS Upgrades - submitted 7-3-2018.docx

Please find attached my comments on the proposed changes to MOTEMS.

Please contact me if you have any further questions.

Best regards,

Rune

**Rune Iversen, P.E. (CA)**

Staff Consultant

**SIMPSON GUMPERTZ & HEGER**

510.457.4600 main  
510.457.4455 direct  
510.332.2052 mobile  
510.457.4599 fax  
[www.sgh.com](http://www.sgh.com)

[Send Files](#)

Initial Express Terms  
For  
Proposed Building Standards  
of the California State Lands Commission

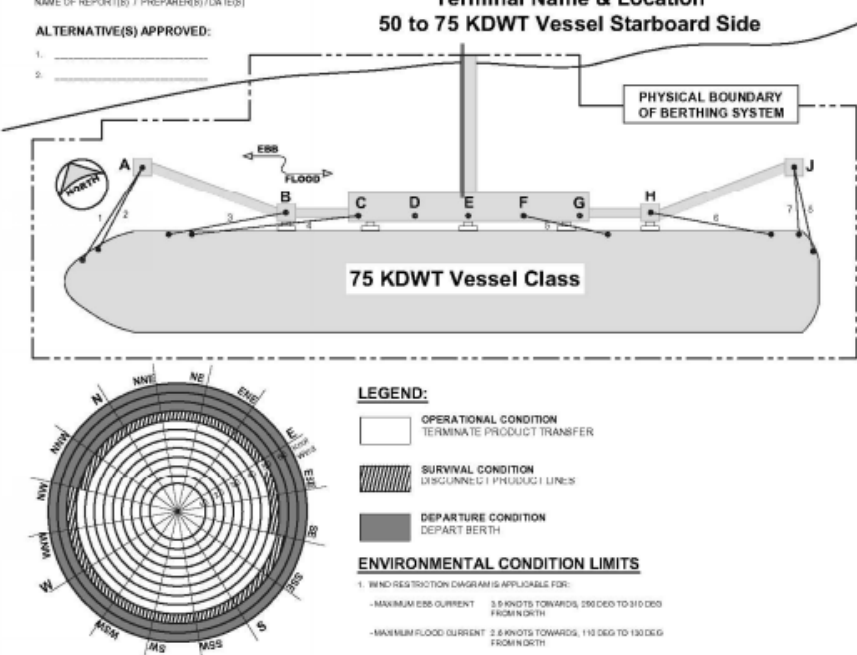
Regarding Proposed Changes to  
The 2019 California Building Code,  
California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 2,

Chapter 31F – Marine Oil Terminals  
Chapter 35 – Referenced Standards

Comments Submitted by:

Rune Iversen, P.E.  
Staff Consultant  
Simpson Gumpertz & Heger Inc.  
500 12<sup>th</sup> Street, Suite 270  
Oakland, CA 94607

e-mail: [Riversen@SGH.com](mailto:Riversen@SGH.com)  
phone: 510.457.4455

Item	Description	Comment																																												
2.8	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>EXAMPLE</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>TERMINAL OPERATING LIMITS</b> Terminal Name &amp; Location <b>50 to 75 KDWT Vessel Starboard Side</b></p> <p><b>GENERAL INFORMATION</b></p> <p>REFERENCE CALCULATION(S): NAME OF REPORT(S) / PREPARER(S) / DATE(S)</p> <p>ALTERNATIVE(S) APPROVED: 1. _____ 2. _____</p>  <p style="text-align: center;"><b>75 KDWT Vessel Class</b></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>WIND RESTRICTION DIAGRAM</b> (WIND DIRECTION FROM)</p> <p><b>LEGEND:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><span style="display: inline-block; width: 15px; height: 10px; border: 1px solid black; background-color: white;"></span> OPERATIONAL CONDITION TERMINATE PRODUCT TRANSFER</li> <li><span style="display: inline-block; width: 15px; height: 10px; border: 1px solid black; background: repeating-linear-gradient(45deg, transparent, transparent 2px, black 2px, black 4px);"></span> SURVIVAL CONDITION DISCONNECT PHUDDUG LINES</li> <li><span style="display: inline-block; width: 15px; height: 10px; border: 1px solid black; background-color: gray;"></span> DEPARTURE CONDITION DEPART BERTH</li> </ul> <p><b>ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITION LIMITS</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. WIND RESTRICTION DIAGRAM IS APPLICABLE FOR: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- MAXIMUM EBB CURRENT: 3.8 KNOTS TOWARDS 290 DEG TO 310 DEG FROM NORTH</li> <li>- MAXIMUM FLOOD CURRENT: 2.8 KNOTS TOWARDS 110 DEG TO 130 DEG FROM NORTH</li> <li>- WAVE PERIOD: T &lt; 4.0 SECS</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. TERMINATE PRODUCT TRANSFER AND DISCONNECT IF CURRENT EXCEEDS MAGNITUDE OR DIRECTION STATED IN NOTE 1.</li> </ol> <p><b>MOORING DEVICE INFORMATION</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>MOORING POINT</th> <th>DEVICE TYPE</th> <th>CAPACITY (KIPF)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>A</td> <td>DOUBLE HOOK</td> <td>300 (150 PER HOOK)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B</td> <td>DOUBLE HOOK</td> <td>300 (150 PER HOOK)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C</td> <td>BOLLARD</td> <td>200</td> </tr> <tr> <td>D</td> <td>BOLLARD</td> <td>OUT OF SERVICE</td> </tr> <tr> <td>E</td> <td>BOLLARD</td> <td>200</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F</td> <td>BOLLARD</td> <td>200</td> </tr> <tr> <td>G</td> <td>BOLLARD</td> <td>OUT OF SERVICE</td> </tr> <tr> <td>H</td> <td>DOUBLE HOOK</td> <td>300 (150 PER HOOK)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>J</td> <td>TRIPLE HOOK</td> <td>450 (150 PER HOOK)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>VESSEL DESCRIPTION:</b></p> <p>DWT: 74,900 LT  MAXIMUM ARRIVAL DISPLACEMENT: 76,700 LT  MAXIMUM DRAFT: 47.0 FT  MAXIMUM ARRIVAL DRAFT: 38.0 FT  MAXIMUM LOA: 760.0 FT  MAXIMUM BEAM: 108.0 FT</p> <p><b>BERTH DESCRIPTION:</b></p> <p>MINIMUM WATER DEPTH: 40.0 FT @ MLW  MINIMUM UNDERKEEL CLEARANCE: 2.0 FT</p> <p><b>BERTHING NOTES:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. MAXIMUM IMPACT VELOCITY = 0.33 FPS.</li> <li>2. BERTHING IS NOT ALLOWED AT AN APPROACH ANGLE GREATER THAN 6 DEGREES.</li> <li>3. NO BERTHING OPERATION WILL TAKE PLACE WITH WIND VELOCITIES GREATER THAN 38 KNOTS (43.7 MPH).</li> </ol> <p><b>MOORING NOTES:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. PASSING VESSEL EFFECTS ARE CONSIDERED IN THE MOORING ANALYSIS.</li> <li>2. MAXIMUM ALLOWED: SURGE: X=10 FT, Y=2.5 FT SWAY: X=2.5 FT</li> <li>3. STOP OPERATIONS IF A PASSING VESSEL WITH LOA &gt; 250 FT IS WITHIN 300 FT.</li> <li>4. DO NOT EXCEED ONE LINE PER HOOK.</li> </ol> <p><b>MOORING LINE DESCRIPTION:</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tbody> <tr> <td>MINIMUM NO. OF LINES</td> <td>8</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO. OF HEAD LINES</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO. OF AFT LINES</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO. OF BREAD LINES</td> <td>2 FORWARD, 2 AFT</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO. OF SPRING LINES</td> <td>2 FORWARD, 2 AFT</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MINIMUM BREAKING LOAD, MBL</td> <td>188 KIPB</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ACTUAL LINE LOADS NOT TO EXCEED</td> <td>___% OF MBL</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: right;"><b>REV. NO. &amp; DATE</b></p>	MOORING POINT	DEVICE TYPE	CAPACITY (KIPF)	A	DOUBLE HOOK	300 (150 PER HOOK)	B	DOUBLE HOOK	300 (150 PER HOOK)	C	BOLLARD	200	D	BOLLARD	OUT OF SERVICE	E	BOLLARD	200	F	BOLLARD	200	G	BOLLARD	OUT OF SERVICE	H	DOUBLE HOOK	300 (150 PER HOOK)	J	TRIPLE HOOK	450 (150 PER HOOK)	MINIMUM NO. OF LINES	8	NO. OF HEAD LINES	0	NO. OF AFT LINES	0	NO. OF BREAD LINES	2 FORWARD, 2 AFT	NO. OF SPRING LINES	2 FORWARD, 2 AFT	MINIMUM BREAKING LOAD, MBL	188 KIPB	ACTUAL LINE LOADS NOT TO EXCEED	___% OF MBL	<p>If this figure is to be replaced it would be good to replace it with a vessel outline that resembles a tanker instead of a container vessel.</p> <p>The wind rose legend also does not allow for oil transfer under any conditions as shown. If State Lands wants to implement 3 levels of limiting conditions: Operational, Survival, and Departure, the figure will need 3 different levels of hatching to illustrate that, since the white is the safe operating condition.</p>
MOORING POINT	DEVICE TYPE	CAPACITY (KIPF)																																												
A	DOUBLE HOOK	300 (150 PER HOOK)																																												
B	DOUBLE HOOK	300 (150 PER HOOK)																																												
C	BOLLARD	200																																												
D	BOLLARD	OUT OF SERVICE																																												
E	BOLLARD	200																																												
F	BOLLARD	200																																												
G	BOLLARD	OUT OF SERVICE																																												
H	DOUBLE HOOK	300 (150 PER HOOK)																																												
J	TRIPLE HOOK	450 (150 PER HOOK)																																												
MINIMUM NO. OF LINES	8																																													
NO. OF HEAD LINES	0																																													
NO. OF AFT LINES	0																																													
NO. OF BREAD LINES	2 FORWARD, 2 AFT																																													
NO. OF SPRING LINES	2 FORWARD, 2 AFT																																													
MINIMUM BREAKING LOAD, MBL	188 KIPB																																													
ACTUAL LINE LOADS NOT TO EXCEED	___% OF MBL																																													



Item	Description	Comment
3.10	<p><b>3.10. 3103F.5.1 General. ...</b></p> <p><i>The vessel's moorings shall be strong enough to hold during all expected <u>environmental and passing vessel</u> conditions <del>of surge, current and weather and long enough to adequately accommodate</del> allow adjustment for changes in draft, <u>surge, sway, yaw drift and tide</u> (2 CCR 2340) {3.4}.</i></p>	<p>This sentence now doesn't make much sense as the strength of the lines does not accommodate changes in draft, nor does it accommodate vessel movements. Changes in draft will be accommodated by line tending. A given line strength can limit vessel movements to be within the range of safe movements allowed by the loading equipment though.</p>

Item	Description	Comment
3.14 and 3.15	<p><b>3.14. 3103F.5.2.24.1 <del>Operational</del> Operating condition.</b> <u>The operational-operating condition is defined as the wind envelope in which a vessel may conduct transfer operations. It is, as determined from the mooring analysis (Section 3105F). Transfer operations shall cease, at an existing MOT, when the wind exceeds the maximum velocity of the envelope.</u></p> <p><b>3.15. 3103F.5.2.24.2 Survival condition.</b> <u>The survival condition is defined as the state wherein a vessel can remain safely moored at the berth during severe winds; however, loading arms and hoses shall be disconnected (see Sections 3110F.2 and 3110F.3 regarding movement limits of loading arms and hoses, respectfully). The survival condition is the wind zone between the operational condition and the departure condition (defined in Section 3103F.5.1.3). In this wind zone, the vessel must prepare to depart the berth.</u></p>	<p>By definition, once the wind exceeds the Operational condition you are in the Survival condition. Does that mean that once you get to the survival condition, transfer shall cease and loading arms and hoses should be disconnected? The underlined sentence also seems to imply that vessel movements past the limits of the loading equipment is allowed during the survival condition. This means that if you get to the survival condition it would be too late...</p>

Item	Description	Comment
3.16	<p><b>3.16. <u>3103F.5.2.2.3 Departure condition.</u></b> <i>The departure condition is defined as the wind state above which a vessel can no longer remain safely moored at the berth during severe winds, as determined from the mooring analysis (Section 3105F). For a new MOT, the <del>departure survival</del> condition threshold is the maximum wind velocity, for a 30-second gust and a 25-year return period, obtained from historical data. For an existing MOT, a <del>reduced survival condition threshold is acceptable (see Figure 31F-2-1).</del> If the wind rises above these levels, the vessel must depart the berth; it shall be able to depart within 30 minutes (see 2 CCR 2340) [3.4].</i></p>	<p>Departure is not always possible for a vessel under severe storm conditions as this can be limited by availability of tugs, pilots, or the decision of the captain. Other means can be employed to keep a vessel safe at berth such as additional mooring lines, tug assist, etc, and needs to be stated as an option for this case.</p>
5.4	<p><b>5.4. <u>3105F.2 Mooring analyses.</u></b> <i>A mooring analysis shall be performed for each berthing system, to justify the safe berthing of the various <del>deadweight capacities of vessels expected at the MOT.</del> <u>Review of vessels calling at the MOT shall be performed to identify representative vessel size ranges and mooring configurations.</u> Vessels analyzed shall be representative of the upper bound of each vessel size range defined. The Terminal Operating Limits (TOLs) shall be generated based on the mooring analyses (see Section 3102F.3.6.1 and Figure 31F-2-1).</i></p>	<p>A mooring analysis is performed to justify safe mooring of a vessel, not the safe berthing.</p>
5.4	<p><i>The most severe combination of the environmental loads <u>and limiting conditions shall be justified based on site-specific evaluation, and considered in the mooring analyses</u> <del>has to be identified for each mooring component.</del> At a minimum, the following <del>conditions</del> shall be considered <u>and documented</u>:</i></p>	<p>A combination of a 25-year storm, extreme current, and extreme tide might not be appropriate due to the very low joint probability of these occurrences.</p>

**Gutierrez, Maria@SLC**

---

**From:** Jaradat, Omar <ojaradat@moffattnichol.com>  
**Sent:** Tuesday, July 03, 2018 4:55 PM  
**To:** MEPDRegulations, CSLC@SLC  
**Cc:** Nafday, Avinash@SLC  
**Subject:** Title 24, Chapter 31F Comments  
**Attachments:** MN MOTEMS Comments-20180703.pdf

We prepared attached comments on Title 24, Chapter 31F proposed changes.

Thanks

Omar

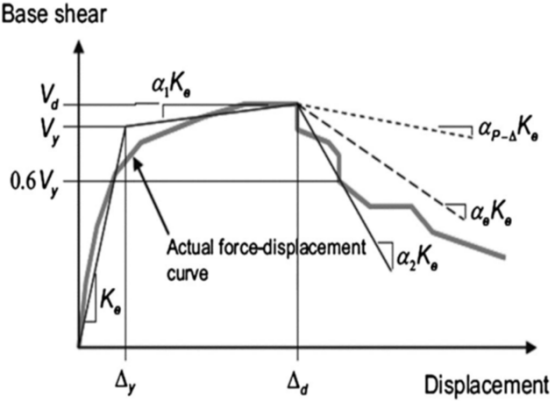
Moffatt & Nichol

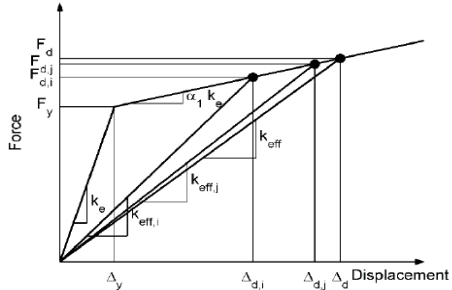
562-426-9551

2019 MOTEMS Proposed Changes Comments

Item	2019 Proposed Change	Comment
2.4	"...Rating shall be assigned comparing the observed condition to the as-built <del>original</del> condition"	As-builts are not always available.
2.5	"...Rating shall be assigned comparing the observed condition to the as-built <del>original</del> condition"	As-builts are not always available.
2.6	<p><u>The TOLs shall be explicitly presented to facilitate implementation by the MOT operator, such as through incorporation in the MOT's Operations Manual (2 CCR 2385 [2.1]). The TOLs shall allow for direct comparison of operating limits and output from monitoring systems and instrumentation (i.e., anemometers, current meters, tension monitoring systems, velocity monitoring systems). Design and implementation considerations shall include, but not be limited to:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><u>1. Units of measurement (i.e., English vs. System International units)</u></li> <li><u>2. Directionality (i.e., current restrictions "to", wind restrictions "from", true or magnetic north)</u></li> <li><u>3. Parameters of monitoring systems and instrumentation (i.e., duration/averaging of readings, elevation/depth of readings, distance/location of readings)</u></li> </ol>	Often that the output of instruments have different duration/averaging of readings, and elevation/depth of readings. Also, the distance between the MOT and the measurement could be far enough to generate differences. Does this suggest conversion tables are required for direct comparison on the TOLs? If yes, this should be more explicit.
3.3	Earthquake ground motion parameters can be obtained directly from the US Seismic Design Maps tool available at the USGS website ( <a href="http://earthquake.usgs.gov/designmaps/us/application.php">http://earthquake.usgs.gov/designmaps/us/application.php</a> ) for the site condition(s) appropriate for the MOT site and the selected probability of exceedance. For this purpose, select the ASCE/SEI 41 [3.1] "2013 ASCE 41" as the design code reference document (based on 2008 USGS hazard data available), "Custom" under the Earthquake Hazard Level option, and specify the appropriate custom parameters, including but not limited to, location, required Probability of Exceedance (in 50 years), and appropriate Site Soil Classification(s) for the MOT site. The USGS tool directly provides the peak ground and spectral accelerations for the selected hazard level and site condition(s).	The specific tool to be used on the USGS site is unclear as there are multiple tools which provide design spectra. The "U.S. Seismic Design Maps" tool is being taken out of use in spring 2018. The "Unified Hazard Tool" can provide spectral inputs, but states "Please do not use this tool to obtain ground motion parameter values for the design code reference documents covered by the U.S. Seismic Design Maps web tools (e.g., the International Building Code and the ASCE 7 or 41 Standard). The values returned by the two applications are not identical.". There is a new web interface under development, but it is unclear if this is acceptable for use and may require third party software. Please confirm the appropriate tool to be utilized in 2019
3.10	<p><b>3103F.5.1 General. ...</b></p> <p><del>The vessel's moorings shall be strong enough to hold during all expected environmental and passing vessel conditions of surge, current and weather and long enough to adequately accommodate allow adjustment for changes in draft, surge, sway, yaw, drift and tide (2 CCR 2340) [3-4].</del></p>	It seems the modification does not fully explain what the original statement described. Recommend the following statement "The vessel's moorings shall be strong enough to hold during all expected environmental and passing vessel conditions; and the lines shall be long enough to allow adjustment of changes in draft, drift and tide."

<p>3.12</p>	<p>For new MOTs, the 25-year return period shall be used to establish the design wind speed for each direction.</p>	<p>Please clarify that this 25-year wind event may be considered as a 25 year storm event and that associated waves should be consistent with the 25 year storm. Please clarify the joint probability requirements for combined wind and current / tidal range requirements as use of extreme values of current concurrently with a 25-year wind results in a joint probability well in excess of 25 years return period</p>
<p>3.12</p>	<p><u>3103F.5.2.1 Design wind speed. For new MOTs, the 25-year return period shall be used to establish the design wind speed for each direction. The design wind speed is the maximum wind speed of 30-second duration used in the mooring analysis (see Section 3105F). The 30-second duration wind speed shall be determined from the annual maximum wind data. Average annual summaries cannot be used. Maximum wind speed data for a minimum of eight directions (45-degree increments) shall be obtained. If other duration wind data is available, it shall be adjusted to a 30-second duration, in accordance with Equation (3-12).</u></p>	<p>The design wind speed and how it's derived are not very clear. Suggest the statement is revised to say the following:  ...Design wind speed. For New MOTs, the 25-year return period shall be used to establish the design wind speed for each direction. Winds above the design wind speeds don't need to be included in the mooring analysis (see Section 3105F). The 30-second duration wind speed shall be determined from the annual maximum wind data through extreme analysis. Average annual summaries...</p>
<p>3.16</p>	<p>If the wind rises above these levels, the vessel must depart the berth</p>	<p>Selection to depart the berth is made by the captain of the vessel, not by facility owners or operators. This item is not enforceable as the facility owners / operators can request that the vessel disembark, but cannot require the captain of the vessel to do so.</p>
<p>3.26</p>	<p>3103F.5.7 Tsunamis</p>	<p>This section is not very clear on how the tsunami condition shall be considered in a MOT design.  Clarify the following statements:  For far-field tsunamis, the vessels have time to leave the berth, so only the tsunami loads on the structures need be considered. But for local tsunami, vessels do not have time to leave, should the design consider both tsunami loads and vessel induced loads on the structure.  If yes, to what return period should be considered? Also, should the low water level also be considered?  In addition, this section should clarify if the run up values should be used for design or are only provided as a reference. A single value cannot represent a whole area. For example, Current may change dramatically at different geometry conditions in an area.</p>
<p>4.3</p>	<p>If a MOT is divided into seismically isolated sections, an evaluation of the relative movement of pipelines and supports shall be considered, including phase differences (Section 3109F.3).</p>	<p>Relative movement and the influence of movement on pipe stress must be considered. This statement remains accurate and should remain</p>

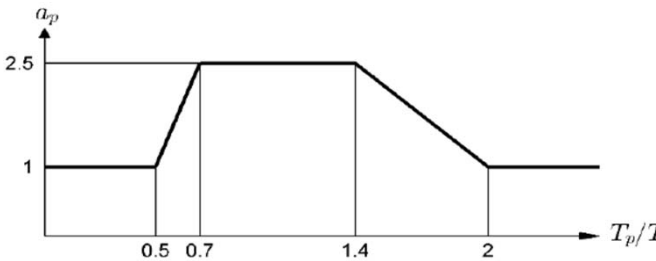
4.3	Figure 31F-4-9 reference	The figure should reference the primary source NCEER study
4.6	F <sub>y</sub> = effective yield strength of the structure in the direction under consideration from the idealized pushover curve.	<p>As stated in ASCE 41-17: "C7.4.3.2.4 Idealized Force–Displacement Curve for NSP. The idealized force–displacement curve is developed using an iterative graphical procedure to balance the areas below the actual and idealized curves up to Δ<sub>d</sub> such that the idealized curve has the properties defined in this section. The definition of the idealized force–displacement curve was modified from the definition in FEMA 356 (2000g) based on the recommendations of FEMA 440 (2005)."</p> <p>ASCE 41-17 Section 7.4.3.2.4 provides a detailed description of how this curve is developed and references Figure 7-3, as shown below:</p>  <p>it is not clear in current description that the F<sub>y</sub> and Δ<sub>y</sub> used to determine the "effective yield" point must be determined iteratively.</p>
4.7	Idealize the pushover curve from nonlinear pushover analysis, as described in Section 3104F.2.3.2.1, and estimate the effective yield strength force, F <sub>y</sub> , and yield displacement, Δ <sub>y</sub> .	See comment on item 4.6. There is not a clear statement that the effective yield displacement should be determined iteratively
4.7	The substitute structure method is based on the procedure presented in Priestly et al. [4.5] [4.4]	Recommend adding the following reference "Displacement-Based Seismic Design of Structures" By MJN Priestley, GM Calvi and MJ Kowalsky

<p>4.7</p>	<p>Equation 4-12</p>	<p>This equation is not significantly altered and is similar to that provided in ASCE 61-14, but is inconsistent with that used by Port of Long Beach and Port of Los Angeles criteria for damping. At this time there is no research clearly noting either equation as being superior; however, for projects in the POLA or POLB it should be noted that the alternate damping equation is permissible as providing equal protection.</p> <p>The damping equation may result in non-sensical solutions for extreme cases; therefore, it is recommended that the output damping be limited to a minimum of 5% and a maximum of 30% damping unless other values are shown as accurate by the Engineer of Record.</p>
<p>4.7</p>	<p>Step 11: Repeat steps 5 to 10</p>	<p>determination of the <math>F_y</math> and <math>D_y</math> within the iteration must also occur. See response to item 4.6</p>
<p>4.7</p>	<p>Equation 4 -12</p>	<p>Recommend updating damping equation per SP-295-3 by Omar A Jaradat and MJ Nigel Priestley and Port of Los Angeles Seismic Code 2010 and Port of Long Beach Wharf Design Criteria V 4.0</p>
<p>4.9</p>	<p>Figure 31F-4-5</p> 	<p>This figure does not show variation in the <math>F_y</math> and <math>D_y</math> location as larger displacement demands are determined, which implies that the solution to the <math>F_y</math> and <math>D_y</math> values are not iterative with solution of the demand displacement, which is not consistent with finding equal areas under the actual and effective force-displacement curves at the demand displacement. Clarify that this iterative nature of the <math>F_y</math> and <math>D_y</math> values be stated more clearly. See response to item 4.6</p>
<p>4.19</p>	<p><b><u>4.19. 3104F.5 Nonstructural components, nonbuilding structures and building structures.</u></b> <u>Nonstructural components, nonbuilding structures and building structures at MOTs shall be assessed for Level 2 seismic performance (see Section 3104F.2.1). Consideration shall be given to the adequacy and condition of supports and attachments (or anchorage), strength, flexibility, relative displacement, P-delta effects, and seismically-induced interaction with other components and structures.</u></p>	<p>Level 1 Seismic Performance criteria per MOTEMS Section 3104F.2.1 is defined as minor or no structural damage and temporary or no interruption in operations. Nonstructural components such as loading arms, gangway towers, cranes etc. are important to ensure operations in a MOT. Thus, a Level-1 seismic performance criteria should also be defined for nonstructural components. Please note that although Level-2 seismic acceleration is 1.5 to 2 times more than Level-1 acceleration, ductility factors or response modification factor "Rp" for nonstructural components should be less for Level-1 earthquake to ensure limited plastic deformation without interrupting the operations for extended period of time after Level-1 earthquake. A Level-1 earthquake is more likely to happen, which further justifies the requirement of including this criteria.</p>



<p>4.20</p>	<p>3104F.5.1 General 3rd Paragraph.</p>	<p>Critical components must be seismically qualified. This is almost impossible, and would increase the prices of equipment significantly. This is typically done for nuclear power plants and not standard for marine oil terminals.</p>
<p>4.20</p>	<p>Nonbuilding structures are self-supporting structures that carry gravity loads and that may be required to resist the effects of earthquake (with the exception of building structures, such as control rooms), including but not limited to, gangways, hose towers and racks.</p>	<p>Statement is unclear, may imply that building structures, such as control rooms, may not be required to resist the effects of earthquakes, which is not true. The exception within the parenthesis related to building structures should be clarified only to say that building structures are not nonbuilding structures, which is true by definition and can be considered redundant.</p>
<p>4.20</p>	<p>Critical systems are nonstructural components, nonbuilding structures or building structures that shall remain operational or whose failure could impair emergency operations following an earthquake, to prevent major oil spills and to protect public health, safety and the environment.</p>	<p>It is unclear if "remain operational" and "failure" are consistent with the intended performance, especially considering that based on table 31F-4-4 the "critical systems" are being designed for a larger event than the MOTEMS L2.</p> <p>In some cases, a system could be non-operational post event, but protect against spill. As an example, a flexible hose can be stretched and require replacement, but would not produce leaks. Similarly a loading arm could have displacement and yielding resulting in damage, but not loose containment. Considering the highly conservative design load provided in the criteria, some allowable damage (non-operational performance) should be allowed so long as there is no spill risk and fire fighting / spill response performance can be maintained.</p> <p>The definition as provided above along with the Importance factor (item 4.31) and Rp value of 1.0 given in Table 31F-4-5 (item 4.32) the resulting criteria appears to be overly conservative given that a lesser criteria could satisfy the Level 2 seismic performance.</p>
<p>4.21</p>	<p>For existing (E) nonstructural components, nonbuilding structures and building structures and their supports and attachments, seismic assessment shall be performed in accordance with CalARP [4.8] or ASCE Guidelines [4.9], except for piping/pipelines which shall be evaluated per Section 3109F. If required, seismic evaluation and strengthening shall be performed in accordance with this section. ... ... For evaluation, strengthening and design, seismic forces (demands) shall be obtained from Section 3104F.5.</p>	<p>It appears that the third paragraph is applicable only to New (N) structures or components based on the description of evaluation methods provided in the first paragraph. Please clarify the jurisdiction of the third paragraph.</p>

4.28	S <sub>XS</sub> = spectral acceleration in Section 3103F.4.2.4 or Section 3103F.4.2.5, at 0.2 seconds	<p>Update definition as " spectral acceleration as defined in section 3103F.4.24."</p> <p>This variable has been given two definitions. Should stay consistent.</p>
4.28	S <sub>XS</sub> = spectral acceleration in Section 3103F.4.2.4 or Section 3103F.4.2.5, at 0.2 seconds	<p>The 0.2 second period provides the peak acceleration for an ASCE 7-16 generic site spectra, but may not provide a peak acceleration for a site-specific spectra. For the simplified method conservatively using the peak acceleration from the ASCE 7-16 generic site spectra or a site specific spectra is appropriate and should be clarified</p>
4.28	S <sub>A</sub> = spectral acceleration in Section 3103F.4.2.4 or Section 3103F.4.2.5, at the period equal to the fundamental period of the MOT structure, T, in direction under consideration	<p>Please clarify that "fundamental period of the MOT structure" is the elastic fundamental period, not the effective fundamental period. The effective period (found in pushover analysis) is based on a damaged state of the structure and may not represent initial strong shaking. The elastic fundamental period will be a stiffer response that should more accurately capture strong shaking prior to damage of the structure.</p>
4.28	$F_p = \frac{1.2 S_{XS} a_p I_p W_p}{R_p}$ $0.3 S_{XS} I_p W_p \leq F_p \leq 1.6 S_{XS} I_p W_p$ <p style="text-align: right;"><u>(4-23)</u></p>	<p>Replace "1.2 S<sub>Xs</sub>" in above equation with "max (1.2 S<sub>Xs</sub>, S<sub>a,max</sub>)", where S<sub>a,max</sub> is defined as the maximum spectral acceleration. Please note that for certain site-specific spectra, value of 1.2 S<sub>Xs</sub> at 0.2 second period, may be less than S<sub>a</sub> (spectral acceleration at MOT time period).</p> <p>Moreover, this equation taken from ASCE-7 utilizes a height-based amplification factor (1+2z/h), which is more applicable to a multi-level building structure where base is defined as bottom of building and z and h are height of point of attachment from base and height of building from base. For pile supported MOTs, this analogy does not appear to be correct and should be examined closely. From past research work done, the height based amplification factor may be less conservative for Marine Oil Terminals, especially for Level-1 earthquake. A link to one of those studies is provided below: <a href="https://ascelibrary.org/doi/10.1061/9780784413067.064">https://ascelibrary.org/doi/10.1061/9780784413067.064</a></p>

<p>4.28</p>	<p>equation 4-26</p> $F_v = \pm 0.2 S_{XS} W_p$	<p>This equation is consistent with ASCE 7-16 Section 13.3.1.2, but is not consistent with the LRFD MOTEMS load combinations of Table 31F-3-10, which use 1.2+k and 0.9-k for variation in dead load due to vertical acceleration. A consistent vertical acceleration factor should be used.</p>										
<p>4.29</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>TABLE 31F-4-3 AMPLIFICATION FACTORS FOR NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS AND NONBUILDING STRUCTURES</b></p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>COMPONENT OR STRUCTURE</u></th> <th style="text-align: center;"><u><math>a_p^{1,2}</math></u></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><i>Rigid components or structures (period less than 0.06 seconds)</i></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><u>1.0</u></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>Rigidly attached components or structures</i></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><u>1.0</u></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>Flexible components or structures (period longer than 0.06 seconds)</i></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><u>2.5</u></td> </tr> <tr> <td><i>Flexibly attached components or structures</i></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><u>2.5</u></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<u>COMPONENT OR STRUCTURE</u>	<u><math>a_p^{1,2}</math></u>	<i>Rigid components or structures (period less than 0.06 seconds)</i>	<u>1.0</u>	<i>Rigidly attached components or structures</i>	<u>1.0</u>	<i>Flexible components or structures (period longer than 0.06 seconds)</i>	<u>2.5</u>	<i>Flexibly attached components or structures</i>	<u>2.5</u>	<p>Clarify the definition of rigidly attached components and flexibly attached components. A flexible loading arm component may be interpreted as "rigidly" attached to concrete deck using through bolt or CIP anchor bolts</p>
<u>COMPONENT OR STRUCTURE</u>	<u><math>a_p^{1,2}</math></u>											
<i>Rigid components or structures (period less than 0.06 seconds)</i>	<u>1.0</u>											
<i>Rigidly attached components or structures</i>	<u>1.0</u>											
<i>Flexible components or structures (period longer than 0.06 seconds)</i>	<u>2.5</u>											
<i>Flexibly attached components or structures</i>	<u>2.5</u>											
<p>4.30</p>	 <p style="text-align: center;"><b>FIGURE 31F-4-9 AMPLIFICATION FACTOR, <math>a_p</math> [4.10]</b></p>	<p>This figure and component amplification factor is based on a NCEER study which is derived for multi-level building structures, not MOTs. More research is recommended to derive this component amplification factor for nonstructural components on pile-supported MOTs for Level-1 and Level-2 earthquakes. From past research work done, these component amplification factors may be less conservative for Marine Oil Terminals, especially for Level-1 earthquake. A link to one of those studies is provided below: <a href="https://asc.library.org/doi/10.1061/9780784413067.064">https://asc.library.org/doi/10.1061/9780784413067.064</a></p>										

<p>4.31</p>	<p>Table 31F-4-4 Importance Factor of 1.5 for "Critical" component or structure</p>	<p>The use of a 1.5 multiplier for "Critical" systems implies that they should be designed for a return event well in excess of the remaining structural system. This may lead to significantly increased costs and is not consistent with the definition of Level 2 seismic performance provided in Section 3104F.2.1 as it aligns more with the Level 1 seismic performance criteria.</p> <p>Combined with the requirements of the definition "critical systems" (item 4.20) and the <math>R_p</math> value of 1.0 given in Table 31F-4-5 (item 4.32) the resulting criteria appears to be overly conservative given that a lesser criteria could satisfy the Level 2 seismic performance.</p> <p>If the design is required to remain elastic, with an <math>R=1.0</math> there is no need to add an additional factor of 1.5.</p>
<p>4.32</p>	<p>Table 31F-4-5 "Critical" component or structure <math>R_p</math> value of 1.0</p>	<p>Use of a <math>R_p</math> of 1.0 is not consistent with ASCE 7-16 and is considered overly conservative as it may result in a safety factor as high as 12. The <math>R_p</math> value is intended to provide a factor related to ductility of the element or its connection to the structure, not an importance factor (provided in Table 31F-4-4). Thus, reducing the <math>R_p</math> to 1.0 is overly conservative and a duplicate reduction based on importance.</p> <p>Combined with the requirements of the definition "critical systems" (item 4.20) and the importance factor of 1.5 given in Table 31F-4-4 (item 4.31) the resulting criteria appears to be overly conservative given that a lesser criteria could satisfy the Level 2 seismic performance.</p>
<p>4.32</p>	<p>Add new Table 31F-4-5</p>	<p>Provide reference for new Table 31F-4-5</p>
<p>5.4</p>	<p>Vessels analyzed shall be representative of the upper bound of each vessel size range defined.</p>	<p>It is unclear how "upper bound" and "vessel size" are defined. There are several criteria which define size (length over all, dead weight tonnage, beam, hull depth). Additionally, the vessel size may not control the design of the mooring system as often smaller vessels or vessels with larger offsets from the manifold to midship may result in lower efficiency mooring arrangements. Recommend that CSLC develop generic classes of vessels which may be utilized by the facilities to aid in vessel selection where large fleets of vessels may call</p>
<p>5.5</p>	<p>3105F.3.2 Passing Vessels</p>	<p>Figure 5-17 of UFC 4-150 doesn't seem relevant to the passing vessel problem. We should refer to section 3103F.5.4.</p>
<p>5.5</p>	<p>3105F.3.2 Passing Vessels</p>	<p>Recommend updating equation 5-1 based on new research.</p>

5.14	The capacity of the supporting structures must be larger than $F_d$ (See Section 3107F.6).	The force $F_d$ is not included in the load combination Tables 31F-3-10 or 31F-3-11. It is unclear if this load must be combined with any other load conditions (dead, live, etc.). Please clarify herein or within the referenced tables.
5.14	Equation 5-4	MBL should be replaced by SWL, safe working loads for mooring hook per PIANC WG 153. Using MBL is very conservative for hook foundation design. SWL shall be defined as the SWL of the hook and not the mooring line.
5.14	Equation 5-4	Sometime there could be a redundant hook for maintenance purpose. Clarify if “n” in the equation shall be defined as “maximum number of working hooks on the assembly” for the redundant hook.
6.1	For the pushover analysis, the estimated displacements may be uniformly distributed within the thickness of the weak soil layer (i.e., zero at and below the bottom of the layer to the maximum value at and above the top of the weak layer), <del>or as appropriate.</del> <u>The thickness of the weak soil layer shall not be more than five times the pile diameter or 10 feet, whichever is smaller.</u>	This statement is unclear. Actual depth of weak soil layers may exceed 10 ft. in many locations. It appears that the intent is that the distribution of estimated displacements may be linearly varied from zero movement at the soil failure plane to the full lateral movement at the minimum of five pile diameters or 10 ft. above the soil failure plane; therefore the statement should be clarified as such.
8.2	Table 31F-8-3	Table for fire water requirements are not acceptable anymore, per PIANC WG 153, Table 14-1, from ISGOTT, 5th ed, 2006.
9.2	Section 3106F.12 provides additional considerations for underwater seafloor pipelines.	If this statement is being added section 3106F.12 should include the effects of scour, free spanning, buoyancy and vortex shedding.
11.5	At a minimum, MOTs shall have fixed lighting (or luminaires) that illuminate the following areas: 1. Transfer connection points on the MOT 2. Transfer connection points for any barge that may transfer oil at the MOT 3. Transfer operations work areas on the MOT 4. Transfer operations work areas for any barge that may transfer oil at the MOT	It is unclear how items 1 and 2 vary. Similarly it is unclear how items 3 and 4 vary.